

Volume 153  
Uralic and Altaic Series  
Denis Sinor, *Editor*

THE  
SINO-JURCHEN  
VOCABULARY  
OF  
THE BUREAU OF  
INTERPRETERS

by

Daniel Kane

INDIANA UNIVERSITY  
Research Institute for Inner Asian Studies  
Bloomington, Indiana  
1989

Copyright © 1989 by Indiana University  
Research Institute for Inner Asian Studies

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 89-060480  
ISBN 0-933070-23-3

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

## CONTENTS

CHAPTER ONE	HISTORICAL BACKGROUND The Jurchen language. Invention of the Jurchen script. Relationship with the Khitan script.	1
CHAPTER TWO	THE KHITAN SCRIPTS The Khitan large script. The <u>Xigushan</u> inscription. The Khitan small script. The <u>Da Jin huangdi dutong jinglüe langjun</u> <u>xingji</u> inscription.	11
CHAPTER THREE	THE JURCHEN SCRIPT Derivation of characters from Chinese and Khitan. Monosyllabic, disyllabic and trisyllabic ideographic characters. Partial-ideographic characters. Syllabic phonograms. Evolution of script. The <u>Nüzhen jinshi timing bei</u> inscription.	21
CHAPTER FOUR	GLOSSES PRESERVED IN CHINESE HISTORICAL SOURCES The Jurchen vocabulary appended to the <u>History of the Jin Dynasty</u> . The Jurchen vocabulary appended to the <u>Da Jin guo zhi</u> . Jurchen words in other historical sources.	38
CHAPTER FIVE	INSCRIPTIONS IN THE JURCHEN SCRIPT (1) The <u>Da Jin deshengtuo bei</u> inscrip- tion. (2) The <u>Nüzhen Jinshi timing bei</u> inscription. (3) The <u>Aotun Liangbi jianyin bei</u> inscription. (4) The <u>Aotun Liangbi shi</u> inscription. (5) The <u>Hailong Nüzhen guoshu moya</u> inscription. (6) The <u>Qingyuan (Kyöngwön)</u> inscription. (7) The <u>Beiqing (Kwansan)</u> inscription. (8) The <u>Nuergan Yongningsi bei</u> inscrip- tion. (9) The <u>Zhao Yong da jiangjun</u> inscription.	42

CHAPTER SIX	MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS	70
	(1) The Jurchen characters in the <u>Yanzhou shanren sibu gao</u> and the <u>Fangshi moku</u> .	
	(2) A travel pass with Jurchen characters and the characters in the <u>Azuma kagami</u> .	
	(3) Manuscript material.	
	(4) Seals and mirrors with inscriptions in Jurchen.	
	(5) Other inscriptions previously thought to be in Jurchen.	
	(6) Dictionaries.	
	(7) The study of Jurchen in Korea.	
CHAPTER SEVEN	THE HUA-YI YIYU	90
	(1) The Bureau of Translators Vocabulary,	
	(2) The Bureau of Interpreters Vocabulary.	
CHAPTER EIGHT	THE LANGUAGE OF THE SINO-JURCHEN VOCABULARY OF THE BUREAU OF INTERPRETERS	99
	(1) General remarks.	
	(2) Transcription.	
	(3) Phonology.	
	(4) Grammar.	
	(5) Table of characters used in the transcription.	
	(6) Conclusion.	
CHAPTER NINE	THE SINO-JURCHEN VOCABULARY OF THE BUREAU OF INTERPRETERS	132
	(1) Astronomy.	
	(2) Geography.	
	(3) Time and Seasons.	
	(4) Flowers and Trees.	
	(5) Birds and Animals.	
	(6) Buildings.	
	(7) Tools and Utensils.	
	(8) People.	
	(9) Human Matters.	
	(10) Parts of the Body.	
	(11) Clothing.	
	(12) Food and Drink.	
	(13) Jewels and Valuables.	
	(14) Writing.	
	(15) Colours.	
	(16) Numerals.	
	(17) Miscellaneous.	
APPENDIX	FACSIMILE OF THE SINO-JURCHEN DICTIONARY WITHOUT JURCHEN SCRIPT (AWAKUNI MS.)	437

# LIST OF TABLES

1.	Dates in Khitan and Chinese in the <u>Xigushan</u> inscription.	12
2.	Dates in Khitan only in the <u>Xigushan</u> inscription.	12
3.	The last line in the Khitan and Chinese versions of the <u>Da Jin huangdi dutong jinglüe langjun xingji</u> inscription.	14
4.	The first line of the <u>Da Jin huangdi</u> inscription.	17
5.	The date in the <u>Da Jin huangdi</u> inscription.	18
6.	The numerals in Chinese, the Khitan large script, the Khitan small script, and the Jurchen script.	21
7.	Jurchen characters derived from Chinese (perhaps via Khitan).	22
8.	Jurchen characters derived from distorted Chinese characters.	22
9.	Jurchen characters derived from Chinese characters of similar sound (but not meaning)	23
10.	Characters in the <u>Xigushan</u> inscription (in the Khitan large script) which can be found in Jurchen.	24
11.	Almost identical characters in the Khitan large script and the Jurchen script.	24
12.	Jurchen characters identical with those found in the Khitan small script.	24
13.	Monosyllabic ideographic characters.	25
14.	Disyllabic ideographic characters.	25
15.	Trisyllabic ideographic characters.	25
16.	Partial-ideographic characters (used with phonograms).	26
17.	Ideographic characters always followed by suffixes.	26
18.	Partial list of syllabic phonograms.	27
19.	Phonograms used with ideograms to indicate final vowel + -n.	27
20.	Jurchen words written entirely in phonograms.	28
21.	Jurchen words written with one symbol in the <u>Nüzhen zishu</u> but two in the <u>Hua-Yi yiyu</u> .	28
22.	Development of the Jurchen script.	29
23.	Title of the <u>Nüzhen jinshi timing bei</u> inscription.	30
24.	First line of the <u>Nüzhen jinshi timing bei</u> inscription.	32
25.	Second line of the <u>Nüzhen jinshi timing bei</u> inscription.	34

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

1. The <u>Gu taishi mingshi ji</u> inscription. (Yan Wanzhang, 1957)	5	21. The <u>paizi</u> (travel pass) discovered at Šaigin, USSR. (Akademija Nauk SSSR, 1977).	74
2. The Chinese text of the <u>Xigushan</u> inscription (ibid.).	7	22. One of the sheets with Jurchen cursive script discovered in the Xixia holdings in Leningrad. (G. Kara et al., 1969)	75
3. The Khitan text of the <u>Xigushan</u> inscription (ibid.).	8	23. Another example of Jurchen cursive script discovered in Leningrad. (ibid.)	76
4. A page from the <u>Nüzhen zishu</u> . (Liu Zuichang and Zhu Jieyan, 1979)	9	24. The Yigaidage River <u>mouke</u> seal. (Luo Fucheng, 1933)	78
5. The <u>Da Jin huangdi dutong jinglüe langjun xingji</u> inscription. (Chinggeltei et al., 1985)	14	25. The seal of the <u>mouke</u> of Jiahun mountain. (Luo Fuyi, 1963)	79
6. The title and first line of the <u>Nüzhen jinshi timing bei</u> inscription in the transcription of Luo Fucheng. (Luo Fucheng, 1936)	31	26. The characters on the Xianping-fu <u>mouke</u> mirror. (Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong, 1980)	80
7. A page from the Jurchen vocabulary appended to the <u>History of the Jin dynasty</u> . (Sibucongan Baina ed.)	39	27. A Jurchen seal character. (Heilongjiang-sheng wenwu gongzuodui, 1977)	81
8. A page from the Jurchen vocabulary appended to the <u>Da Jin guo zhi</u> . (Sikuquanshu zhenben ed.)	41	28. A Jurchen cursive seal character ( <u>hua ya</u> ). (Jin Qicong, 1984)	81
9. The <u>Nüzhen jinshi timing bei</u> inscription. (Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong, 1980)	46	29. A Khitan seal (previously thought to be in Jurchen). (uo Fuyi, 1963)	83
10. The site of the stele at Yantai. (Linqing, 1984 edition)	48	30. The inscription on Bičigtu qanan, at Kentei ayimay. (Rinčen Yöngsiyebu, 1968)	85
11. The <u>Aotun Liangbi jianyin bei</u> inscription. (Shimada Yoshimi, 1934)	51	31. A page from the Glossary ( <u>za zi</u> ) from the Sino-Jurchen vocabulary of the Bureau of Translators. (Luo Fucheng, 1933)	91
12. Enlarged detail from the Jurchen part of the <u>Aotun Liangbi jianyin bei</u> inscription. (Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong, 1980)	52	32. One of the petitions ( <u>laiwen</u> ) from the Vocabulary of the Bureau of Translators. (ibid.)	93
13. The <u>Aotun Liangbi shi</u> inscription. (Luo Fuyi et al., 1982)	54		
14. The <u>Yangshulinshan</u> inscription at Hailong. (Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong, 1980)	56		
15. A section of the <u>Qingyuan</u> inscription in the transcription of Min Yöng-gyu.	60		
16. Two sides of the <u>Qingyuan</u> inscription. (Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong, 1980)	61		
17. A section of the <u>Beiqing</u> inscription in the transcription of Inaba Iwakichi. (Inaba, 1930)	62		
18. The <u>Yongningsi</u> inscription [copied by Osada Natsuki from a rubbing in the collection of Naitō Torajirō]. (Osada Natsuki, 1958)	66		
19. The mantra " <u>om maṇi padme hūṃ</u> " in Chinese, Mongol, Tibetan, and Jurchen from the <u>Yongningsi</u> (Tyr) inscription. (Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong, 1980)	68		
20. The Jurchen characters in the <u>Yanzhou shanren sibu gao</u> and the <u>Fangshi moku</u> . (L. Gilbert, 1934)	71		



## PREFACE

The Jurchens were a people of Tungusic origin who reached the apogee of their power in the twelfth century, when they established the Jin Dynasty, and ruled North China for more than a century. They originally had no script, but one was created on the basis of Chinese and Khitan, in the year 1120. A recently discovered manuscript may well have been written in that year or shortly afterwards, but the earliest inscription in the Jurchen script is dated 1185. Jurchen is thus the first Tungus language for which written materials in a native script are available, and make it, along with Old Turkish (in the Orkhon script) and probably Khitan (the linguistic affinities of which are still uncertain) one of the earliest written Altaic languages.

The Jin Dynasty succumbed to the Mongols, and by the time of the Ming the Jurchens had been reduced to the status of a tributary people. The script was still used, as evidenced by a stele dated 1413, and the fact that both the language and script were studied in specialist institutions, the Bureau of Interpreters and the Bureau of Translators under the Ming. They were also studied in Korea. The Jurchens formed part of the Manchu confederacy which was to conquer China and establish the Qing Dynasty in 1644.

Several stages in the Jurchen language can be established. The earliest is that recorded in the vocabulary attached to the History of the Jin Dynasty and scattered throughout that work and other contemporary documents. The language of this period presents many serious difficulties in interpretation, and the study of which can be said to have barely begun. It is very important, however, as, along with Chinese and Mongol loanwords, it is very likely that there are a number of Khitan loanwords in the Jurchen of that time, and the identification of these will be of crucial importance in the decipherment and reconstruction of Khitan. Some progress in this direction has been made. The next stage would be that represented by the Hua-Yi yiyu, the Sino-Jurchen vocabulary studied in the Bureau of Translators, which contains some 900 vocabulary items in Jurchen script and Chinese transcription. The third stage is that represented in the vocabulary used in the Ming Dynasty Bureau of Interpreters, which reflects the spoken language of the sixteenth century. This stage is already very close to, but by no means identical with Manchu. It may well be that this vocabulary also preserves words used in early spoken Manchu which have not been recorded in the standard dictionaries of written Manchu of the Qing.

The vocabulary of the Bureau of Translators, that with the Jurchen script, has been studied by several scholars, notably Wilhelm Grube, Gisaburo N. Kiyose, Jin Qicong and most recently by Dao Erji (Dorji) and He Xige (Qosiyu). The vocabulary of the Bureau of Interpreters has been pretty much neglected; it is the aim of this book to present a transcription and interpretation of the thousand-odd words and expressions in this text, as a contribution to the growing number of studies on this language and script.

Wilhelm Grube's edition of the Jurchen Hua-Yi yiyu was published in 1896, after which, in the words of L. Ligeti, "les recherches sur l'écriture et la langue joutchen ont connu une longue période d'éclipse ce qu'on ne saurait regretter assez". There have been some studies on Jurchen in European languages, notably those by L. Ligeti and G. N. Kiyose, but most of the research on Jurchen has been published in Chinese, Japanese and occasionally Korean. The publication of a number of works on Jurchen and Khitan in China over the past ten years has revealed a number of exciting discoveries and developments. For these reasons, this study of the Jurchen vocabulary of the Ming Bureau of Interpreters is preceded by a rather long introduction, covering studies on Jurchen over the past eighty years, and a general outline of the "state of the art" in Jurchen studies at the moment.

This work was originally presented as a PhD thesis to the Australian National University in 1975. Incorporation of studies published over the last decade has meant the rewriting of the Introduction, and the addition of a large number of items to the Bibliography. The thesis was originally supervised by Dr Igor de Rachewiltz and Professor T.Y. Liu of the Australian National University; Professor Walter Simon read through the first draft, and made many valuable suggestions. Professor Hok-lam Chan sent me a detailed bibliography of works on Jurchen, from which the present Bibliography has grown. Professor Shirō Hattori sent me a copy of Yamamoto Kengo's work on the Sibe language. The staff at the Menzies Library at the Australian National University were assiduous in hunting down practically inaccessible items. Professor Nishida Tatsuo read this work in thesis form, and made many useful comments. Later, in China, I met specialists in the fields of Jurchen and Khitan, in particular Liu Fengzhu, Yu Baolin and Jin Qicong, who provided me with much material unavailable outside China. This new version has been improved by the incorporation of the identification of many Jurchen terms listed in a review article of my thesis by Professor Herbert Franke, "Etymologische Bemerkungen zu den Vokabularen der Jurchen Sprache" (1982). In more recent times, several people, in particular Professor H.F. Simon and Dr I. de Rachewiltz, encouraged me to update this study and publish it.

Much work is still to be done in Jurchen studies and related areas. It will need the cooperation of Altaicists and Sinologists, in China, Japan and Korea on the one hand, and in Europe, the United States and Australia on the other, complementing each other's area of expertise. The present study hopes to be a contribution in this ongoing scholarly dialogue.

## CHAPTER ONE HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

A few years after the final dissolution of the Tang Dynasty (618-907), the Khitans, a people apparently related to the Mongols, established a state in the north of China officially recognised in later Chinese historiography as the Liao Dynasty (916-1125). The rest of China went through that period of division known as the Five Dynasties in the north and the Ten Kingdoms in the south, until eventually reunited under the Song dynasty in 960. The Liao and the Song coexisted until the Khitans were defeated by the Jurchens, a people of Tungus origin, which established the Jin Dynasty in 1115. There was constant warfare between the Jin and the Song; the Song were driven from their capital at Kaifeng in 1266 and reestablished themselves in Hangzhou. Eventually both dynasties were to succumb to the Mongols, who established the Yuan Dynasty in 1271. During this period, the Tanguts, a people of Tibeto-Burman affiliation, established the state of Xixia in the area of northwest China, in what is now Ningxia and Gansu.

All of these peoples, the Khitans (Liao), the Jurchens (Jin), Tanguts (Xixia) and Mongols (Yuan) originally had no script of their own. The Mongols developed a form of writing their language in Chinese characters, used phonetically, which reached a high degree of sophistication in such works as the current text of The Secret History of the Mongols. Mongol was also written in a form of the Uighur script; this script developed into that used in Classical Mongolian. During the Yuan, another script derived from the Tibetan script was used to write both Mongol and Chinese; this is known as the 'Phags-pa script. The Classical Mongolian script was adapted for writing Manchu, a Tungusic language closely related to Jurchen, which was the official language of the Qing Dynasty (1644-1911). A form of Manchu, known as Sibe, is still spoken in a small area in the far west of China.

The Tanguts devised a script of great beauty and elegance, but of enormous complexity; great progress has been made in the decipherment of this script in recent decades, but it is still imperfectly understood. Of greater interest and relevance to the study of the Jurchen script, however, was the script, or rather the scripts, devised by the Khitans. According to the History of the Liao Dynasty, "on the day yiqu of the first month of the fifth year (of the

shence period), the larger Qidan script was formulated for the first time... On the day renyin (of the ninth month) the larger script was completed. An imperial decree ordered it to be circulated... [Diela] was endowed with a quick mind. Taizu said, "As to Diela's cleverness - his quickness in accomplishing feats is beyond my powers. But for deliberateness in planning affairs I am his superior". Uighur messengers came (to court), but there was no one who could understand their language. The empress said to Taizu, "Diela is clever. He may be sent to welcome them". By being in their company for twenty days he was able to learn their spoken language and script. Then he created (a script) of smaller Khitan characters which, although few in number, covered everything." (Liaoshi juan 64).

What is important for us to note is that there were two Khitan scripts: the "large characters" and the "small characters". It is also important to know that many of the Jurchen educated class were literate in Khitan, and that they employed it even after the creation of their own script. More than thirty Jurchen mentioned in the History of the Jin Dynasty were familiar with the Khitan script. One of the most important sources for the study of the Khitan script, the Da Jin huangdi dutong jinglue langjun xingji inscription, was for many years thought to be in Jurchen. It seems that a gold travel pass with a Khitan inscription recently discovered may date from the Jin Dynasty; a bronze mirror recently discovered in 1971 at Da'an, in Jilin province, which can be dated 1140-1189, is in a form of the Khitan script. Incidentally, the inscription on this mirror is badly written, evidence perhaps that by this stage the script was no longer regularly used and could no longer be written well. It was not until the year 1191 that the Khitan script was finally abolished.

After their defeat at the hands of the Jurchens, most Khitans fell under their control, but a group of them fled west, to what is now Xinjiang, and established a state known as the Qara-Khitay. They, too, eventually disappeared, and knowledge of the language, and script, was lost. The Jurchens, after the establishment of the Yuan Dynasty, retreated to the forests of Manchuria, and reemerged during the Ming Dynasty (1368-1644) as a tributary people. Their language was still in use, as was their script, though whatever literature may have existed in Jurchen (presumably mainly translations from Chinese) may well have been lost. Both language and script were studied in the Bureau of Interpreters and the Bureau of Translators of the Ming, and an important trilingual inscription, in Chinese, Mongol and Jurchen, known as the Nuergan Yongningsi bei inscription, is dated 1413. There are many mistakes in this inscription, however, again showing that the script was presumably no

longer in regular use. The Jurchens later formed part of the Manchu confederacy which conquered the Ming and established the Qing Dynasty; by this stage, however, the script had been lost, and the Manchus chose to write their language in a modified form of the Mongol script.

As mentioned above, the Jurchens were literate in Khitan, as well as in Chinese. When they set about devising a script to record their own language, it was natural that they would be influenced by both the form and the structure of both Khitan and Chinese characters. According to the History of the Jin Dynasty, "the Jurchen originally had no written characters. When the state became flourishing and gradually extended its boundaries, and it entered into relations with neighbouring countries, the Khitan script was used by them. Afterwards, Xiyin was commissioned by the Emperor Taizu to make a national script, with rules for its composition. Xiyin, thereupon, copying the strokes of the ordinary Chinese characters, and following the rules of composition of the Khitan large script, made the new Jurchen characters, adapted to express the words of the national language. In the eighth month of the third year of the tianfu period (1120), the composition of the new script was finished. Taizu, greatly pleased, ordered it to be distributed throughout the state, and presented to Xiyin a caparisoned horse and a suit of court robes. Afterwards, when the Emperor Xizong (1135-1148) composed another set of Jurchen characters, they were used together with the script made by Xiyin; the characters composed by Xiyin were called the Jurchen large characters, and those made by the Emperor Xizong were called the Jurchen small characters". The small Jurchen script was circulated by imperial edict in the year 1138. In the year 1145, in the fifth month, on the day xuwu, it is recorded that the small characters made by the emperor were first used officially. (Jinshi juan 66).

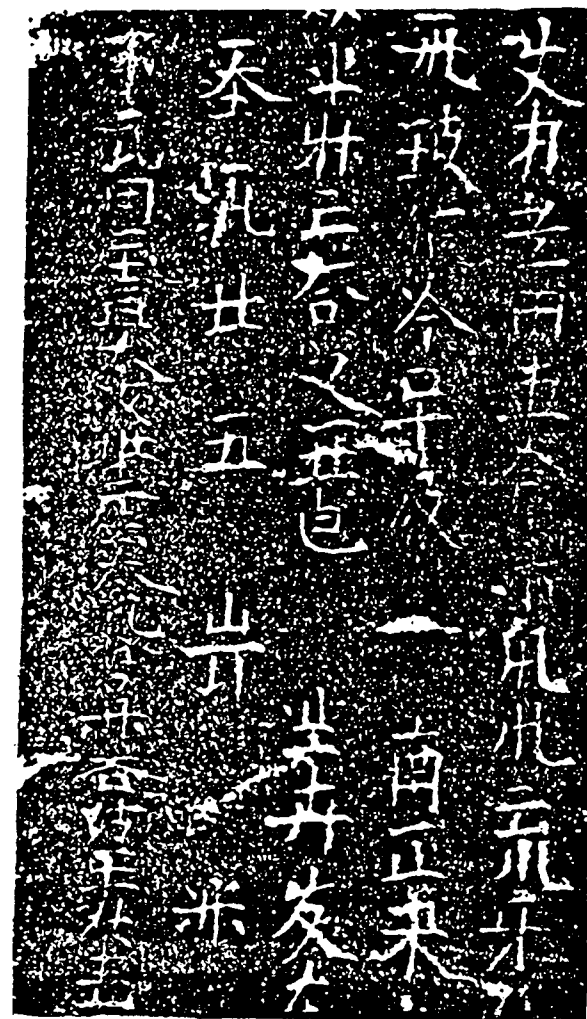
It seems that the first works to use the Jurchen script were introductions to the script, of which one has been recently discovered in the base of a stele in Xi'an. Later, in the year 1164, the Emperor Shizong ordered Jurchen translations of the Chinese classics and dynastic histories to be made. In 1166, translations of the Historical Records of Sima Qian and the History of the Western Han Dynasty were completed. In the year 1183, one thousand copies of the Classic of Filial Piety in Jurchen were distributed to the Imperial guard, and later in the same year translations of the following books were presented to the throne: the Book of Changes, the Book of Documents, the Analects of Confucius, the Mencius, the Daodejing and others. The catalogues of literary works in the Histories of the Liao, Jin, Yuan and Ming Dynasties also list a fairly large number of books in Jurchen, but they all seem to be lost. As for their survival

in the Qing Dynasty, neither the imperial catalogue Siku quanshu zongmu nor its various supplements contains any reference to them.

There has been, and still remains, a good deal of uncertainty about the precise meaning of the terms "large script" and "small script" in both Khitan and Jurchen. The founder of modern Jurchen studies, Liu Shilu, in his pioneering articles "Nüzhi zi bei kao" [A study of a stele in Jurchen script] and "Nüzhi zi bei xu kao" [A further study of a stele in Jurchen script] though that the script in the Nüzhen jinshi timing bei inscription was an example of the Jurchen small script, and that on the Da Jin huangdi jinglüe langjun xingji inscription was the Jurchen large script. This latter inscription was thought to be in Jurchen in various early Chinese works, such as the Ming compilation Shi mo juan by Zhao Han, and the Qing compilation Jin shi cui bian by Wang Chang, the authors being misled by the characters Da Jin [The Great Jin Dynasty] at the beginning. It was also regarded as Jurchen by early western sinologues, such as Alexander Wylie, "On an ancient inscription in the Neu-chih language" (1860), who reproduced the text and studied the Chinese version, and Edouard Chavannes, "Note sur l'inscription joutchen de K'ien tcheou" (1908), who also provided a photograph. In 1922, a Belgian missionary, L. Ker, discovered the Liao Imperial Tombs at Qingling, in which epitaphs for Emperor Xingzong and Empress Renyi were found, in Chinese and a hitherto unknown script. This was, of course, the Khitan script, and it was immediately recognised

<sup>1</sup>In the Bu sanshi yiwenzhi, Jin Mengzhao has recorded the following titles for the Jin Dynasty: Yijing, Shangshu, Xiaojing, Zhenguan zhengyao and the Shiji, as well as two works attributed to Wanyan Xiyin, Taizu Nüzhi da zi and Xizong Nüzhi xiao zi. In the Bu Yuanshi yiwenzhi, Qian Daxin had recorded the following books: Yijing, Shujing, Xiaojing, Lunyu, Mengzi, Laozi, Yangzi, Wenzhongzi, Liuzi and the Xin Tang Shu, and the following books preceded by the words "Nüzhi-zi" (Jurchen script) Pangu shu, Jiayu, Taigong shu, Wu Zixu, Sun Bin shu, Huangshi nu shu, Baijiaxing and the Nüzhi zimu. In the Jin yiwenzhi bu lu, Gong Xianzeng, in addition to the titles in the list above, also noted the Zhenguan zhengyao in Jurchen script. In the Mingshi yiwenzhi, the following books in the Jurchen script are recorded: Pangu shu, Kongfuzi shu, Kongfuzi you guo zhang, Jiayu, Jiayu xian-neng-yan-yu zhuan, Jiang Taigong shu, Wu Zixu shu, Shiba guo dou bao zhuan, Sun Bin shu, Shanyu shu, Hai Qian Gong shu, Huangshi nü shu, Baijiaxing, Ha-da-mie-er-yu and the Nüzhi zimu. The Qing compendia Siku quanshu zongmu ji weishou shumu yinde and the Siku caijin shumu do not contain any references to any of these works.

(for example, by Haneda Toru, "Kittan moji no shin shiryō" [New material on the Khitan script] (1925)) that this was the same script as that on the Da Jin huangdi jinglüe langjun xingji inscription, although it was not possible at that stage to determine whether this was the large or the small Khitan script. This inscription is now generally recognised as being in Khitan (although written during the Jin Dynasty).



Ill. 1. The Gu taishi mingshi ji inscription (lines 36-40, containing the date)

Some scholars, however, are not so sure. for example, E.V. Šavkunov, "K voprosu o rasširovke kidan'-čžurčžen'skoj pis'mennosti" [On the problem of the decipherment of the Khitan-Jurchen small script] (1963)

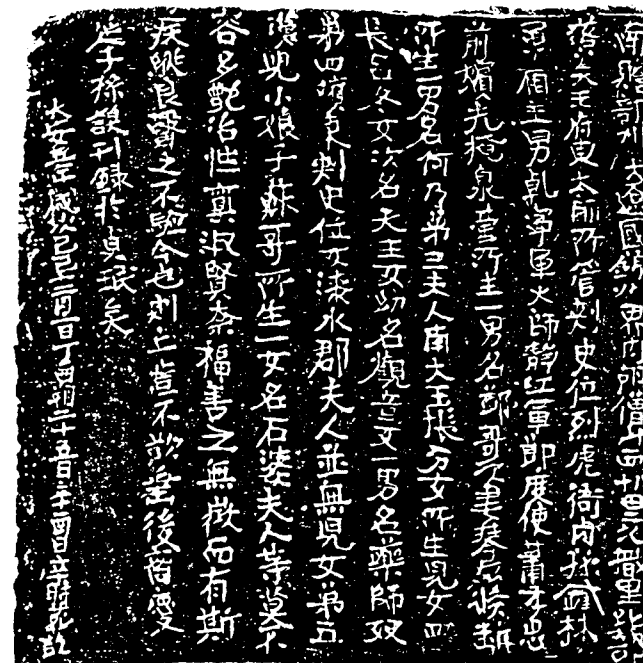
suggests values for various script-elements to be found in a "Khitan-Jurchen" character, which, when applied to an inscription in Khitan (such as those in the Liao Imperial Mausoleum) will yield Khitan, and when applied to an inscription in Jurchen (of which the author believes the Da Jin huangdi jinglue langjun xingji inscription to be an example) to yield Jurchen. The same caution is shown by G.N. Kiyose, who writes of this inscription "inasmuch as the Khitan script itself has not been deciphered, it is hard to say whether this inscription is in the Khitan language written in the Khitan script or the Jurchen language written in the Khitan script". Recent research, however, is fairly

conclusive that both language and script are Khitan, but the question still remains as to whether this script is the large or small script.

More information on the nature of the two Khitan scripts came to light with the discovery of the Gu taishi mingshi ji epitaph in 1935. This was described and discussed for the first time by Inaba Iwakichi, "Ryō Shōsō Towa gen no Bonnu Daishi no boshi" [Epitaph for the late Pennu Daishi of the Tonghe era of Shengzong of the Liao Dynasty] (1939), who noted that it seemed to be in a previously unknown script. It was later studied by Li Wenxin, "Qidan xiaozi Gu taishi mingshi ji zhi yanjiu" [Research on the Gu taishi mingshi ji inscription in the Khitan small script] (1942), who contended that it must have been a forgery, since it was written in what appeared to be a mixture of scripts: regular and irregular Chinese characters, and an unknown script, parts of which looked like the Jurchen script. It was not until after the discovery of a similar inscription in 1951 that this script attracted further attention. In that year, villagers discovered an inscribed stone in a tomb at Jinxi, in Liaoning province. This was studied by Yan Wanzhang, "Jinxi Xigushan chutu Qidanwen muzhi yanjiu" [Research on the epitaph in Khitan script excavated at Xigushan, Jinxi] (1957) and by Jin Guangping and Zeng Yigong, "Jinxi Xigushan Qidanwen muzhi shishi" [An attempted explanation of the Khitan inscription on an epitaph found at Xigushan, Jinxi] (1957). The writers pointed out the similarities of the scripts in the Gu taishi mingshi ji and the Xigushan epitaph, (which is also known as the Xiao Xiaozhong muzhi inscription), and argued that they were examples of the Khitan small script, as opposed to the large script on the epitaphs in the Liao Imperial Mausoleum.

"Kittan reiji kō - Joshin moji no genryō" [The large Khitan script - the origin of the Jurchen script] (1963) and "An Analysis of the Major Ch'i-tan Characters" (in English) (1964), in which he argues that the script in the Gu taishi mingshi ji and the Xigushan inscriptions is the Khitan large script, and that the Jurchen script is derived from it.

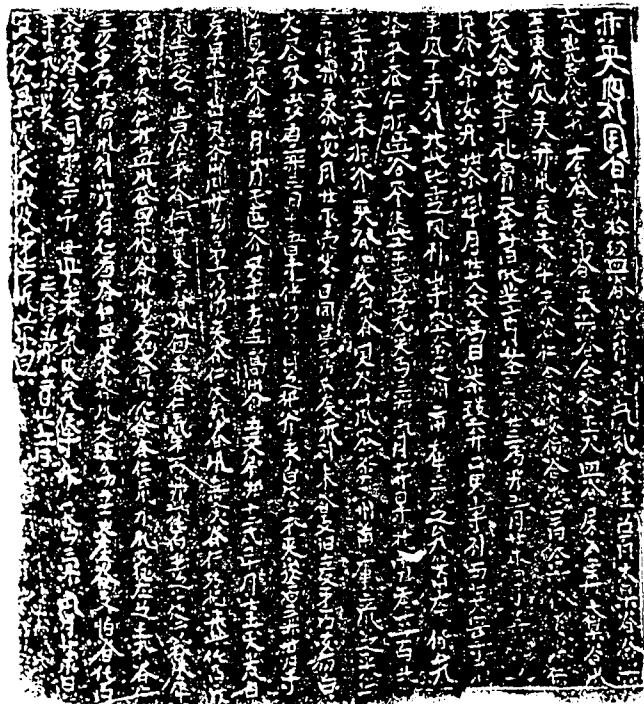
Many articles treat the possible relationship between the Khitan and Jurchen scripts in a general way.



Ill. 2 The Chinese text of the Xigushan inscription.

Amongst these the following should be mentioned: Watanabe Kuntarō, "Manshūgo Joshingo to Kanjion no kankei" [The relationship between Manchu, Jurchen and the Chinese characters used to transliterate those languages] (1925); Saitō Buichi, "Kittan moji to Joshin moji" [The Khitan script and the Jurchen script] (1941); Kodaira Suihō, "Ryō, Kin, Seika, Gen, Shin gochō no seiji" [The structure of the scripts of the Liao, Jin, Xixia, Yuan and Qing dynasties] (1942); Ishida Mikinosuke, "Joshin daiji to wa nanzo ya" [What is the Jurchen large script?] (1942); Osada Natsuki, "Joshin moji no kōzō to sono onka ni tsuite" [On the structure of Jurchen characters and their phonological values] (1949); Min Yōng-gyu, "Yōjin munja-ūi kusōng-e taehayo" [On the structure of Jurchen characters] (1952) and

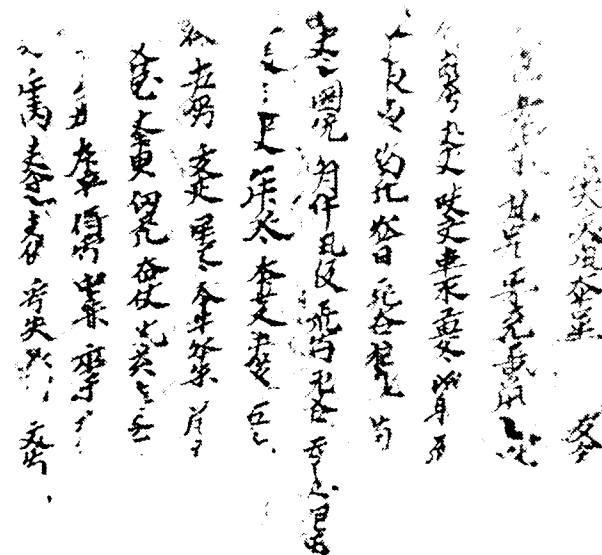
Osada Natsuki, "Joshin moji no genson shiryō" [Extant materials on the Jurchen script] (1970).



Ill. 3 The Khitan text of the Xigushan inscription.

Not much further progress on this problem was made, however, until the discovery of a manuscript copy of what appears to be the Nūzhen zishu [Jurchen Character Book], compiled originally by Wanyan Xiyin, the inventor of the Jurchen large script. This discovery was reported by Liu Zuichang and Zhu Jieyuan, "Xi'an Beilin faxian Nūzhenwen shu, Nan Song tuo quanfuji Wang "Shengjiaoxu" ji banhua" [Discovery of a book in the Jurchen script, a complete rubbing of Wang Xizhi's calligraphy (the Shengjiaoxu) and some woodblock prints] (1979). They reported that eleven sheets of paper, containing 237 lines of Jurchen script with some 2300 characters, had been discovered in the base of a stele in the "Forest of Stelae" at Xi'an. This article also presented the preliminary findings of Jin Qicong on this manuscript; Jin followed up his researches with a later article, "Xi'an Beilin faxian de Nūzhenwen shu" [A book in the Jurchen script discovered in the "Forest of Stelae" in Xi'an] (1979). According to Jin, the book is a type of textbook, a basic character list, apparently for beginners learning the Jurchen script. Almost all the individual

characters in this textbook represent complete words; in this it differs fundamentally from the later Jurchen script used on inscriptions, which is a mixture of ideographic and phonetic symbols. Several of the characters in the Nūzhen zishu are taken directly from Khitan, and there are a large number of Jurchen characters not extant in later material.



Ill. 4 A page from the Nūzhen zishu

The script is indubitably and recognisably Jurchen, however, and Jin Qicong has deciphered most of it. He argues that the script employed on the earliest of the extant Jurchen inscriptions, the Da Jin deshengtuo bei inscription (dated 1185) is a mature form of the script; the script on these sheets must be much earlier, and probably date from the year 1119, the year of the creation of the large script. On the basis of Jin's article, Dao Erji has written an important study "Guanyu Nūzhen da, xiao zi de wenti" [On the problem of the large and small Jurchen scripts] (1980).

A pattern seems to be emerging. It seems that the script on the Gu taishi mingshi ji inscription and the Xigushan inscription is the Khitan large script. It seems to have been based on deformed or modified forms of Chinese

characters, and was no doubt limited to perhaps a few hundred symbols. Later, when the Khitans came to learn of the alphabetic Uighur script, the possibility of writing phonetically arose. These phonetic symbols were known as the small script; the script used on the Da Jin huangdi jinglüe langjun xingji and the epitaphs in the Liao Imperial Mausoleum is a sophisticated one, incorporating both phonetic and ideographic symbols. The first form of the Jurchen script was based on the Khitan large (ideographic) script - this is the form of the script found in the Nüzhen zishu found in Xi'an. This script could be used for enumerating items, but could not express grammatical functions or record words for which a special character had not been invented. In the course of time, a number of graphs acquired a syllabo-phonetic function, in addition to their basic use as ideograms; many of these symbols eventually became purely phonetic ones, and were used for grammatical terminations. This is the script we see in the Jin Dynasty inscriptions, such as the Nüzhen jinshi bei inscription (1224) or the Ming Dynasty Jurchen-Chinese glossary. By the time of the last extant inscription in Jurchen, the Nuergan Yongningsi bei inscription (1413) the script had become practically syllabo-phonetic, though many of the basic symbols (man, year, month etc.) were still written as ideograms.

The Jurchen script was finally abolished by the Qing in 1658.

## CHAPTER TWO THE KHITAN SCRIPT

As mentioned above, the script used on the Gu tai shi ming shi bei inscription can be tentatively identified as being the Khitan large script. Several other inscriptions in this script have come to light; that discovered in Xigushan, also known as the Xiao Xiaozhong muzhi inscription; the Yelü Yanning muzhi inscription; the Bei da wang muzhi inscription; the Yingli bei inscription and several fragments excavated from the area of the Liao capital. The Gu taishi mingshi bei inscription has been lost, and the only rubbing of it is very unclear. There is also a possibility that it might indeed have been a forgery. There are more than 830 separate symbols on the other inscriptions; if those on the Gu taishi mingshi bei inscription are counted, there seem to be about 1000 characters in this script. There has been very little work, or progress, on this script, owing to the paucity of the material, the badly eroded state of the inscriptions and the lack of bilinguals. One of the inscriptions, the Xiao Xiaozhong muzhi inscription discovered at Jinxi, has a Chinese inscription on the back, which seems to be a translation. This has been studied by Yan Wanzhang, "Jinxi Xigushan chutu Qidanwen muzhi yanjiu" [Research on the epitaph excavated at Xigushan, Jinxi] (1957). Through a comparison of the dates of the two inscriptions, Yan was able to determine the meaning of several of the Khitan characters; these characters give us a good idea of the general principles of the script.

There are four dates in the Khitan inscription, two of which can be aligned with dates in the Chinese inscription, based on the similarity in the numerals; on the basis of these, the general meaning of the dates in Khitan alone can be ascertained. These are set out in the tables below. It is to be noted that in the second of these dates, the Chinese expression jiawu (one of the sexagenary terms used to denote years) corresponds to a Khitan character apparently derived from the Chinese character 馬 ma 'horse'. This led to the discovery that the Khitans used the "twelve animals" and the "five metals" to designate years, months and days.

TABLE 1: Dates in Khitan and Chinese  
in the Xigushan inscription.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
K	天	万	五	年	十	二	月	廿	五	日
C	太	安	五	年	十	二	月	二	十	五

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
K	天	万	三	年	五	月	廿	六	日		
C	重	熙	二	十	三	甲	午	[年]	五	月	二

TABLE 2: Dates in Khitan only in the Xigushan inscription

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
K	天	万	三	年	三	月	廿	六	日					
C	大	安	三	兔	年	三	木	龍	月	二	十	六	?	?

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
K	天	万	三	年	三	月	廿	六	日	
C	木	龍	年	?	兔	月	七	火	馬	日

The first line in Table 2 is (literally): tai'an (period), third year, the year of the rabbit, the third month, the wood-dragon month, the twenty sixth day, the [?] [?] day, and the fourth Khitan date can be understood as

corresponding to Chinese: wood-dragon year [?]-rabbit month, twenty seventh fire-horse day.

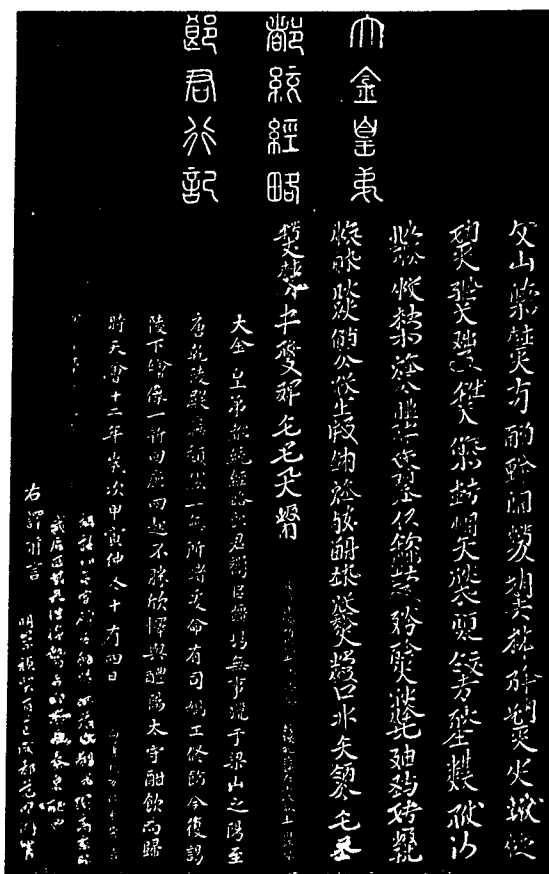
Such is the general nature of the large Khitan script. The type of Khitan script used on the epitaphs in the Liao Imperial Mausoleum, and in a number of other inscriptions discovered in recent years, can then be tentatively identified as being the small Khitan script. Since its discovery, it has fascinated a number of scholars, and much progress has been made. The locus classicus for basic information on the Khitan small script is in K. Wittfogel and C.S. Fêng, History of Chinese Society: Liao (907-1125), pp. 240-253. Articles which review and summarise the state of research until the late 1970s are by Gy. Kara, "A propos de l'inscription Khitane de 1150" (1975) and Tamura Jitsuzō, "Kittan Joshin moji kō" [A study of the Khitan and Jurchen scripts] (1976). An important breakthrough in the decipherment of this script came in 1977, with the publication of an article by the Khitan Script Research Group, consisting of Chinggeltei, Chen Naixiong, Xing Fuli, Liu Fengzhu and Yu Baolin, entitled "Guanyu Qidan xiao zi yanjiu" [Research on the Khitan small script]. This was followed by "Qidan xiao zi jiedu xin tan" [New investigations in the decipherment of the Khitan small script] (1978) and several other articles by scholars working in this field. In 1985 the Khitan Script Research Group published a major work, Qidan xiao zi yanjiu [Research on the Khitan Small Script], which is a complete compendium of all inscriptions in the Khitan small script discovered to date, frequency lists, a summary of all research done by Chinese and non-Chinese scholars, and a complete bibliography. Nishida Tatsuo, "Kittan moji kaidoku no shin tenkai" [New developments in the decipherment of the Khitan script] (1982) is based on the two articles mentioned above; Gy. Kara has written a brief article "On the Khitan writing systems" (1987) summarising the major findings of the Khitan Script Research group. Research in China on the Khitan small script has been prolific; the current state of research is summarised by Liu Fengzhu and Yu Baolin, "Qidan zi yanjiu gaikuang" [A survey on research on the Khitan script] (1984), and Jia Jingyan, "Qidanwen" [The Khitan script] (1982); a bibliography can be found in Minzu yuwen, 1984, issue no. 6.

The only Khitan-Chinese bilingual is the Da Jin huangdi dutong jinglüe langjun xingji inscription, and an inspection of it will give some idea of the nature of the Khitan small script. Through a process of deduction it is not possible to reproduce here, the Khitan Script Research Group compared the final lines of the Khitan and Chinese versions of this inscription:



TABLE 3: The last line of the Da Jin huangdi dutong jinglue langjun xingji inscription

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
K	𐰽𐰺	𐰽𐰺	𐰽𐰺	𐰽𐰺	𐰽𐰺	𐰽𐰺	𐰽𐰺	𐰽𐰺	𐰽𐰺
C	尚	書	職	方	郎	中	黃	應	期



Ill. 5 The Da Jin huangdi dutong jinglue langjun xingji inscription

and were able to isolate certain phonetic elements used to transcribe Chinese words. The Chinese text above is read (in Modern Standard Chinese) shang shu zhi fang lang zhong huang ying qi; the Khitan can be shown to be read sh-ang sh-u zhi fang l-ang zh-ung huang ying k-i, thus giving the phonetic values 𐰽 = sh; 𐰽 = ang; 𐰽 = u; 𐰽 = zhi; 𐰽 = ing; 𐰽 = k; 𐰽 = i. The Chinese text means "[written by the] Shangshu zhi fang lang zhong (an official title), Huang Yingqi (a personal name). Further perusal of the text shows that the Chinese expression 唐乾陵 Tang Qian Ling (a placename) corresponds to Khitan 𐰽𐰺𐰽𐰺 and it is possible to isolate certain phonetic elements in the Khitan: t-ang-en (-en is a genitive suffix) ki-ian l-ing-te (-te is a dative suffix), giving us the equivalents 𐰽 = t; 𐰽 = ang (as above); 𐰽 = ki; 𐰽 = ian; 𐰽 = l (as above); 𐰽 = ing (as above). Similarly the Chinese term 梁山 Liang Shan (also a placename) corresponds to Khitan 𐰽𐰺𐰽𐰺 and it is possible to isolate the elements l-ian sh-an-an (-an is a genitive suffix). In this way it is possible to determine the readings of some 200 of the 378 phonetic symbols employed in the Khitan small script. It is also possible to reconstruct some native Khitan words written phonetically; for example the tenth character in the first line 𐰽𐰺 can be read \*ša-a-li; in the vocabulary of Khitan words appended to the History of the Liao Dynasty it is recorded "in Khitan, ša-li means langjun (prince); sure enough, ša-a-li corresponds to langjun in the Chinese inscription. Other words recorded in the History of the Liao Dynasty in Chinese transcription have been identified in various inscriptions; for example nie-he, 捏褐 'dog', has been identified as 𐰽𐰺 ne-hei in transcriptions; tao-li 陶里 'hare' as 𐰽𐰺 tao-li-a. The History of the Liao Dynasty records the Khitan word for "filial piety" as being 赤實得本 chi-shi-de-ben; this appears in Khitan as 𐰽𐰺𐰽𐰺

\*š-i-is-t-pu. It is possible to reconstruct some Khitan ideograms in this way; for example 'five' 𐰺 also appears used phonetically in the word for 'hare' \*tao-li-a; suggesting that the Khitan word for five was read tao, as indeed it is recorded in the vocabulary attached to the History of the Liao Dynasty. The similarity of several Khitan words to Mongolian should be noted: Khitan \*nehej, Mongol noqai 'dog'; Kh. \*taulia, Mo. taulai 'hare'; Kh. \*tao, Mo. tabun 'five'; Kh. \*mor, Mo. mori 'horse', Kh. \*u'ul Mo. ebül 'winter'; Kh. \*iama, Mo. yamaya 'sheep', Kh. \*yis, Mo. yisü 'nine'.

There are many apparently phonetic elements which do not appear in Chinese loan words; subsequently the readings of these have been difficult to determine. So far 378 phonetic elements have been distinguished; it has been possible to give tentative phonetic values to 126 of them. There are also cases where the meaning of an ideographic character is known, but not the pronunciation; in some cases it is possible to guess the reading of an ideogram, for example, 𐰺 means 'year'; and the word for year in the vocabulary appended to the History of the Liao Dynasty is transcribed by the Chinese character 桓 (Modern Standard Chinese huan); on the basis of this the tentative reading \*hon has been given to this character.

To get a clearer idea of the way the Khitan script functioned, and the degree to which it has been deciphered, it will be helpful to look at the Da Jin huangdi dutong jinglue langjun xingji inscription in some detail. It is not possible to discuss the whole inscription here, but an analysis of the first and last lines of the inscription will suffice for the present purpose. The first line of the inscription contains ten characters:

TABLE 4: The first line of the Da Jin Huang Di inscription.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
𐰺	山	𐰺	𐰺	𐰺	𐰺	𐰺	𐰺	𐰺	𐰺

This can be tentatively deciphered as follows: (1) 𐰺 and (2) 山 [meaning: Great Jin State; ideographic characters; possible readings: (1) dai (2) gin (if from Chinese); Murayama Shichiro suggests \*yike for (1) and Liu Fengzhu suggests \*rulugu for (2); (3) 𐰺 composed of (a) 𐰺 [k], (b) 𐰺 [ue], (c) 𐰺 [en]; so \*kue-en; \*kue is presumably from Chinese guo; -en is a genitive ending; (4) 𐰺 composed of (a) 𐰺 [xa], (b) 𐰺 [ya], (c) 𐰺 [an], so \*xava-an 'of the Khan'; (5) 𐰺 is an ideographic character, presumably derived from the Chinese character 弟 di 'younger brother', to which it corresponds in the Chinese text of the inscription; (6) 𐰺 and (7) 𐰺 are read č-i and g-u respectively, so \*čigu, corresponding to the Chinese dutong, an official title which can be translated 'military director'; it might derive from the Chinese expression qigu 'banners and drums; i.e. war'; (8) 𐰺 is composed of (a) 𐰺 (g) and (b) 𐰺 [ing], so \*ging (corresponding to Chinese jing; (9) 𐰺 composed of (a) 𐰺 [l], (b) 𐰺 [ia] and (c) 𐰺 [u]; so \*liauu, corresponding to Chinese lue; (10) 𐰺 composed of (a) 𐰺 [ša], (b) 𐰺 [a] and (c) li, so \*šaali, corresponding to langjun in Chinese (cf. the note on this word above).

The date, too, can be deciphered. The Chinese text gives the date as Tianhui shier nian suici jiaiyin zhong dong shi you si ri 'the twelfth year of the tianhui period, in the year jiaiyin of the sexagenary cycle, in mid-winter, on the fourteenth day'. The Chinese and Khitan versions of the date are given below:

TABLE 5: The date on the Da Jin huangdi inscription.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
天	會	十	二	年	歲	次	甲	寅	仲	冬	十	有	四	日
口	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔

The Khitan version can be analysed as follows: (1) 口 is an ideographic character; from a comparison with other inscriptions it can be inferred to mean 'that'; (2) 𠂔 is also ideographic and corresponds to the Chinese shi 'time'; as the vocabulary appended to the History of the Liao Dynasty gives the Khitan word for "time" as po, this character may have been read \*po. (3) 𠂔 is ideographic and corresponds to Chinese tian; 𠂔 is obviously borrowed from 天; some investigators surmise it to have been read \*tengri (from Mongol); (4) 𠂔 is composed of (a) 令 [t], (b) 丙 [iou] and (c) 𠂔 [uei]; as this must be a transcription of the Chinese term tianhui, (b) must have been read [ien], so (4)

is \*tien-uei; (5) 𠂔 is an ideograph, the numeral ten (the pronunciation is not known); (6) 𠂔 is an ideograph, the numeral two; the vocabulary appended to the Qidan guozhi gives the Khitan word for two as \*xo, (cf. Mongol qoyar), so perhaps this character is pronounced \*xo; (7) 𠂔 is composed of (a) 𠂔 [s], (b) 𠂔 iau and (c) 𠂔 [e], so \*siaue. This word corresponds to jia in the Chinese inscription; the Khitans apparently used the "five elements" and the "twelve animals" in their system of counting years, in which jia would correspond to the element tin and the colour blue; tin in Mongol is toyolya and in Manchu tolohon; blue in Mongol is köke and in Manchu nowanggiyan, so it seems the Khitan term \*siaue (if this reconstruction is correct) was not related to the Mongol or Manchu terms; (8) 𠂔 is composed of (a) 𠂔 [qa], (b) 𠂔 [ya] and (c) 𠂔 [hui], so \*qayahui, corresponding to Chinese yin; amongst the twelve animals this corresponds to tiger (cf. Mongol bars and Manchu tasha); (9) 𠂔 is an ideogram meaning year, apparently derived from Chinese 年. As mentioned above, the vocabulary appended to the History of the Liao Dynasty gives the Khitan word for year as \*hon, so some scholars give this graph that reading. However, this symbol is also used as a phonetic element, with the pronunciation [ai]. The Khitan large script form of this character was very different: from which the Jurchen form 𠂔 [\*anie] was derived. (10) 𠂔, composed of (a) 𠂔 (b) 𠂔 and (c) 𠂔; Liu Fengzhu has reconstructed this word as \*duanda and determines the values of (a) as [du], (b) as [an] and (c) as [da] on this basis, modifying values previously given to these symbols; (11) 𠂔, composed of (a) 𠂔 [u] and (b) 𠂔 [ul], so \*u'ul, which corresponds to the Chinese dong 'winter' (cf. Mongol ebül, Middle Mongol übü/ügül); (12) 𠂔 is the ideogram for ten, the same as character (5) above; (13) 𠂔 is an ideogram corresponding to Chinese si 'four', its pronunciation is not

known; (14) 𠂔 is an ideogram corresponding to the Chinese ri 'day'; its pronunciation is not known. The Khitan large script character for day was 𠂔, derived from Chinese from both of which the Jurchen form 𠂔 [\*inenggi] was derived.

So the first line of the inscription can be tentatively read: [GREAT](dai? yike?) [JIN](gin? rulugu?) kue-en xaya-an [YOUNGER BROTHER] (Chinese di, Jurchen deu < degu?) čigu ging liau šaali..., and the last line [THAT] [TIME] (po?) [HEAVEN] tien-uei [TEN] [TWO] (xo?) siaue (tin? blue?) qayahui (tiger?) [YEAR] (hon? ai?) duanda (middle?) u'ul (winter?) [TEN] [FOUR] [DAY]. Some of the body of the inscription can also be deciphered, for example the place names mentioned above. Nishida Tatsuo has studied the characters in the Khitan inscription corresponding to the Chinese tai shou yu han yin er gui (he drank together with the governor and returned) and has reconstructed the Khitan as \*nait-ua chap (y)amse xi-i-is-kui ph-?-l-u. These few examples give some indication of the nature of the Khitan small script, the progress made in deciphering it, and the very limited extent of that progress so far.

## CHAPTER THREE

## THE JURCHEN SCRIPT

The Jurchen script, as it is found on the inscriptions of the Jin Dynasty, the Nüzhen zishu and the Sino-Jurchen vocabularies of the Ming period, is obviously derived from the Chinese script and the Khitan large script, with many innovations of its own. The idea of writing grammatical terminations syllabically seems to have been borrowed from the Khitan small script, but the influence of that script on the Jurchen script seems to have been slight. The Jurchen script, in its mature form, contains ideograms of one, two or three syllables; partial ideograms, which are used in combination with phonetic symbols to write complete words, and phonetic syllabic symbols, which were used to write grammatical particles, Chinese loan words and words for which a special ideogram did not exist.

The following table compares the numerals in Chinese, the Khitan large script, the ideographic characters in the Khitan small script, and in the Jurchen script:

TABLE 6: Numerals in Chinese, Khitan and Jurchen.

Chinese	Khitan large	Khitan small	Jurchen	
一 yi	一	𠂔	𠂔 *emu	one
二 er	二	𠂔	𠂔 *jue	two
三 san	三	𠂔	𠂔 *ilan	three
四 si	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔 *duin	four
五 wu	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔 *šunja	five
六 liu	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔 *ninggu	six
七 qi	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔 *nadan	seven
八 ba	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔 *jakun	eight
九 jiu	𠂔	𠂔	𠂔 *uyun	nine
十 shi	十	𠂔	𠂔 *jua	ten

Many Jurchen characters are obviously derived from the Chinese equivalents, perhaps via the Khitan large script forms; others appear to derive from distorted forms of Chinese characters:

TABLE 7: Jurchen characters derived from Chinese via Khitan.

Chinese	Khitan large	Khitan small	Jurchen
天 tian	𐰇 𐰏	𐰇	𐰇 𐰏 *abka sky
年 nian	𐰇	𐰏	𐰇 *anie year
月 yue	𐰏	𐰏	𐰏 𐰏 *bie month
日 ri	𐰏	𐰏	𐰏 𐰏 *inenggi day

TABLE 8: Jurchen characters derived from distorted Chinese characters.

Chinese	Jurchen
東 dong	𐰇 𐰏 *jule-ši east
西 xi	𐰇 𐰏 *fuli-ši west
南 nan	𐰇 𐰏 *fan-ti south
北 bei	𐰇 𐰏 *uli-ti north
弟 di	𐰇 𐰏 *deu-un brother
風 feng	𐰇 𐰏 *edu-un wind
兄 xiong	𐰇 𐰏 *ahu-un brother
國 guo	𐰇 𐰏 *guru-un country

(It should be noted that the characters in Table 8 above are examples of "partial ideograms", i.e. they are combined with phonetic elements to form full words.)

Some Jurchen characters appear to derive from Chinese, but in these cases only the pronunciation of the character, not its meaning, is involved:

TABLE 9: Jurchen characters derived from Chinese characters (similar in sound but not similar in meaning).

Chinese	Jurchen
京 jing < ging	𐰇 *ging
其 qi < ki	𐰇 *ki
犀 xi < hi	𐰇 *hi
太 tai	𐰇 *tai
大 da (dai)	𐰇 *dai
茶 cha	𐰇 *sa
雨 yu	𐰇 *i
于 yu	𐰇 *i
舍 she	𐰇 *ša

Several writers have attempted to go farther in deriving each symbol in the Jurchen script from Chinese or Khitan, but, apart from the fairly obvious examples listed above, their explanations are not very convincing. The most prolific writer in this field has been Yamaji Hiroaki. His major work is *Joshin moji no seiji ni kansuru kenkyū* [Research on the structure of Jurchen characters] (1958). The publication of this book prompted a long review article by Jin Guangping, "Nüzhen zhi zi fangfa lun" [On the method of creating Jurchen characters] (1958, published 1980). Yamaji derives Jurchen characters from Chinese according to ten different methods, involving direct borrowing with some distortion, phonetic similarity and so on. His method of deriving Jurchen characters has been followed and developed by Jin Qicong in his *Nüzhenwen cidian* [Jurchen Dictionary] (1984), in which suggested derivations are given for almost every character. More examples of the Jurchen and Khitan scripts (both large and small) have come to light in recent years, and many of Jin Qicong's derivations appear quite

sound.

Putting proposed derivations to one side, one can list a fair number of Jurchen characters which are unlike Chinese, but which can be found in the Khitan large script. For example, the following characters which can be found in the Xigushan inscription can also be found in Jurchen (in form, that is; it is not yet clear as to whether these characters have the same meaning in both scripts):

TABLE 10: Characters found in both Jurchen and the Khitan large script.

并 未 脊 壳 本 平 麦 空  
仗 手 反 又 出 升 益 毗

The following characters are almost the same in both scripts; they differ by the addition or omission of a dot:

TABLE 11: Almost identical characters in Jurchen and the Khitan large script.

矣 飛 軀 致 丕 更 日 月 二  
斗 丰 其 什 在 弓 谷 原 鼻

Some Jurchen characters are also to be found in the Khitan small script, but these are relatively few:

TABLE 12: Jurchen characters identical with those found in the Khitan small script

用 达 反 又 帝 矣 朱 尙  
乃 侑 矣 矣 兄 伏 生 杰

As mentioned above, the ideographic characters are of two types: one of which can be used to write a whole word, another of which is used to write the first syllable or two of a word, in conjunction with one or more phonetic symbols. These ideographs mainly have disyllabic readings, but there are some examples of monosyllabic or trisyllabic characters:

TABLE 13: Monosyllabic ideographic characters.

𠂇	*mo	tree
𠂈	*na	earth
𠂉	*da	root
𠂊	*fi (<pi)	writing brush

TABLE 14: Disyllabic ideographic characters.

𠂋	*abka	sky
𠂌	*lefu	bear
𠂍	*loho	knife
𠂎	*amin	father
𠂏	*tumen	ten thousand
𠂐	*honi	sheep
𠂑	*beye	body
𠂒	*tiho	chicken
𠂓	*niru	arrow
𠂔	*uʃu	head

TABLE 15: Trisyllabic ideographic characters.

𠂕	*alawa	imperial edict
𠂖	*hefuli	stomach

半 \*mežilen heart  
 五 \*tobohon fifteen

All the characters listed above represent whole words. There is another group of characters which are not used independently, and which only represent part of a word. Examples of this type are:

TABLE 16: Partial-ideographic characters (used with phonograms)

广	tu	in	广	天	tu-gi	*tugi	cloud
夙	mede	in	夙	屯	mede-ri	*mederi	sea
虫	mudu	in	虫	竿	mudu-r	*mudur	dragon
更	neku	in	更	竿	neku-r	*nekur	friend
友	omo	in	友	早	omo-lo	*omolo	grand-child
库	inda	in	库	秀	inda-hun	*indahun	dog

There are several verbs, in which the root form should be considered an independent ideogram, even though they are always followed by suffixes, written with phonetic characters. Such are:

TABLE 17: Ideographic characters always followed by suffixes.

朱	*iši-	to arrive
仞	*dondi-	to listen
写	*ili-	to stand
本	*bandi-	to be born
兮	*inje-	to laugh
为	*tedu-	to sleep

TABLE 18: Partial list of simple syllabic phonograms.

	a	e	i	o	u
b-	东 夕	半 丈	于 南	库 瓦	生 来
m-	系 元	半 千	耗 兵		文 未
f-	耗 元	半 玳	米 角	致 草	虫 东
d-	南 甫		角 为	草 卡	并 反
t-	甫 走	友 脊	为 羊	卡 万	反 伏
n-	走 友	友 脊	羊 羊		伏 英
l-	友 角	太 矢	休 舟	早 库	弓 英
j-	友 角	矢 企	舟 舟	早 虫	虫 丑
č-	舌 羌	年 企	舟 舟		丑 丑
š-	舌 羌		舟 舟		丑 丑
s-	茶 庚	采 弓		羽 太	采 采
g-	洋 庚	兆 弓	斥 屏		采 采
h-	中 庚	兆 弓	斥 屏		采 采
k-	物 庚	兆 弓	斥 屏		采 采

The final category of characters are those which are used phonetically. These are fairly numerous; a list of the most common ones is given in Table 18 above.

Some of these phonograms were used mainly to indicate a final -n after a vowel:

TABLE 19: Phonograms indicating final -n.

米 -an  
 久 -in

土	-un
𡗗	-en
𡗘	-on

Many Jurchen words are written entirely with such phonograms:

TABLE 20: Jurchen words written in phonograms.

𡗗	u-fa	*ufa	flour
𡗗𡗗	u-mie-ha	*umieha	insect
𡗗𡗗𡗗	hu-da-ša	*hudaša-	to sell

In some cases there is no clear distinction between an ideograph and a phonogram; for example 𡗗 \*ali- 'to accept' is an ideogram, but it is also used in the word ali-in [\*alin] 'mountain' purely for its phonetic value; di- 'to come' is used in 𡗗𡗗 hu-di-ra [\*hudira-] 'to sing' purely for its phonetic value.

The discovery of the Nüzhen zishu [Book of Jurchen Characters] in Xi'an has shed some light on how this system might have evolved. In these lists, there are many examples of words written with one character, which in later Jurchen (such as that on the inscriptions, or in the Hua-Yi yiyu) were written with two, or even three symbols.

TABLE 21: Jurchen words written with one symbol in the Nüzhen zishu but two in the Hua-Yi yiyu.

Nüzhen zishu

Hua-Yi yiyu

𡗗	hahai	𡗗𡗗	hahai-ai	*hahai	male
---	-------	----	----------	--------	------

𡗗	hehe	𡗗𡗗	hehe-e	*hehe	female
𡗗	eige	𡗗𡗗	eige-ge	*eige	husband
𡗗	sarigan	𡗗𡗗	sarigan-gan	*sarigan	wife
𡗗	omolo	𡗗𡗗	omolo-lo	*omolo	grand-child
𡗗	iha(n)	𡗗𡗗	iha(n)-an	*ihan	ox
𡗗	mori(n)	𡗗𡗗	mori(n)-in	*mori(n)	horse
𡗗	indahu(n)	𡗗𡗗	indahun-hun	*indahun	dog
𡗗	afi	𡗗𡗗	afi-fi	*afi	lion
𡗗	edu(n)	𡗗𡗗	edu(n)-un	*edun	wind
𡗗	bono(n)	𡗗𡗗	bono(n)-on	*bonon	hail

Some words are written with one symbol in the Nüzhen zishu, but with three in the Hua-Yi yiyu, for example \*engemer 'saddle' is written 𡗗𡗗𡗗 in the Hua-Yi yiyu; \*funirhei 'hair (on the head)' is written 𡗗𡗗𡗗 in the Hua-Yi yiyu. Jin Qicong has argued that these characters give a clue to the evolution of the Jurchen script, in three stages (of which the second is hypothetical at this stage):

TABLE 22: Development of Jurchen script

𡗗	engemer	𡗗𡗗	enge(mer)mer	𡗗𡗗𡗗	en(ge)(mer)ge-mer
𡗗	funirhei	𡗗𡗗	funir(hei)hei	𡗗𡗗𡗗	fun(ir)(hei)ir-hei

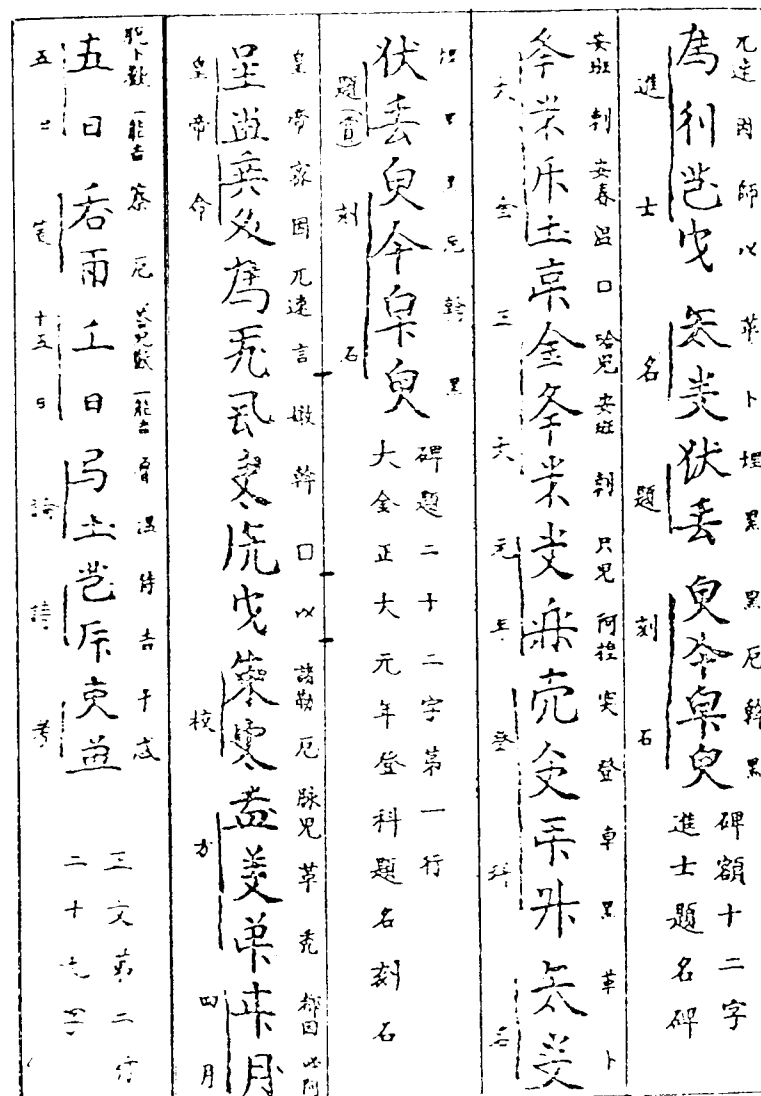


It would seem that the words in the table above were originally written with one character, but in the course of time phonograms representing the last syllable came to be attached to the ideogram; in some cases, phonograms representing the last two syllables of the word were attached to the ideogram. In many other cases, however, this development did not occur. In other cases, for example the word for 'thunder' 𩇛 [\*akdien] is written with one symbol in both the Nüzhen zishu and the Hua-Yi yiyu but with two ( 𩇛 𩇛 ) in the Jin Dynasty inscriptions. This might indicate that the Nüzhen zishu might have been used in the compilation of the Hua-Yi yiyu; in other certain forms in the Ming Dynasty Hua-Yi yiyu appear to be (if one accepts the evolution of the Jurchen script outlined above) than the forms on the Jin Dynasty inscriptions.

To get a better idea of the way the Jurchen script was used in practice, it will be useful to analyse in some detail an actual inscription, namely the Nüzhen jinshi timing bei inscription of 1224, which commemorates the conferring of the degree of jinshi on successful Jurchen candidates that year. More information on this inscription is given below. I have reproduced Luo Fucheng's handwritten copy of part of the inscription, namely the title, the introduction and several lines within the text, in Illustration 6 below.

TABLE 23: Title of the Nüzhen jinshi timing bei inscription

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12  
 𩇛 𩇛 𩇛 𩇛 𩇛 𩇛 𩇛 𩇛 𩇛 𩇛 𩇛 𩇛



Ill. 6: The title and first line of the Nüzhen jinshi timing bei inscription (in the transcription of Luo Fucheng)

Characters (1), (2) and (3), 烏利邑, are read us-in-ši, and transcribe the Chinese expression jinshi. (4) is read i and is a genitive suffix. (5) and (6), appear in the Hua-Yi yiyu where they are transcribed ge and bu respectively, but as this word corresponds to Manchu gerbu 'name', this word might be transcribed \*ge[r]bu. (7) 伏 is unknown in later texts. It is very similar to one in the Hua-Yi yiyu, 伏, which appears in the word 伏貳 \*merhe-, 'to reward', which has led some investigators to give it that meaning here. However, in another inscription, the Da Jin desheng tuosong bei, the Chinese term shilu 'veritable records' is translated 車全伏去, showing that 伏 means 'to record'. The pronunciation is unknown, unless it is indeed a variety of 伏, whereby one could give it the reading mer. (8) 去 appears in the Hua-Yi yiyu with the reading hehe. (9) and (10), 貳个, are to be read he and e respectively; he'e would correspond to Manchu geye- 'to carve, to inscribe'. (11) and (12) 阜阜 appear in the Hua-Yi yiyu where they are given the reading we-he and are translated 'stone'; \*wehe corresponds to Manchu wehe 'stone'. The first line then can be read \*usinši-i ge[r]bu mer(?)hehe he'e wehe and means 'inscribed stone recording the names of the [successful candidates for the degree of] jinshi.'

The next line contains twenty two characters:

TABLE 24: First line of the Nüzhen jinshi timing bei inscription

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
阜	米	个	土	車	全	阜	米	矣	矣	壳
12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22
矣	米	个	矣	矣	伏	去	貳	个	阜	矣

(1) and (2) 阜米 are to be found in the Hua-Yi yiyu and are to be read amba-an [\*amban] and mean 'big, great'; (3) and (4) 个土 are read anču-un [\*ančun];, ančun means 'gold' (Chinese jin); \*amban ančun correspond to Chinese Da Jin 'The Great Jin Dynasty'. (10) 矣, is read \*anie and means 'year'; the characters preceeding this must be the reign title. (7) and (8) are the same as (1) and (2), so \*amban, corresponding to Chinese da 'big, great'. The only reign period in the Jin Dynasty in which the second character is da is the period zhengda (1224-1231). Sure enough, in the History of the Jin Dynasty, it is recorded that in the first year of the zhengda period, one of the triennial metropolitan examinations for the degree of jinshi was held, and that the emperor, on the cyclical day jiachen of the fifth month conferred degrees upon Jurchen graduates. (9), 矣 appears in the Hua-Yi yiyu in the expression 矣得利 \*ajir morin 'foal', so perhaps (9) is to be read \*ajir here; it apparently means 'first', corresponding to Chinese yuan. That leaves us with (5) 車 and (6) 全. (5) does not appear in other texts; the second is in the Hua-Yi yiyu and is read har. The Manchu equivalent of zheng would be tob (as in the Manchu for the Qing reign period Yongzheng, Huwaliyasun Tob), which does not seem to be related to this word. Luo Fucheng, considering that 車 is similar to the Chinese 車 che, suggested reading this character če; Jin Qicong, taking into account the requirements of vowel harmony in a syllable preceeding har suggests čo for this character, and \*čohar as a transcription for this expression. In any case, the expression 車全伏去 appears in the Deshengtuo songbei inscription in the term 實錄 'veritable records'; as zheng means 'upright, correct' it seems certain that 車全, whatever its reading, corresponds to zheng. (11), (12), (13) and (14) 壳矣米个 go together; each is in the Hua-Yi

yiyu and are read te-den(g)-če-hei. (11) appears in the Hua-Yi yiyu in the expression 壳蚩力 te-de-buma, with the meaning 'to offer, to present'. \*buma is a verbal suffix; the root is \*tede-. (13), če is a suffix indicating continuity and (14) hei is a "modal converb suffix". As jinshi literally means 'presented scholars', presumably \*teden(g)čehei must mean 'those who were presented'. The rest of this line is the same as the title. The whole line can be read \*amban ančun čohar(?) amban aŋir(?) anie teden(g)čehei ge[r]bu mer(?)hehe he'e wehe 'an inscribed stone (stele) recording the names of the presented [scholars] in the first year of the zhengda period of the Great Jin Dynasty'.

The next line has twenty nine characters:

TABLE 25: The second line of the Nüzhen jinshi timing bei

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
呈	蚩	矣	久	烏	无	丑	吏	院	戊
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
策	太	孟	姜	羊	未	月	五	日	右
21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	
雨	五	日	弓	土	邑	佻	吏	蚩	

(1) and (2) 呈蚩 are transcriptions of the Chinese term huangdi 'emperor'; the Jurchen term was \*xa'an but huangdi appears often enough in the inscriptions. (3), (4), (5) and (6), 矣久烏无 are all phonograms and are to be found in the Hua-Yi yiyu, they can be read mi-ing-us-yen and are a transcription of the Chinese term ming jun. According to the History of the Jin Dynasty, it was in the Ming Jun

Hall that the jinshi degrees were presented. (10) 戊 is the genitive suffix -i, so (7), (8) and (9) 丑吏院 must correspond to the Chinese term dian 'palace, hall [in a palace]'. (7) and (8) can be found in the Hua-Yi yiyu and are read non and o respectively. (9) is unknown from other sources. Jin Qicong regards it is a variant of 仇虎氣; the third form appears in the Hua-Yi yiyu and is read go, so Jin suggests \*nonogo as a reconstruction for the Jurchen word for 'hall, palace'. The Mongol (and Manchu) word corresponding to Chinese dian, ordo, is obviously not related. Jin Qicong notes that in the History of the Jin Dynasty there is a Jurchen expression \*nagoli, which is glossed in Chinese as meaning 'a place of residence', and suggests that \*nonogo and \*nagoli might be related. (11) appears in the Hua-Yi yiyu in the words 東孟 \*juleši 'east' and \*jule 'in front of'. (12) is a phonogram read e, presumably here attached to \*jule-, so \*jule-e or \*jule. In the Liao and Jin periods palaces faced eastwards, so 'east' and 'in front of' were synonymous. (13) 孟 and (14) 姜 are to be found in the Hua-Yi yiyu; in Grube's edition 孟 was transcribed 脉兒, so Grube reconstructed \*mehr for this character; in other editions, however, it is transcribed 厄兒革 e-r-ge and is translated 'place'; as the Manchu word for place is ergi, \*erge would seem to be the correct transcription for this word. (15) 羊 is a locative suffix, read du (there is another locative suffix, 京 do, used with back vowels, whereas du is used with front vowels, so its pronunciation in the Jin period may have been dū). The next four characters, (16) 未, (17) 月, (18) 五, and (19) 日 are all ideograms, read \*duin bie tobohon inenggi, meaning 'fifteenth day of the fourth month'. (20) 右 and (21) 雨 are phonograms, read ča and ai, and transcribe the Chinese expression ce 'theme'. (策 is usually read ce in Modern Standard Chinese, but the reading chai is recorded in earlier

dictionaries). (22) 𠂔 and (23) 日 are also ideograms, read \*darhon inenggi and mean 'seventeenth day'. (24) 𠂔 and (25) 𠂔 are phonograms, read lu and un respectively; they transcribe the Chinese expression lun 'dissertation'. (26) 𠂔 is also a phonogram, read ši and transcribes the Chinese expression shi 'verses'. (27) 𠂔 is an instrumental suffix, read gi. The final two characters, (28) 𠂔 and (29) 𠂔 appear in the Hua-Yi yiyu in the expression 𠂔𠂔𠂔 \*čente-meī, and is glossed in Chinese kao 'to examine'; -meī is a "nonperfective converb suffix".

So the whole sentence can be read \*huangdi ming-usien nonogo(?) -i 𠂔ule-e erge-du duin bie tobohon inenggi čaai darhon inenggi lun ši-ge čende, literally "the emperor, in the place to the east of (or: in front of) the Ming Jun Hall, on the fifteenth day of the fourth month; the theme; on the seventeenth day the dissertation and the verses by-means-of-which he examined", in other words, "the emperor examined [them] by means of a theme on the fifteenth day of the fourth month, and by means of a dissertation and verses on the seventeenth day, in the area to the east of (or: in front of) the Ming Jin Hall."

It must be stressed that the above "reconstructions" are only very approximate, based as they are on Chinese transcriptions of Ming Dynasty Jurchen (the task of reconstructing the values of these characters in Jin Dynasty Jurchen has barely begun), but at least they give some idea as to how the language must have been pronounced, and how the script was used in actual practice.

There are still many questions remaining on the Jurchen script. Possibly the ideograms were originally conceived of as roots, to which phonograms could be added to express grammatical suffixes. It seems that at least some of the phonograms were originally ideograms, and were used in both functions. Other ideograms, acquiring a function as phonograms, lost their ideographic function and were used merely as phonograms. In the Nüzhen zishu there are many ideograms which do not appear in the Hua-Yi yiyu; it may be that some words originally written with ideograms came to be written entirely with phonograms.

The greatest problem is that, up till now, almost

all researchers have relied on the Chinese transcriptions of Jurchen done during the Ming dynasty. Although most (but not all) modern researchers at least take into account the readings of the Chinese characters according to their Ming pronunciation rather than their modern pronunciation when determining their transcription values, the Jurchen language which is being transcribed still reflects the way it must have been pronounced in Ming times. The only systematic attempt to truly reconstruct the readings of the characters as they were actually pronounced during the Jin Dynasty, at the time of their creation and use, was by L. Ligeti in his "Note préliminaire sur le déchiffrement des 'petites caractères' joutchen" (1953) and "Les inscriptions Djurtchen de Tyr: la formule om mani padme hūm" (1961), in which, however, only a few characters were treated. In his preface to A Study of the Jurchen Language and Script: Reconstruction and Decipherment (1977), G.N. Kiyose writes "... the reconstruction of Ming-Jurchen phonology makes possible the reconstruction of Chin-Jurchen phonology through historico-linguistic methods. This is the methodology I have used in my reconstructions presented in this volume". However, in the same preface, Kiyose writes "this work is a study of the Jurchen language during the Ming period", and there is practically no reference to the phonology of the Jin period in this work, except for some isolated examples. Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong in their Nüzhen yuyan wenzi yanjiu [Research on the Jurchen Language and Script] and Jin Qicong in his Nüzhenwen zidian [Jurchen Dictionary] also use reconstructions of Jurchen which may well be accurate for Ming Jurchen (as they are based on Ming transcriptions), but which are not strictly accurate to transcribe Jin Dynasty inscriptions. The problem of why there are so many characters apparently read the same (perhaps they represented different values in the Jin Dynasty, which had fallen together by the Ming, or perhaps originally homophonic ideographs (with different meanings) came to be used as phonograms) remains unsolved. The task of reconstructing the original readings of the Jurchen characters remains to be done.

## CHAPTER FOUR: GLOSSES PRESERVED IN CHINESE HISTORICAL SOURCES

There is some material for the study of the Jurchen language preserved in glosses and vocabularies in historical sources. These are:

(a) The Jurchen vocabulary appended to the History of the Jin Dynasty. This is entitled "Jin Guoyu jie" [Explanation of the National Language of the Jin], and is appended to the last chapter of the Dynastic History. It consists of 125 words divided into five sections: (a) names of official posts; (b) words describing people; (c) common objects; (d) plants and animals and (e) surnames. This was the first material on the Jurchen language to be investigated by Western scholars. The first mention of it seems to be by C. Visdelou, in his Histoire abrégée de la Tartarie (1779), who quoted thirty four words from this vocabulary and compared them with their Manchu cognates, thus seeking to prove the identity of the two peoples. This list was reproduced by C. Langlès, Alphabet mandchou (1787), who provided the transcribed words with a "Jurchen" garb. Later J. Klaproth, in his Asia Polyglotta (1823) gave a somewhat longer list, as did A. Wylie, in his translation of the Ts'ing wan k'e mung, a Chinese Grammar of the Manchu Tartar Language (1855). This vocabulary was again examined by C. de Harlez, "Niu-tchis et Mandchous, rapports d'origine et de langage" (1888), who reported that only five words on this list were identical in the two languages, but in all seventy seven were very similar and belonged to related, but not identical languages. The words on Wylie's list were added, when appropriate, to W. Grube's edition of the Sino-Jurchen vocabulary of the Ming Dynasty. Three other studies have been devoted to this vocabulary: Watanabe Kuntarō, Shimpen kinshi meijikai [Explanation of the names (of people and places) in the History of the Jin Dynasty] (1931); Mao Wen, "Jinshi Guoyu mingwu bian: siyi biao" [On the vocabulary of the Jurchen language in the History of the Jin Dynasty] (1933) and Li Xuezhi, "Jin Guoyu jie zhu-shi" [The "Explanation of the National Language of the Jin" annotated and explained] (1970), but these studies are little more than identifications, where possible, of the Jurchen words with their cognates in Manchu or Mongol. The only contributions of a philological value seem to be the remarks by P. Pelliot in his articles "Les mots à h initial, aujourd'hui amuie, dans le mongol des XIIIe et XIVe siècles", and "Sur quelques mots d'Asie centrale attestés dans les textes chinois".

斜哥貂鼠	活离罕羔	桓端松	物類	胡刺窰突	烏烈草廩也	布囊曰蒲盧渾	金曰按春
蒲阿山雞	合喜犬子	阿虎里松子			沙刺衣襟也	盆曰阿里虎	銀朮可珠也
窩謀罕鳥卵也	訛古乃犬之有文者	孰輦蓮也				罐曰活女	

Ill. 7. A page from the Jurchen vocabulary appended to the History of the Jin Dynasty

(b) The Jurchen words in the text of the History of the Jin Dynasty. In M. Honda and E.B. Ceadel, "A survey of Japanese contributions to Manchurian studies", it is stated that "... in the Chin Shih and other Chinese historical texts there is a fairly large number of Jurchen words indicated by Chinese characters used phonetically, but no systematic study has been made of these". L. Ligeti writes in the same vein: "Dans le domaine de l'explication des noms et mots djurtchens on n'a pas fait de progrès dignes d'être mentionnés. Sans compter les quelques remarques d'une réelle valeur de P. Pelliot et les tentatives fort problématiques de Watanabe Kuntarō, l'on peut affirmer que ces recherches sont encore à leurs débuts" ("Les mots solons dans un ouvrage des Ts'ing"

p. 246). In a note he adds: "J'ai songé, avant tout, à Shimpen kinshi meijikai (Osaka 1931) de M. Watanabe Kuntarō ou il a examiné les noms propres djurtchens du Kin-che." The first comprehensive, if imperfect study of the Jurchen words scattered throughout the text of the History of the Jin Dynasty was the Liao Jin Yuan sanshi guoyu jie [Explanations of the National Languages of the Liao, Jin and Yuan Dynasties], compiled by a group of scholars under imperial orders to explain the non-Chinese words in the Dynastic Histories of the Liao, Jin and Yuan Dynasties. It was published in 1772. L. Ligeti has some comments on this work in his article "Les mots solons...", pp. 231ff. The book by Watanabe Kuntarō mentioned above is essentially a revision of the Jinshi yujie (the Jurchen section of the Chinese work mentioned above). The words gathered together in the Jinshi yujie are rearranged according to stroke order; the main entry is in the "unrevised", i.e. original form (the forms of many of the words in the History of the Jin Dynasty were arbitrarily changed by Qing editors); its location in the History and whether it refers to a name, tribe, place, surname and so on; the language from which the word derives, the word in Manchu, in the Manchu script (as provided in the Jinshi yujie), the romanised form of the Manchu word and the meaning, or suggested meaning of the word. Another work based on the Jinshi yujie is by Li Xuezhi, "Jinshi yujie zheng-wu chugao" [A preliminary draft of amendments to the Jinshi yujie] (1970); a resume of this article has been made by D. Holzman.

Indices to non-Chinese personal names, place names and official titles in the History of the Jin Dynasty have been prepared: the Jinshi fei Hanyu renming, diming, guanming suoyin [Non-Chinese personal names, place names and official titles in the History of the Jin Dynasty] contains only non-Chinese names; Kinshi goi shūsei by Onogawa Hidemi contains also Chinese names. Chen Shu, Jinshi shibu wuzhong [Five supplements to the History of the Jin Dynasty] contains a study of the Chinese and Jurchen names in the History of the Jin Dynasty.

(c) The Da Jin guo zhi. There is an earlier text, the Da Jin guo zhi [Annals of the Jin Dynasty], written in 1234 by Yuwen Mouzhao, which contains a list of words in Jurchen (in Chinese transcription) in an appendix. Many of these can be readily identified with their Manchu equivalents, but as far as I am aware there has been so systematic study of the Jurchen words in this text.

鄂爾多	幹里雅布	棟摩	羅索	伊里	尼楚赫	固紳	嘉哩
又滿洲語訛魯朵今並改正	滿洲語離不今改正	母滿洲語又作茶模今並改正	婁滿洲語又作婁宿今並改正	作滿洲語移今改正	副滿洲語又作銀珠今並改正	原滿洲語胡槍今也	作滿洲語里今改也

Ill. 8: A page of the Jurchen vocabulary appended to the Da Jin guo zhi

## CHAPTER FIVE INSCRIPTIONS IN THE JURCHEN SCRIPT

There are nine extant inscriptions in the Jurchen script. These are:

- (1) The Da Jin deshengtuo bei inscription (also known as the Jin Victory Memorial Stele);
- (2) The Nüzhen jinshi timing bei inscription (also known as the Yantai stele);
- (3) The Aotun Liangbi jianyin bei inscription;
- (4) The Aotun Liangbi shi inscription;
- (5) The Hailong Nüzhen guoshu moya inscription;
- (6) The Qingyuan inscription (also known as the Kyōngwōn inscription);
- (7) The Beiqing inscription (also known as the Kwansan inscription);
- (8) The Nuergan Yongningsi bei inscription (also known as the Tyr inscription);
- (9) The Zhao Yong da jiangjun inscription.

All of these, except the last which was discovered in 1980 and remains unpublished, have been discussed in detail by many scholars. There have been two major collections of Jurchen inscriptions, the first by Amma Yaichirō, Joshimbun kinsekishi ko [A Study of Inscriptions in the Jurchen Script] (1943); the other by Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong, as part of their book Nüzhen yuyan wenzi yanjiu [Research on the Jurchen Language and Script] (1964, 1980). Amma's corpus of Jurchen inscriptions was a pioneering work of great value in its day, but has been superseded by more recent studies; his methodology, too (e.g. use of Chinese characters to transcribe Jurchen, rather than a phonetic representation) is not in accordance with current practice. The study by Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong is much more than a corpus of inscriptions, which in fact forms only an appendix to this extremely valuable work. The book is divided into the following sections:

- (1) The Jurchen language - relationships with other languages
- (2) The creation and use of the Jurchen script
- (3) Materials for the study of the Jurchen script
- (4) The structure of Jurchen characters
- (5) The pronunciation of Jurchen characters
- (6) Jurchen grammar
- (7) The value of Jurchen to historical studies
- (8) Conclusion

The appendix contains studies of the Nüzhen jinshi timing bei inscription, the Aotun Liangbi jianyin bei inscription, the Hailong Nüzhen guoshu moya inscription, the Qingyuan inscription and the Nuergan Yongningsi bei inscription.

- (1) The Da Jin deshengtuo songbei inscription  
(The Jin Victory Memorial Stele)

This stele was set up in the year 1185 by the Emperor Shizong, the fifth emperor of the Jin Dynasty, to commemorate the victory achieved by his grandfather, Aguda, the founding emperor of the Jin, over the Khitan Liao Dynasty at the Lailiu River (now known as the Lalin River). It was still on its original site, in Fuyu county in Jilin province in 1978, but now seems to have been moved to the Jilin Museum. It is 168cm high and 83 cm across. There are thirty lines of Chinese script on the front of the stele, and thirty-two lines in the Jurchen script on the back. This inscription is the earliest still extant, and dates from the dading period (1161-1189) when the Jurchen script was being propagated most vigorously and presumably used most widely. It is also the only bilingual inscription dating from the Jin Dynasty (the other such inscription, the Nuergan Yongningsi bei inscription, is from the Ming period).

This stele was rediscovered in modern times by a Chinese emissary to the northeastern provinces of China, Cao Tingjie, in the year 1185 (he also discovered the Nuergan Yongningsi bei inscription). It was known earlier than that, however. The Chinese text and part of the Jurchen text of this inscription were recorded in a book called Jilin waiji [A record of the areas beyond Jilin], in the section Guji [Ancient relics], by Sa Ying'e, published during the daoguang period. Cao Tingjie wrote two introductory articles on this inscription ("Deshengtuo bei shuo" [On the victory stele] and "Deshengtuo yibei ji" [A record of the stele in memory of the victory [of Aguda]]), and made rubbings of the inscription. These rubbings were later acquired by Naitō Torajirō and

Haneda Toru, and are now in the library of the East Asian History Research Centre of Kyoto University. In 1933, Susa Kakitsu also discovered this inscription, and wrote a report on this: "Tokushōda hi koki" [A record of a trip to find the Victory Memorial Stele]; he also published a collection of photographs he made of the stele under the title Daikin tokushōda shō shashin chō [A collection of photographs of the Jin Victory Memorial Stele]. In the same year (1933) Sonoda Kazuki wrote an article ("Daikin tokushōda shōhi ni tsuite" [On the Jin Victory Memorial Stele]) in which he pointed out the inaccuracies in the Jurchen version in the Jilin waiji, which contains only twelve lines of text, when there are in fact twenty eight. In 1937, Tamura Jitsuzō, working from photographs of the rubbings made by Cao Tingjie, published the first attempt to decipher the Jurchen text ("Daikin tokushōda shōhi no kenkyū" [Research on the Jin Victory Memorial Stele]). In a review article published the next year ("Daikin tokushōda shōhi no kenkyū" o yomu" [On reading "Research on the Jin Victory Memorial Stele], Amma Yaichirō amended some characters in Tamura's version. In 1943 he published his own study of this inscription, in his book Joshimbun kinsekishi kō [A study of Jurchen inscriptions] (pp. 1-30). Both Amma and Tamura also include the Chinese text; Tamura, in the second part of his study of this inscription, has also annotated the Chinese text.

In 1936, the Manshū kinseki kō [A draft study of the inscriptions of Manchuria], edited by Sonoda Kazuki, included the Chinese text of this inscription, but not the Jurchen version. In 1937, Luo Fuyi completed his study of the inscriptions of Manchuria (Manzhou jinshi zhi), and included the text in both Chinese and Jurchen, adding in supplements relevant articles by previous scholars, including the text of Cao Tingjie's account of his discoveries. Ishida Mikinosuke also wrote an article ("Daikin tokushōda hi no saihatsugen" [The rediscovery of the Jin Victory Memorial Stele]) (1934) on the travels of Naitō Torajirō, Yagi Shōzaburō, Wada Kiyoshi and Susa Kakitsu, all of whom visited the site of the stele in Jilin and made rubbings of the text, on the basis of which it was possible to amend the text in the Jilin waiji. These scholars seem to have been unaware of Cao Tingjie's discovery of the stele some fifty years earlier.

Not much progress seems to have been made on the study of this stele until 1971, when Tamura Jitsuzō published his Chūgoku seifuku ōchō no kenkyū [Research on the "Conquest Dynasties" of China], in which he presented a revised version of his decipherment. Five years later, he published his third version "Kittan Joshin moji kō - mitabi "Daikin tokushōda shōhi" Joshimbun no kaidoku ni tsuite" [The Khitan and Jurchen scripts - a third attempt to decipher the Jin Victory Memorial Stele]. However, because the stele is very eroded,

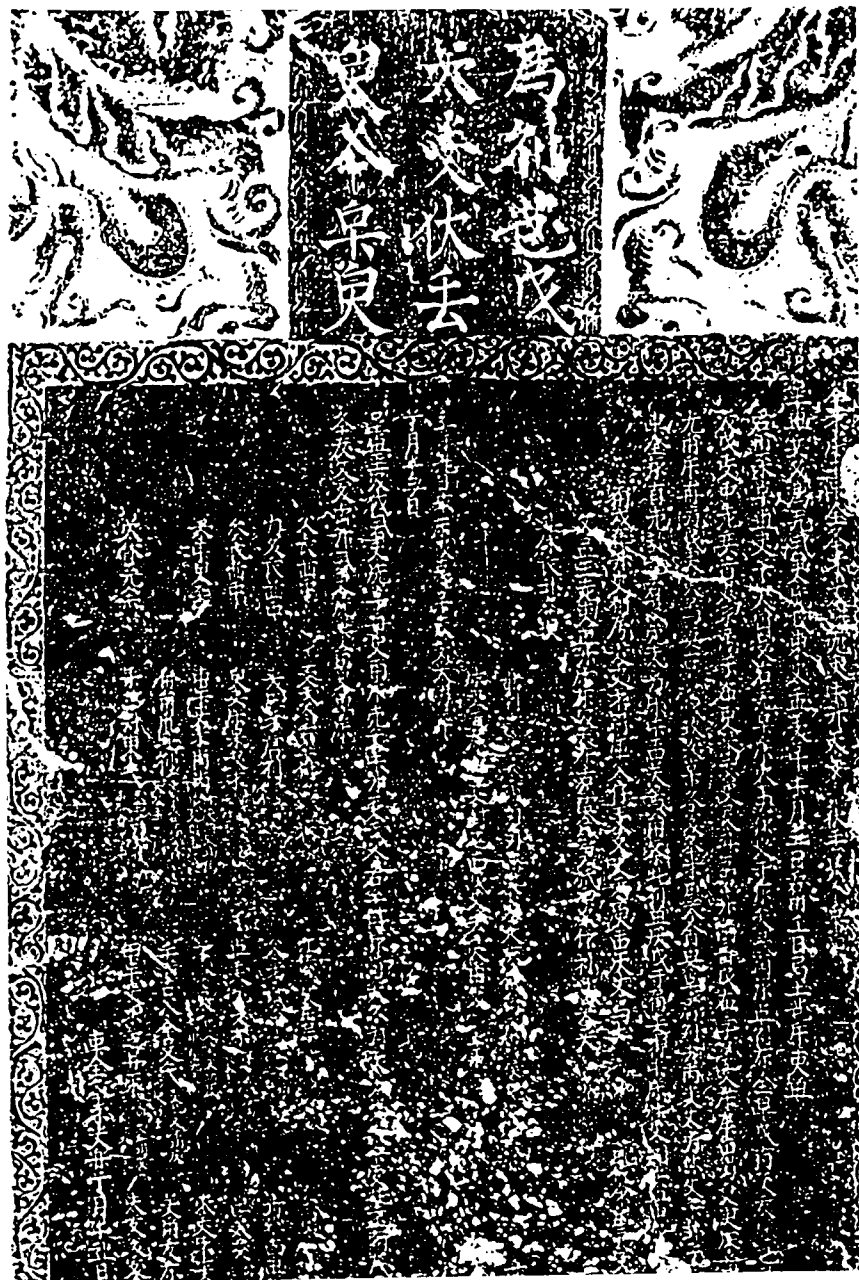
and many characters are difficult to distinguish, there are still large sections of the stele which cannot be read. The available rubbings are indistinct and blurred, and various scholars interpret these unclear characters in different ways. In 1978 Liu Fengzhu and Yu Baolin, with the help of the Jilin Archeological Research Institute, went to the site of the stele to make new rubbings, and to try to produce a definitive text. The results are in their article "Nūzhen wenzi "Da Jin deshengtuo song" jiao kan ji" [A comparative annotated study of the Da Jin deshengtuo song inscription in the Jurchen script] (1981), in which they make a detailed comparison of their own rubbings of the original stone (which is now in a more eroded condition than when Cao Tingjie made his rubbings a century ago) with those provided by Luo Fuyi (Manzhou jinshi ji), Amma Yaichirō (Joshin kinsekishi kō) and the three versions by Tamura Jitsuzō, and offer a new version of the Jurchen text. In 1984, Wan Renfu published a detailed study of the Chinese version ("Da Jin deshengtuo song beiwen zhengli sande" [Three contributions to the determination of the original text of the Jin Victory Memorial Stele]. This is a reexamination of the original stele, compared with various rubbings made by earlier scholars, including those included in the Jilin waiji (1823) and the Jilin tongzhi (1891), and has been able to point out several mistakes in the standard versions of the Chinese inscription, such as those published by Luo Fuyi and Tamura Jitsuzō. Wang Renfu also consulted other rubbings and copies made at various times, and has been able to produce a fairly definitive version of the original inscription.

The edition of the Jurchen text by Liu Fengzhu and Yu Baolin, the edition of the Chinese text by Wang Renfu and the detailed commentaries on both texts by Tamura Jitsuzō will form the basis of a future detailed study of this inscription.



(2) The Nüzhen jinshi timing bei inscription

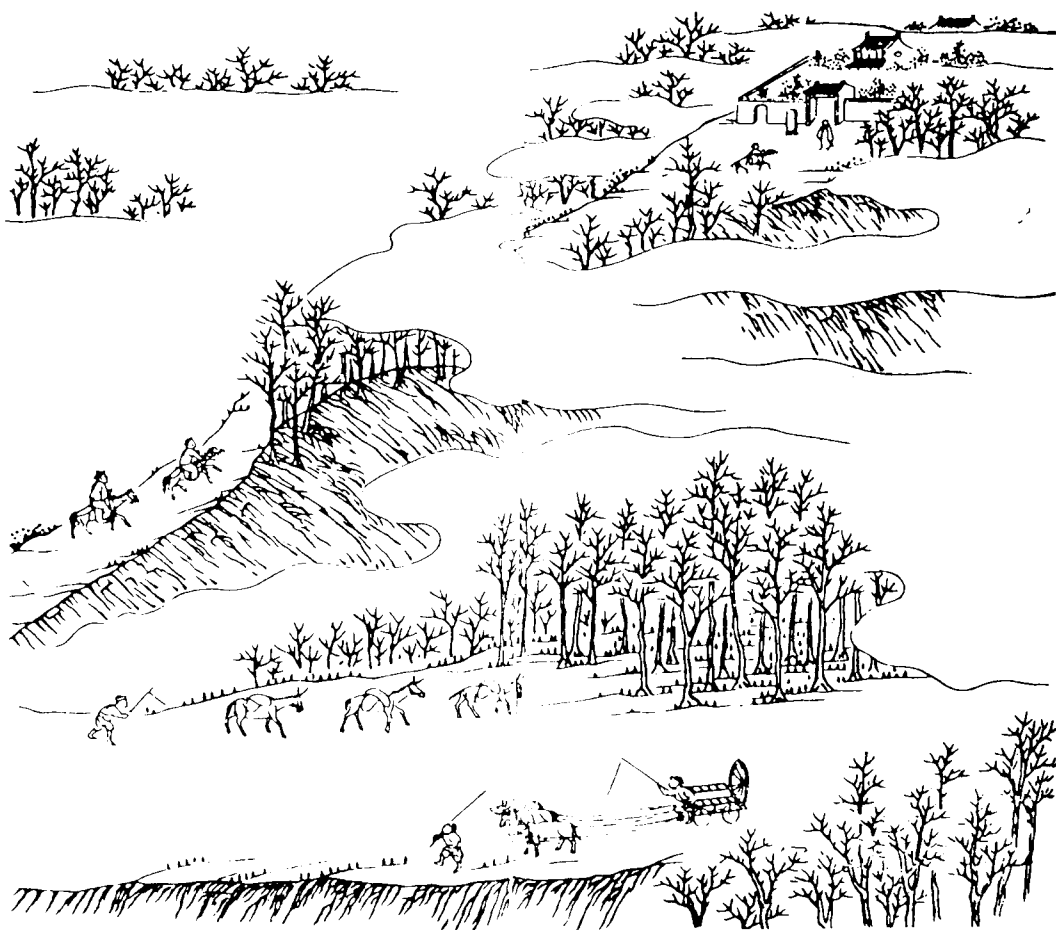
(The Yantai Stele)

Ill. 9 The Nüzhen Jinshi timing bei inscription  
(upper section)

This stele commemorates the conferring of the degree of jinshi (awarded to successful candidates in the highest imperial examinations) in the year 1224. It probably owes its preservation to the fact that the original Chinese inscription was erased, and the stele reingraved during the Xuande period of the Ming Dynasty (1426-1436) with an inscription commemorating the restoration of the He Shen Miao temple, on the steps of which it still stands. The original stele was erected at Yantai, about five kilometres outside the city of Kaifeng. During the Song Dynasty, this was the site of a feast connected with the Spring rites. Under the Jin, it was the site of an examination hall, so stelae recording the names of successful candidates were erected there.

As this stele is in Kaifeng, a busy metropolis, its existence was recorded very early. It is mentioned in the Gui xin za zhi, a miscellany published in the early part of the fourteenth century, by the Song writer Zhou Mi. The text reads: "the College of Bian (Kaifeng) has an inscription recording the names of the Jurchen jinshi graduates, written in characters resembling Chinese". It is also recorded in a Ming compilation, the Bianjing yiji zhi [Historical Relics of Kaifeng], by Li Lian, and in the Jin shi cui bian by the Qing writer Wang Chang. During the daoguang period of the Qing (1821-1851), Linqing, a descendent of the Jurchen imperial family, mentioned this stele in his illustrated autobiography and record of his travels, entitled Hong xue yan lu tu ji. Linqing's dissertation on the subject was translated by G. Deveria, "Examen de la Stèle de Yen-t'ai. Dissertation sur les caractères employés par les Tartares Jou-tchen. Extraite du Hounghue-in-yuan, traduite et annotée (1882), which he based on the description of the stele and its location given by Linqing, and the woodblock print in the Jin shi cui bian by Wang Chang.

碑訪臺宴



Ill. 10. The site of the stele at Yantai, as sketched by Linqing on his visit to that area during the daoguang period.

A contemporary and friend of Linqing, Liu Shilu, a famous writer on antiquities and numismatics, studied this inscription in his articles "Nüzhezhi bei kao" [A study of a stele in Jurchen script] and "Nüzhezhi bei xu kao" [A further study on the stele in Jurchen script] (1829), which might be considered the beginning of Jurchen studies in the modern period. These articles apparently caused quite a stir in scholarly circles at the time. Liu confesses his inability to read the script, but came to the conclusion that this inscription must have been in the Jurchen "small script", as he had mistakenly identified the Da Jin huangdi dutong jinglüe langjun xingji inscription as an example of the Jurchen "large script". Liu was also able to provide clear rubbings of the inscription, which, however, were not perfect because of the way the stele was mounted.

This inscription also attracted the attention of early European scholars, such as G. Devéria and T. de Lacouperie ("The Djurtchen of Mandschuria: their name, language and literature") (1889), but as they had at their disposal only the woodblock print in the Jin shi cui bian their conclusions were not based on reliable sources. In 1898, S.W. Bushell presented a remarkable paper to the XIe Congrès International des Orientalistes in Paris, entitled "Inscriptions in the Jurchen and Allied Scripts". This neglected paper (perhaps because it is published in the Actes of the Congress and may not be readily available) in essence deciphered the first and last sections of the Nüzhen jinshi timing bei inscription, from which it was possible to infer what much of the rest of the inscription was about. The actual topic of the dissertation examined that year, a quotation from the Book of Documents, has only recently been identified (by Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong), and has not yet been completely deciphered. Bushell accomplished this task on the basis of the edition of the Sino-Jurchen vocabulary from the Bureau of Translators, which had been published by W. Grube in 1896. As mentioned above, this achievement has been overlooked by most researchers until very recent times. In 1898, Shiratori Kurakichi wrote an influential article "Kittan, Joshin Seika moji kô" [Research on the Khitan, Jurchen and Xixia scripts]. Shiratori also regarded the script on the Da Jin huangdi dutong jinglüe langjun xingji inscription as being the Jurchen large script, and although he mentioned the Nüzhen jinshi timing bei inscription, he did not give any opinion as to the nature of the script on it.

In 1923, Luo Fucheng turned to this inscription in "Yantai Jinyuan guoshu bei kao" [A study of the Yantai inscription in the Jurchen national script] and several other articles on this inscription, culminating in his full study of the stele published in 1936 "Yantai Jinyuan guoshu bei shiwen" [An interpretation of the text of the Yantai stele

inscription in the Jurchen national script]; Luo (unaware of Bushell's decipherment) was able to work out a few Jurchen words, but could not decipher the inscription word by word. In 1932, Mao Wen ("Jinyuan guoshu bei ba" [A note on the inscription in the Jurchen national script]) explained the meaning of some of the Jurchen words deciphered by Luo on the basis of their cognates in Manchu, but noted that he could still only work out some forty to fifty Jurchen characters. In 1937, Wang Jingru wrote "Yantai Nüzhen Jinshi timing bei chu shi" [A preliminary interpretation of the Nuzhen Jinshi timing bei inscription], which, compared to the studies of Luo and Mao, represented great progress. By this stage the general gist of the inscription could be worked out, with only a few difficult areas left to fill in. Amma Yaichirō also included this inscription in his corpus of Jurchen inscriptions (Joshimbun kinsekishi kō pp. 57-76); in his study he identified a large number of the Jurchen characters, giving his transcription in Chinese script.

There does not seem to have been any other major study of this inscription until the publication of Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong, Nüzhen yuyan wenzi yanjiu [Research on the Jurchen Language and Script] (1980), who included their study of this inscription in their appendices. A remarkable achievement was their identification of the topic of the dissertation for examination, a quotation from the Book of History. Jin and Jin also decipher the rest of the inscription, including the identification (by name and rank) of the successful candidates, references to them in the History of the Jin Dynasty and other philological and historical commentaries on the text. Some areas of the inscription are still obscure, and await further investigation.

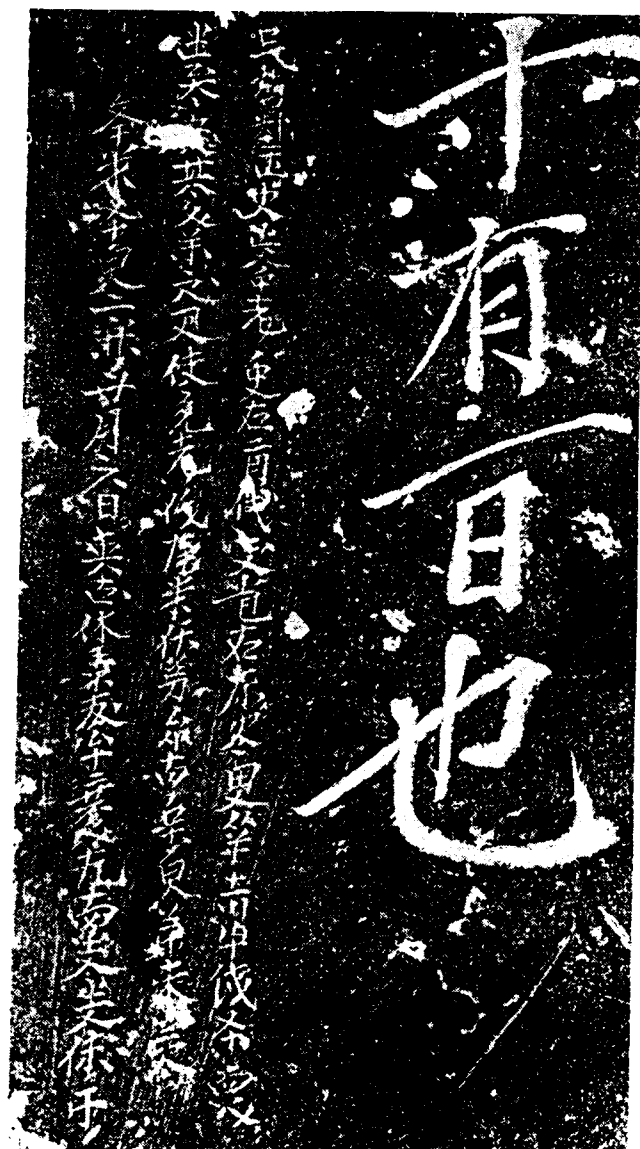
(3) The Aotun Liangbi jianyin bei inscription.



Ill. 11. The Aotun Liangbi jianyin bei inscription.

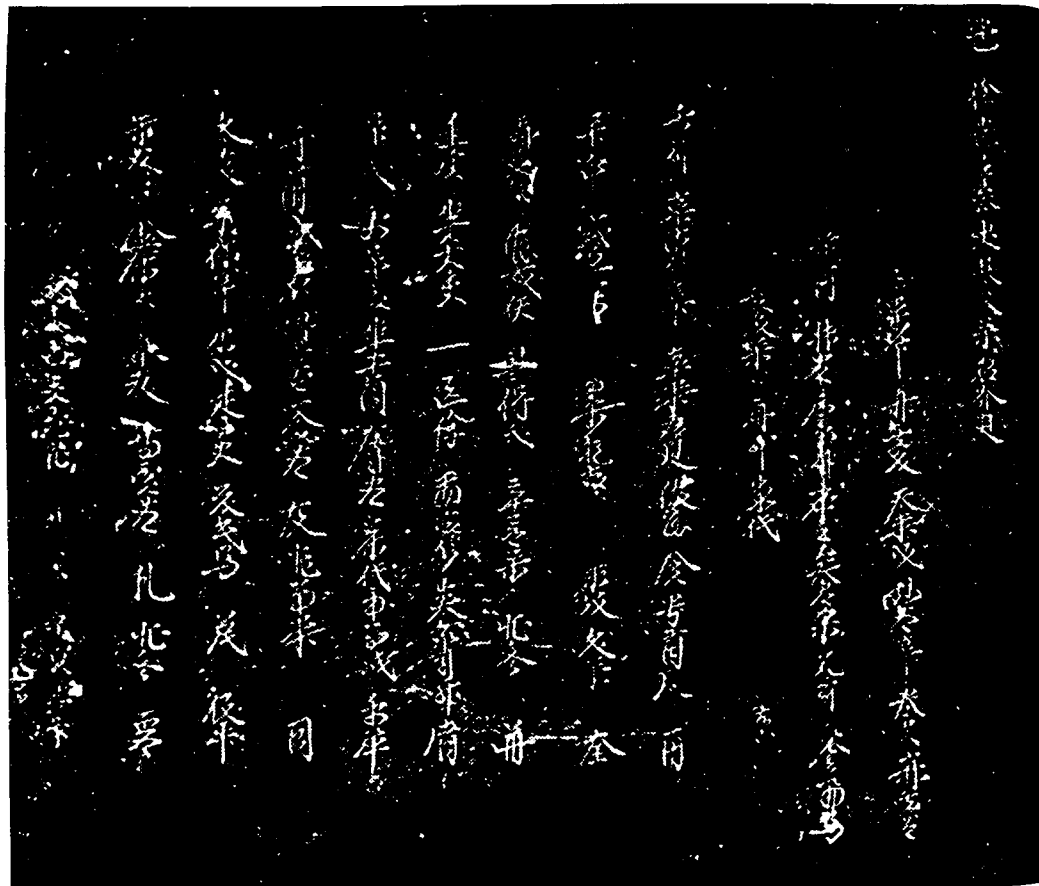
This inscription is also known as the [Jin] Taihe timing canshi [Fragmentary tablet inscribed in the taihe period (of the Jin Dynasty)]. It was formerly in the collection of Luo Zhenyu, and is now in the Museum of Chinese History in Beijing. Its origin is unknown. The main part of this inscription was written by Aotun Liangbi, in Chinese. The text reads: "Aotun Liangbi, on returning from the capital from Sizhou, ate and drank at this brook with some close friends. The eleventh day of the second month of the sixth year of the taihe period". To the right there is an inscription of some sixty characters in Jurchen; it is not a translation of the Chinese, but a "postface" written by Aotun

Liangbi's close friend, Zhubu Buxiuhong, four years after the Chinese inscription. Aotun Liangbi was sent as an ambassador to negotiate peace with the Song; Sizhou was the site of negotiations between the two enemy states of Jin and Song. The text is dated 1206; in 1208 peace was negotiated, and lasted until 1217.



Ill. 12. Enlarged detail of the Jurchen section of the Aotun Liangbi jianyin bei inscription.

This inscription was first studied by Luo Fucheng, "Jin taihe timing canshi" [A stone fragment inscribed in the taihe period of the Jin Dynasty](1931) and by Luo Fuyi, "Liao Jin san shike: Jin Aotun Liangbi timing" [Three inscriptions from the Liao and Jin periods: the tablet of Aotun Liangbi] (1940), but neither of those articles attempted a decipherment. A photograph and some comments on this inscription were also published by Shimada Yoshimi, "Joshiin moji Ōton Ryōhitsu sen'in hi" [The Aotun Liangbi tablet in the Jurchen script] (1943). The main study of this inscription is again in Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong, op. cit. p. 321. According to their decipherment, the text reads: "After the victory at the battle of ---, I saw some calligraphy of my old friend, Aotun Liangbi, the zhizhong [official title] of Zhangde. It was exquisite and worthy of emulation, so I had it inscribed on rock. The twentieth day of the seventh month of the second year of the da'an period [i.e. 1210] by the wenlinlang [official title] of Mingshui, Zhubu Buxiuhong".

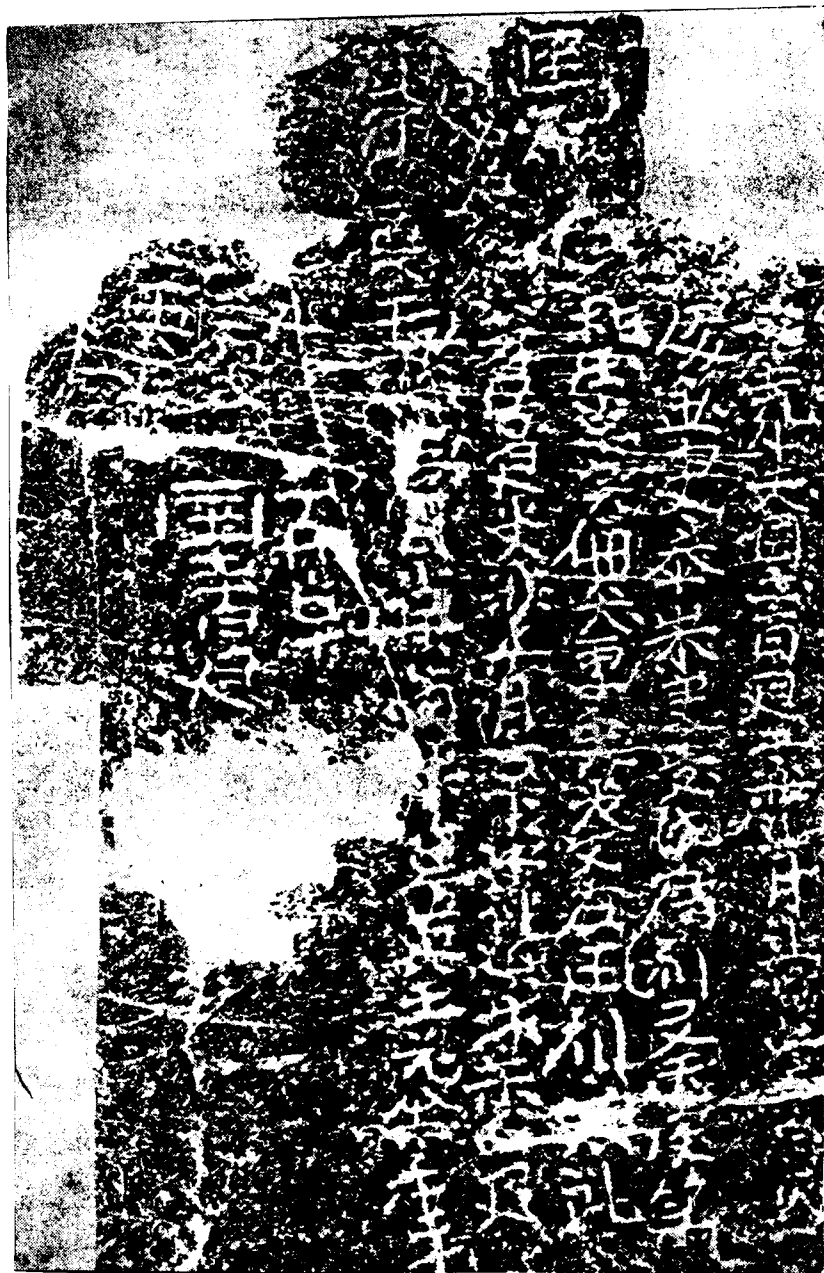
(4). The Aotun Liangbi shi inscriptionIll. 13 The Aotun Liangbi shi inscription

This was the ninth inscription in Jurchen to be discovered. It was discovered during the 1960s in Penglai, Shandong. It had been in the Youdeguan Temple in Penglai (now called the Wanshougong), and was later removed to the Getianhougong, also in Penglai. A rubbing of this inscription was made by Qu Peimo and sent to the editors of Wenwu, on the basis of which a group of specialists in Jurchen (Luo Fuyi, Jin Qicong, Jia Jingyan and Huang Zhenhua) made a study "Nüzhenzi Aotun Liangbi shi ke shi chu shi" [A preliminary explanation of the poem of Aotun Liangbi in the Jurchen script] (1982).

The rubbing is 60 cm high and 70 cm across. One side of the stone on which this poem is inscribed has a

portrait of "Shuazu", an "immortal" of the Ming period; this was obviously inscribed later and has nothing to do with the Jurchen. The kuan [the name of the sender or recipient on a painting or a piece of calligraphy] on the top and the bottom of the Jurchen inscription are in the Jurchen "formal script" (kaishu); the poem itself is in a cursive form of the script (xingshu). This was the first example of Jurchen cursive script to have been discovered, though other examples on manuscripts have come to light since. The upper kuan shows that the author of the poem was Aotun Liangbi; the lower kuan gives us the information that the stone was inscribed on the orders of Zhubu of Penglai - presumably the same Zhubu Buxiuhong who had the Aotun Liangbi jianyin bei inscribed.

In their study of this inscription, Luo Fuyi, Jin Qicong, Jia Jingyan and Huang Zhenhua give a very full commentary on the poem, the Chinese literary allusions and so on, and decipher a very large proportion of the text. Although there are still a few unclear passages, the general meaning of the poem is clear. It is Confucian in content and in a style of "regulated verse". It was written by Aotun Liangbi for his friend Zhang Hui, who had been demoted to Penglai, and contains typical Confucian praise of achievements and virtues, and sentiments of comfort and encouragement. The poem seems to have been preserved through the excellence of Aotun Liangbi's calligraphy, and Zhubu Buxiuhong's admiration for it.

(4) The Hailong Nüzhen guoshu moya inscription.Ill. 14. The Yangshulinshan inscription at Hailong.

Inscribed on the rock face at Jiugang shibaguo shan (formerly known as Yangshulinshan), a mountain in Hailong county, Jilin province, there are two inscriptions a few metres from each other. The one on the left, facing south, is in Jurchen; there is no Chinese translation. This is generally referred to as the Hailong Yangshulinshan inscription, or in Chinese the Nüzhen guoshu moya [Inscription on the rock-face in the Jurchen national script]. The one on the right, facing north, has an inscription in both Chinese and Jurchen, one apparently a translation of the other. This latter stone was formerly referred to as the Hailong Banjieshan Nüzhen guoshu moya inscription, as it was formerly thought to be located at Banjieshan, some fifteen kilometres from its actual location. The Chinese text records Aguda's victory over the Liao at Banjieshan. It is not dated.

The first of these inscriptions was first mentioned by Yang Boxing in his book Shenggu [Ancient sites of Shenyang], published during the guangxu period (1875-1908) of the Qing Dynasty. It was also recorded in various local gazettes of the Hailong district, such as the Hailong-fu xiangtu zhi and the Hailong-xian zhi. It was also noticed by the Japanese anthropologist and explorer, Torii Ryüzō. All these sources, however, mention only one Jurchen inscription; there is no mention of two, or of a Chinese inscription in that area.

In 1934, the Japanese scholar Yamashita Taizō published an article "Shin Jochoku kokusho hi ni tsuite" [On a new inscription in the Jurchen national script] in which he announced a new discovery, a bilingual inscription. He claimed that it had been discovered at Banjieshan, some 15 kilometres from Yangshulinshan, and included photographs of a rubbing. An article by Meng Zong, "Nüzhenwen keshi xin faxian" [A new discovery of an inscription in the Jurchen language] (1935) is essentially a translation of Yamashita's article, but it introduced the find to a Chinese audience. It was subsequently included in several catalogues of Jurchen inscriptions, such as Luo Fuyi's Manzhou jinshi zhi [A compendium of inscriptions of Manchuria] (1937), Sonoda Kazuki's Manshū kinsekishi kō [A draft compendium of inscriptions of Manchuria] (1936), Amma Yaichirō's Joshimbun kinsekishi kō [A study of inscriptions in the Jurchen script] (1943). No one seemed to think it strange that such investigators as Yang Boxing and Torii Ryüzō had failed to notice it, as it was said to be located at Banjieshan, not Yangshulinshan.

In 1979, Sun Jinji published an article on these inscriptions, "Hailong Nüzhen moya shike" [Rock inscriptions

in the Jurchen script at Hailong], in which he pointed out that the two inscriptions are, in fact, very close to each other, not fifteen kilometres apart. He also tried to explain the fact that explorers prior to Yamashita Taizō had not noticed it by suggesting that it would not have been easy to see, as that in the past, before a shelter was built for it, there would have been bushes and undergrowth around it. In 1980, Feng Yongqian ("Hailong Jin, Han wen shi jindai wei ke" [The Chinese-Jurchen inscription at Hailong is a modern forgery]) argued that the "discovery" of the inscription had actually been made by one Xing Yuren, and that it was he who had led Yamashita Taizō to it. What is more, Xing Yuren was an antique dealer, who was an accomplished engraver, having served an apprenticeship in that trade, and he often made rubbings of inscriptions to sell in his antique shop in Shenyang. Feng asserted that the Chinese-Jurchen inscription was in fact a forgery. This argument was taken up by Dao Erji and He Xige ("Hailong Hanwen, Nüzhenwen duiyi moya zhen-wei bian" [A discussion on the authenticity of the Chinese-Jurchen bilingual inscription at Hailong] (1984)), who visited the area themselves. They noted that both inscriptions were clearly visible, and it would have been impossible for Yang Boxing and Torii Ryūzō not to have noticed both of them. In any case, Yamashita Taizō had been misled as to the actual location of the inscription - Xing Yuren would have lied about this because he would have known that Yamashita would have been aware that only one inscription had been reported at Yangshulinshan. The authors also noted that the characters in the Chinese-Jurchen bilingual have been carved very deeply into the rock; this contrasts with the eroded nature of the Jurchen monolingual inscription, suggested it was carved much later. They also compared the Chinese and Jurchen versions, and discovered that the "Jurchen" is very ungrammatical, being merely a character-by-character "copy" of the Chinese; in fact, many of the "Jurchen" characters were made-up by the forger. In any case, the inscription refers to Aguda defeating the Liao at this site, but historical records show that Aguda could not have been in that area at that time. It seems to be definite now that the so-called Banjieshan inscription is, in fact, a modern forgery.

As for the other, it was first recorded by Yang Boxing, also known as Yang Tonggui, who was the son of the first tongban (assistant sub-prefect) in the Hailong district, during the years 1880-1884 when he accompanied his father to Hailong. In retrospect, his transcription can be seen to be not very correct; there are many mistakes, and in fact only eighteen characters are correct. It was apparently independently "discovered" by Torii Ryūzō in 1912. In 1930, the Hailong-xian zhi [Gazette of Hailong county] published the text of the inscription, together with an article by Jin Liang, "Hailong Nüzhenzi bei tuowen ba" [A note on the

rubbing of the text of the Jurchen inscription in Hailong]. The first scholar who was actually a specialist in Jurchen to study this inscription was Luo Fucheng, who in 1929 published "Nüzhen guoshu bei kaoshi" [A study of an inscription in Jurchen script]. He was able to identify twenty-five more characters (in addition to those correctly identified by Yang Boxing), but because he was not able to see the original inscription and the rubbings were unclear, there were still many characters which could not be identified. Luo Fuyi also included it in his Manzhou jinshi zhi (1937) as did Amma Yaichirō in his Joshimbin kinsekishi kō (1943). Luo Fuyi's copy of the inscription is very accurate, and forms the basis of the decipherment of this inscription in Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong, Nüzhen yuyan wenzi yanjiu [Research on the Jurchen Language and Script], pp. 326-331. Although the inscription has been eroded and damaged, and is unclear in many places, the general gist is fairly clear: the inscription records the establishment of a mouke (an administrative district) in the second year of the shouguo period of the Emperor Taizu (i.e. 1117); the inscription itself was engraved in the seventh year of the dading period of the Emperor Shizong, under whose reign the Jurchen script was vigorously promoted.

#### (6) The Qingyuan inscription.

This inscription is also known as the Kyōngwŏn inscription, as it was originally on the site of a Buddhist temple at Kyōngwŏn, Korea. It was discovered by the Japanese in 1918 and moved to the Seoul Museum. The stele is a square column with a Jurchen inscription on all four sides; the top part of the stele is missing, and there are only about five hundred characters of the inscription remaining. The date is missing, but Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong deduce it to date from between 1138 to 1153. There is a photograph of this stele in the Chōsen kinseki sōran [Corpus of Inscriptions in Korea] (Vol. I, pp. 551-552), and it was included in Amma Yaichirō's Joshimbun kinsekishi kō [A Study of Inscriptions in the Jurchen Script] (pp. 45-53). The Chōsen kinseki sōran presents the sides of the pillar in the order [1], [2], [3], [4]; but Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong have demonstrated that side [3] is the actual beginning of the inscription. This misunderstanding seems to have arisen because the lower part of side [4] has been obliterated, and thus was thought to be the end of the inscription; it should now be considered the second panel of the inscription.

B1-1

洋舍草舟升五弟風化冬肅吏用休弟克弟卓虎作快  
 下年伴舍草舟升五弟風化冬肅吏用休弟克弟卓虎作快

B1-1

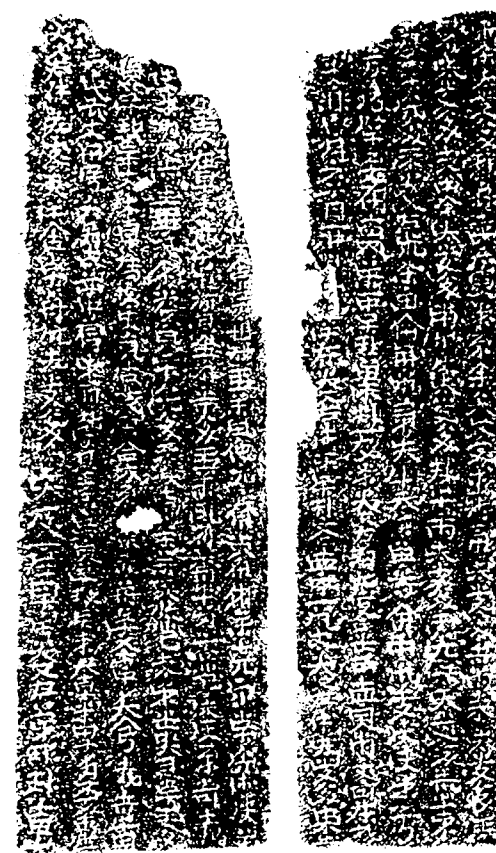
五弟風化冬肅吏用休弟克弟卓虎作快  
 五弟風化冬肅吏用休弟克弟卓虎作快

B1-2

快弟可老  
 快弟可老

Ill. 15. A section of the Qingyuan (Kyŏngwŏn) inscription in the transcription of Min Yŏng-gyu.

There is an important, but strangely neglected article on this inscription by Min Yŏng-gyu, "Kyŏngwŏn Yŏjinja pi gosŏk" [Notes on the inscription in Jurchen characters on the Kyŏngwŏn stele], in which he suggests a normalisation of the characters, a transcription (in Chinese characters) and a translation (in Korean). It must be said that Min's article could not be considered to present a complete decipherment; on the other hand, the translation suggested by Jin and Jin (Nŭzhen yuyan wenzi yanjiu pp. 353-343) does not make much sense either. The text seems to be a long list of names and titles of those who contributed to the construction of the temple.



Ill. 16. Two sides of the Qingyuan (Kyŏngwŏn) inscription.



The discovery of this inscription led the Japanese linguist Ōgura Shimpei to research the study of Jurchen in Korea; the results of his research are contained in his article "Chōsen ni okeru Kitten oyobi Joshin gogaku" [A study of the Khitan and Jurchen languages in Korea] (1917). In 1972 Hiu Lie published his study of the study of Manchu in Korea (Die Mandschu-Sprachkunde in Korea); the section on Jurchen heavily relies on Ogura's article.

(7) The Beijing inscription.

尉役園土作屏衛并許毛吳太化  
 常化五羊末老  
 索化王夷女玫草条併盡△△草末屏△五△  
 付阜△更七  
 味介愛乘母月尔日

III. 17. A section of the Beiging inscription in the transcription of Inaba Iwakichi.

This inscription is also known as the Kwansan inscription, as it is carved on the rockface of Mount Kwansan, Pukch'ŏng county, South Hamkyŏng province, Korea. It was discovered in 1911 by Torii Ryūzō, and was included in the Chōsen kinseki sōran [General Inventory of Inscriptions of Korea] (Vol. I, p. 553), which also includes a photograph. A photograph of this inscription may also be seen in the frontispiece to Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong, Nūzhen yuyan wenzi yanjiu [Research on the Jurchen Language and Script]. This inscription was first studied by Inaba Iwakichi, "Hokuseijō Kanzan jō Joshinji magai kōshaku" [Notes on the Jurchen inscription cut in the rock face at the summit of Mount Kwansan near Pukch'ŏngsŏng] (1930), in which he suggests a normalisation of the characters (they are written very irregularly) and a translation. Inaba interprets the date (the year wuyin) as 1338, but Jin and Jin read this date as 1218. It was included in Amma Yaichirō, Joshimbun kinsekishi kō [Corpus of Inscriptions in Jurchen] (1943), who records the Jurchen inscription but does not attempt a translation; reference is given to the article by Inaba. According to Inaba's decipherment, the inscription refers to the presentation of a statue of Maitreya Buddha.

(8). The Nuergan Yongningsi bei inscription.

This inscription is found on a stele erected in the year 1413 to mark the foundation of the Yongningsi Temple in the Nuergan Commandery at Telin (Tyr), near the mouth of the Amur River. The main inscription is in Chinese, inscriptions in Jurchen and Mongolian are on the reverse. They are not an exact translation of the Chinese, but are shorter and simpler. On the side of the stele are Chinese, Mongol, Tibetan and Jurchen versions of the Sanskrit mantra om mani padme hūm. The stele is 179cm high, 83 cm wide and 42 cm thick.

The existence of these inscriptions was known to European travellers since the seventeenth century. Chinese sources credit Yang Bin with being the first Chinese in modern times to have seen these inscriptions. In his Liu bian ji lue (published in 1639), Yang mentions several stelae with Chinese and "Manchu" inscriptions. Wada Kiyoshi ("Minsho no Manshū keiryaku") [The administration of Manchuria in the early Ming] suggested that the stelae mentioned in Yang's book may have been those at Nuergan; this possibility was also considered by Torii Ryūzō. This suggestion was accepted as fact by Zhong Minyan, Na Senbo and Jin Qicong ("Mingdai Nuergan Yongningsi bei ji jiao shi") [Emendations and annotations on the Ming Dynasty Stone Inscriptions of the Yongning Monastery at Nuergan] (1975); this conclusion was accepted by Qu Deyuan in his article "Guanyu Mingdai Nuergan

Yongningsi bei de kaocha yu yanjiu" [Investigations and research on the Ming Dynasty Yongningsi Temple Stele at Nuergan] (1980). Huang Zhenhua, "Mingdai Nüzhenwen Nuergan Yongningsi bei xi shi" [A new interpretation of the Jurchen inscription at the Yongningsi Temple at Nuergan] (1982), however, argues against this case, stating that it is impossible that the stelae mentioned by Yang Bin could have been those at Nuergan.

In 1808, Mamiya Rinzō was sent by the Bakufu to investigate the situation along the lower reaches of the Amur; he passed by the cliff face at Tyr and noticed the stelae there. However, the honour of being the first modern scholar to actually investigate these stelae, and make rubbings of the inscriptions, must go to the Qing envoy Cao Tingjie, who in 1885 was sent by the Qing court to investigate the situation in the Amur and Ussuri River region. On this trip he discovered both the Da Jin deshengtuo song bei inscription (the Jin Victory Memorial Stele) and the Nuergan Yongningsi bei inscription. Cao Tingjie wrote an article on these inscriptions ("Dong sansheng ditu shuo: Telin bei shuo" [On the map of the three [north]eastern provinces: on the stele at Tyr] (1887). In 1904, the stele was shifted to the Vladivostok Museum, where it was seen by Torii Ryūzō in 1919 and 1921. It is now housed in the Khabarovsk Museum, and no Chinese or Japanese researchers, as far as I am aware, have had access to it. (L. Ligeti, in his article "Les inscriptions Djurtchen de Tyr: la formule om mani padme hūṃ" (1961) mentions that a rubbing of this mantra had been given to him by G.D. Sanžeev). Rubbings of this inscription were included in the Jilin tongzhi [Comprehensive Gazette of Jilin] (1891), in the section on inscriptions (juan 120: Jinshi zhi), and the article by Cao Tingjie mentioned above appended. This material was reproduced in several later local gazettes of the area.

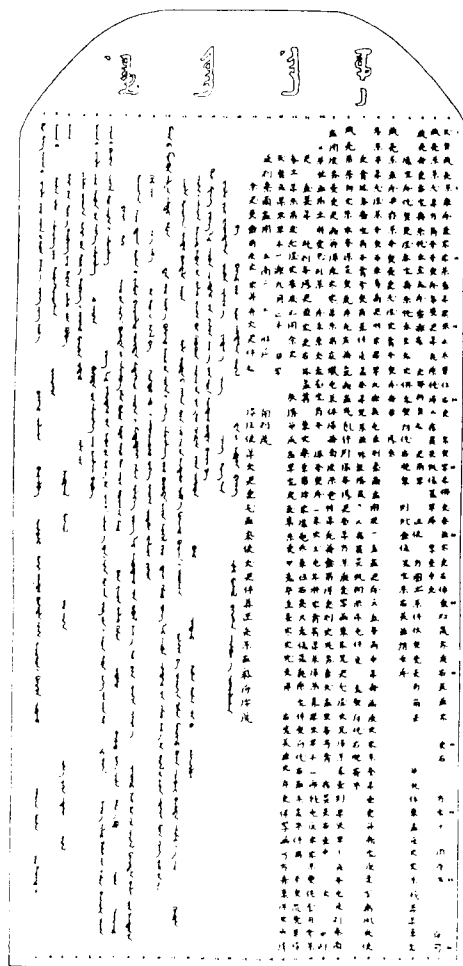
The first European scholars to study the Chinese inscription seem to be V. Vasil'ev, "Zapiska o nadpisjax otkrytyx na pamjatnikax, stojaščix na skale Tyr, bliz ust'ja Amur" [A note on the inscriptions inscribed on stelae on the cliff face at Tyr, near the mouth of the Amur] (1896) and P. Popov, "O Tyrskix pamjatnikax" [On the stelae at Tyr], 1904. The Mongol version was first studied by A.M. Pozdnev in Lekcii po Istorii Mongol'skoj Literatury [Lectures on the History of Mongolian Literature] (1908). These studies were not conclusive because of the unclarity or illegibility of large sections of the inscription. The first attempt to deal with the Jurchen version seems to have been made by W. Grube, "Vorläufige Mittheilung über die bei Nikolajewski am Amur aufgefundenen Jučen-Inschriften" (1896), who relied on a photograph of the inscription made by one Mr. Schewelew. Grube was able to recognise the mantra om mani padme hūṃ with

the aid of the Sino-Jurchen vocabulary he had edited and studied (Die Sprache und Schrift der Jučen) (1896). G. Schlegel published a review of this article in T'oung Pao in 1897. In 1900 the Japanese sinologist Naitō Torajirō published a book Min tōhokkyō bengo [Rectifying mistakes concerning the northeastern border areas during the Ming], in which he cited the location of these inscriptions as evidence that that area had, at least during Ming times, been administered by China. He returned to his study of this stele in 1929, in an article "Nurukan Eineiji ni-hi hokō" [A supplementary study of the two stelae at the Yongningsi Temple at Nuergan], in which he studied several photographs and rubbings of the inscription, and, based on the original rubbing by Cao Tingjie (made when the inscription was less eroded) was able to restore much of the text, including sections which had been omitted from other editions (such as in the Jilin tongzhi) because of unclarity or illegibility. Both Chinese and Jurchen inscriptions were included in Sonoda Kazuki's compilation Manshū kinsekishi kō [An inventory of inscriptions in Manchuria] (1936) and in Luo Fuyi, Manzhou jinshi zhi (1937).

The first scholar to attempt to decipher the Jurchen inscription was Luo Fucheng, "Ming Nuergan Yongningsi bei Nüzhen guoshu tu shi" [An explanation of the Jurchen national script on the stele of the Yongningsi Temple at Nuergan] (1937). He was able to read and explain about half the characters in the text. In 1941, Luo Fuyi included this inscription in his article "Liao Jin wenzi jincun lu" [A catalogue of extant examples of the scripts of the Liao and Jin Dynasties] (1941), and in 1943 Amma Yaichirō published the text of the inscription, on the basis of rubbings brought to Japan by Naitō Torajirō (presumably those made by Cao Tingjie), in his Joshimbun kinsekishi kō [Corpus of inscriptions in the Jurchen script].

In the postwar period, Jurchen studies were revived in Japan by Osada Natsuki, who published "Joshin moji no kōzō to sono onka ni tsuite" [On the structure of Jurchen characters and their values] (1949), "Manshūgo to Joshingo" [Manchu and Jurchen] (1949), "Joshin moji kinseki shiryō to sono kaidoku ni tsuite" [On the decipherment of epigraphical material in the Jurchen script] (1950) and "Joshingo shiryō no gengogaku teki kenkyū - Arutai shogoshi teki hikaku gengogaku no ikkan to shite ichi" [Linguistic research on Jurchen - a link in the comparative linguistic study of the Altaic languages] (1951). In 1958 he became the first scholar to publish a more-or-less complete study of the Jurchen and Mongolian versions of this inscription in his article "Nurukan Eineiji hi Mōko Joshimbun shakkō" [An explanation of the Mongol and Jurchen versions of the Yongningsi Temple stele at Nuergan]. He analysed the Mongol and Jurchen

versions in great detail, and suggested readings and meanings wherever possible. Osada was able to decipher practically the whole text; he mentioned in his article that he planned to publish a study of the Chinese version, but as far as I have been able to ascertain, this has not appeared.



Ill. 18. The Yongningsi inscription (from a rubbing in the collection of Naitō Torajirō, copied by Osada Natsuki)

In the meantime, L. Ligeti revived Jurchen studies in the West with his "Note préliminaire sur le déchiffrement des "petites caractères" joutchen" (1953). In his later study, "Les inscriptions Djurtchen de Tyr: la formule om maṇi padme hūm" (1961) he turned his attention to the inscription we are discussing, or, rather, to the six characters inscribed on the side of the stele. In this article he analysed in great detail each of the six characters that make up that mantra, and every occurrence of those characters in W. Grube's Die Sprache und Schrift der Jučen and other sources, and investigates every recorded cognate of the Jurchen words in which these characters appear in order to determine their correct readings. In China, a study of the Jurchen version of this inscription, by Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong, appeared in mimeograph form in 1964, but this was limited in availability and was not formally published until it appeared in the appendix of their Nūzhen yuyan wenzi yanjiu [Research on the Jurchen Language and Script] (1980). In 1974, Zhong Minyan published "Lishi de zhengjian - Mingdai Nuergan Yongningsi beiwen kaoshi" [Historical proof - a study of the text of the Ming Dynasty inscription in the Yongningsi Temple at Nuergan], in which he presented a new and revised version of the Chinese text. This was followed in 1975 by an article by Zhong Minyan, Na Senbo and Jin Qicong, "Mingdai Nuergan Yongningsi bei ji jiao shi" [Emendations and annotations on the Ming Dynasty inscriptions of the Yongning Monastery at Nuergan], which is a complete study of the Chinese, Mongol and Jurchen versions of the inscription, drawing on many previous sources and making many new contributions. In 1983, Yang Yang published a revised version of the Chinese inscription ("Mingdai Nuergan Yongningsi bei ji zai kaoshi" [A reexamination of the text on the stele at the Yongningsi Temple at Nuergan during the Ming Dynasty]) based on photographs of the original rubbings in the possession of Jin Yufu, photographs and transcriptions published by Naito Torajiro and Sonoda Kazuki, the studies by Luo Fuyi and the more recent studies by Zhong Mingyan, Na Senbo and Jin Qicong.

The most recent study of this inscription is by Huang Zhenhua, "Mingdai Nūzhenwen Yongningsi bei ji xin shi" [A new explanation of the Jurchen language text on the stele of the Yongningsi Temple at Nuergan during the Ming] (1982), in which he provides a historical background to the discovery and decipherment of this stele, and gives a new and detailed study on 362 words in the text. His study is based on the editions of Amma Yaichirō, Osada Natsuki, Luo Fuyi and Zhong Minyan, Na Senbo and Jin Qicong. Unfortunately, the printing of this article leaves much to be desired: four pages of handwritten notes have been photographically reproduced to fit on one page, and the result is practically illegible.



Ill. 19. The mantra om maṇi padme hūṃ in Chinese, Mongol, Tibetan and Jurchen (Tyr stele)

(9). The Zhao Yong da jiangjun inscription

According to Jin Qicong, "Nüzhen wenzi yanjiu gaikuang" [An outline of research on the Jurchen script] (1984), an inscription of twenty one characters in Jurchen was discovered by the Archeological Work Team of Jilin province in 1980. This has been called the Zhao Yong da jiangjun tongzhi Xiongzhou dushi muke inscription [Tomb inscription of Zhao Yong, General, Sub-Prefect and Director of the Board of Revenue and Finance of Xiongzhou]. Jin Qicong, in his Nüzhenwen cidian [Jurchen Dictionary], gives the following references: "Jindai Zuochengxiang Wanyan Xiyin jiazhu mu diaocha shijue baogao" [Report on preliminary investigations of the family cemetery of the Prime Minister of the Left of the Jin Dynasty, Wanyan Xiyin], by the Jilinsheng Wenwu Gongzuodui [Cultural Relics Work Team of Jilin Province], and "Jindai Zhao Yong da jiangjun tongzhi Xiongzhou dushi mu" [The tomb of Zhao Yong, General, Sub-Prefect and Director of the Board of Revenue and Finance of Xiongzhou] by Mu Hongli, but no publication details are given.

Appendix: The Tsagan Obo inscription.

In 1949, Osada Natsuki, in an article "Manshūgo to Joshingo" [Manchu and Jurchen] reported that a Jurchen inscription, the Tsagan Obo inscription, was discovered in 1945 in West Khuchit, Silingol, Inner Mongolia. However, in his later catalogue of materials in Jurchen, "Joshin moji to genson shiryō" [Extant historical materials on the Jurchen script], he does not mention this inscription, nor is it included in any of the standard catalogues.

## CHAPTER SIX MISCELLANEOUS MATERIAL

- (1) The Jurchen characters in the Yanzhou shanren sibu gao and the Fangshi moku.
- (2) A travel-pass (paizi) in the Jurchen script and the Jurchen characters in the Azuma kagami.
- (3) Manuscript material.
- (4) Jurchen seals and mirrors with inscriptions in Jurchen.
- (5) Other inscriptions previously thought to be in Jurchen.
- (6) Dictionaries
- (7) The study of Jurchen in Korea

\*

- (1) The Jurchen characters in the Yanzhou shanren sibu gao and the Fangshi moku.

These characters are reproduced below (from L. Gilbert, Dictionnaire historique et géographique de la Mandchourie (facing p. 71)):



Ill. 20. The Jurchen characters in the Yanzhou shanren sibu gao and the Fangshi moku.

The Jurchen is a translation of the famous couplet "ming wang shen de, si yi xian bin" [when a wise king is heedful of virtue, foreigners from all quarters come as guests]. The Jurchen version was preserved in a collection of writings by the Ming scholar Wang Shizhen (1526-1590), on whom there is information in H.A. Giles, A Chinese Biographical Dictionary, No. 2220). His book is called Yanzhou shanren sibu gao [A draft catalogue of the books in the collection of Yanzhou Shanren (Wang's honorific name)]. The Jurchen characters are in the Ming edition of Wang's works, but in the Sikuquanshu edition (compiled during the Qing, between 1773 and 1782), they have been omitted. They were also preserved in the Fangshi moku, an illustrated collection of designs for moulding cakes of ink by Fang Yulu, published in 1588. (More information on the Fangshi moku can

be found in A. Wylie, Notes on Chinese Literature, p. 117). This inscription was apparently first studied by S.W. Bushell, in his paper presented to the XIe Congrès International des Orientalistes in 1898 under the title "Inscriptions in the Jurchen and other scripts". Bushell compared the characters to those in W. Grube's Die Sprache und Schrift der Jučen and was able to decipher most of them. These characters were also independently studied by Ishida Mikinosuke, "Hōshi bokufu ni mieru Joshinji meimon kōshaku" [An investigation of the inscription in Jurchen characters recorded in the Fangshi mōpu] (1940). When this article was reprinted in Ishida's Collected Works (entitled Tōa bunkashi sōkō [Studies in the Cultural History of East Asia] (1973)), Ishida added in a footnote Bushell's contribution.

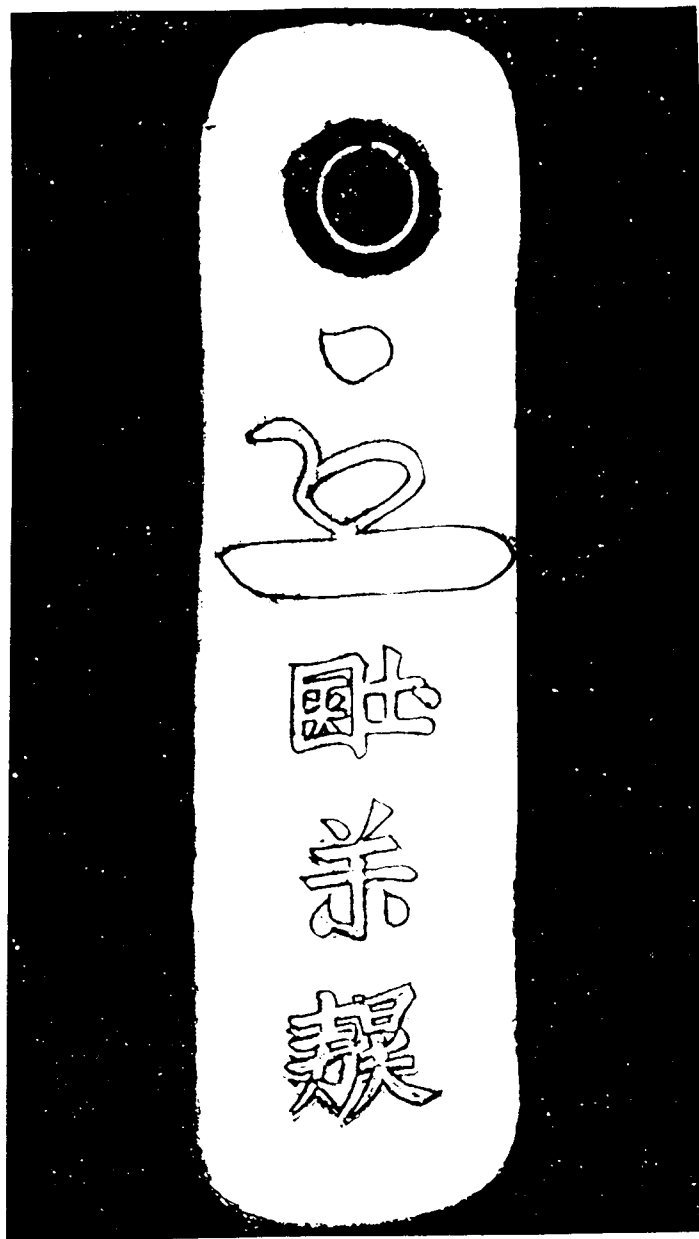
This medallion has also attracted some attention because of the way the characters are juxtaposed, rather in the manner of Khitan rather than Jurchen. It is also rather similar to the characters on a travel pass discussed below, but different from the usual character-by-character style (like Chinese) of the Jurchen script of the inscriptions or the Ming Dynasty vocabularies.

(2) A travel pass (paizi) in the Jurchen script and the Jurchen characters in the Azuma kagami.

In a historical record of the early years of the Kamakura Shogunate in Japan, the Azuma kagami, there is an entry concerning a number of Koreans who arrived by boat in the year 1224. Their possessions were presented to the Court; amongst which there was a silver tablet, measuring seven cun by three cun; there were four characters inscribed on them, but none of the scholars could read them. They copied the characters, but in the course of time they became deformed and miswritten, and although they were recognised as most likely being in Jurchen as early as 1898 (by Shiratori Kurakichi in his article "Kittan Joshin Seika moji kō" [A study of the Khitan, Jurchen and Xixia scripts]), it was not possible for modern scholars to decipher them. Naitō Torajirō thought he could see a character similar to the Chinese simplified form of the character wan 'ten thousand'; Inaba Iwakichi also discussed these characters in "Azuma kagami Jojikiji no shin kenkyū" [New research on the Jurchen characters in the Azuma kagami] (1932). In 1952 Murayama Shichirō published "Azuma kagami ni mieru Joshingo ni tsuite" [On the Jurchen language in the Azuma kagami], in which he deciphers the inscription as reading "jurči gurun ni tumun

se", "may the Jurchen state live ten thousand years". However, because the characters in present editions of the Azuma kagami are deformed, such attempts to identify them are unreliable.

In 1976, at excavations carried out on a site inhabited from the second half of the twelfth to the beginning of the thirteenth centuries at the present settlement of Šaigin in the Soviet Union, a silver paizi (travel pass) was excavated, with an inscription in Jurchen. It measured 22.2 cm by 6.5 cm. This find was reported in the Arxeologičeskie Otkrytija 1976 goda [Archeological Discoveries of 1976] (1977), under the title Rabota Šaiginskogo Otrjada [Work of the Šaigin section], which also gives a photograph of the travel pass. The Jurchen inscription was studied by Liu Fengzhu, "Nüzhenzi 'Guocheng' pai kaoshi" [A study of the 'National Trust' travel pass in the Jurchen script] (1980), who reads the characters as \*guo-lun-ni ha-da-un (Liu uses Chinese characters, not a romanised form), or, as the characters would be reconstructed according to G.N. Kiyose, \*gurun-ni kadagun, meaning "trust of the country", that is to say, that the bearer enjoys the trust, or the confidence, of the country. Liu Fengzhu notes that these travel passes had been mentioned in Song sources; by Yuan times, they were quite common. A similar type of paizi with an inscription in Khitan has also been discovered (cf. He Xige, "Cong Jindai de jin yin pai tantao Nüzhen da, xiao zi" [A discussion on the Jurchen large and small scripts on the basis of gold and silver travel passes of the Jin Dynasty] (1980)).



Ill. 21. The paizi (travel pass) discovered at Šaigin, USSR

As mentioned above in connection with the characters in the Fangshi mopu, the arrangement of the characters on this paizi is interesting, as they are similar to the way Khitan characters are composed. Liu Fengzhu wonders if this arrangement of the characters was the (yet

undiscovered) difference between the Jurchen "small" and "large" characters.

(3). Manuscript material.

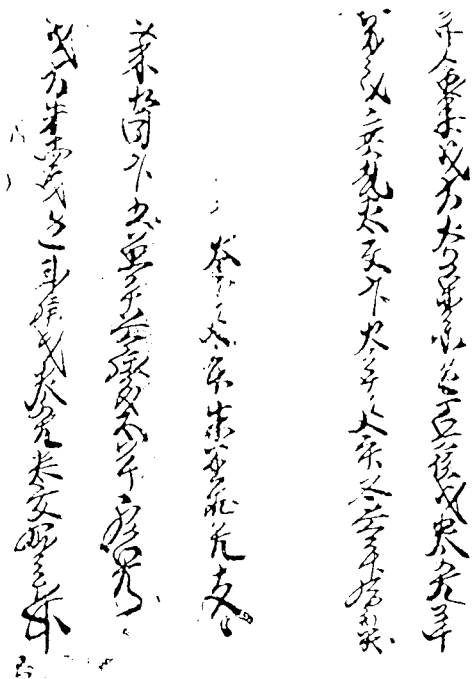
In recent years, two important discoveries of manuscripts with Jurchen cursive writing on them have been made, one set amongst the holdings in the Xixia script in the Institute of Oriental Studies in Leningrad, the other in the base of a stele in the "Forest of Stelae" (Beilin) in Xi'an.



Ill. 22. One of the sheets with Jurchen cursive script discovered in the Xixia holdings in Leningrad.

The discovery in Leningrad was made in 1968 by E.I. Kyčanov. He discovered two sheets in a non-Chinese, non-Xixia script, 15.3 cm by 16.5 cm and 14.2 cm by 16.5 cm respectively. They are written vertically, and there is a text in Chinese on the other side of the paper. On one of the fragments there is a date in Chinese: the sixteenth day of the seventh month of the seventh year of the dading period, that is, 1217. This discovery was announced in an article by D. Kara [= Gy. Kara], E.I. Kyčanov and V.S. Starikov, "Pervaja naxodka čžurčžen'skix rukopisnyx tekstov na bumage" [The first discovery of Jurchen cursive writing on paper] (1969). Although it has proven impossible to decipher these sheets, the authors have been able to identify 34 out of the 113 characters in the text as being Jurchen.

The material discovered in Xi'an, the Nüzhen zishu, has been discussed above.



111. 23. Another example of Jurchen cursive script discovered in Leningrad.

There are many examples of Jurchen handwritten characters preserved on the walls of the Bai Ta Pagoda (also known as the Wanbu Huayanjing Pagoda) in Huhehot, Inner Mongolia. They seem to be the comments, notes and autographs of various Jurchen travellers. The script is very cursive and almost illegible, and not many of the characters can be deciphered; they are, however, demonstrably Jurchen. Examples can be found in the frontispiece to Jin and Jin, Nüzhen yuyan wenzi yanjiu [Research on the Jurchen Language and Script]. There are also several references in Chinese sources (Liu Fengzhu, "Qidan, Nüzhen wenzi jianjie" [A brief introduction to the Khitan and Jurchen scripts] (1980), Jin Qicong, Nüzhenwen cidian [Jurchen Dictionary], Appendix, p. 16) to handwritten materials discovered in the Ke-you-zhong-qi (Khorchin West Central Banner) Du-er-ji Commune and the Ke-you-qian-qi (Khorchin West Forward Banner), Wu-lan-mao-du Commune in Jilin; research is said to be in progress, but as far as I have been able to discover, no articles on these materials have been published yet.

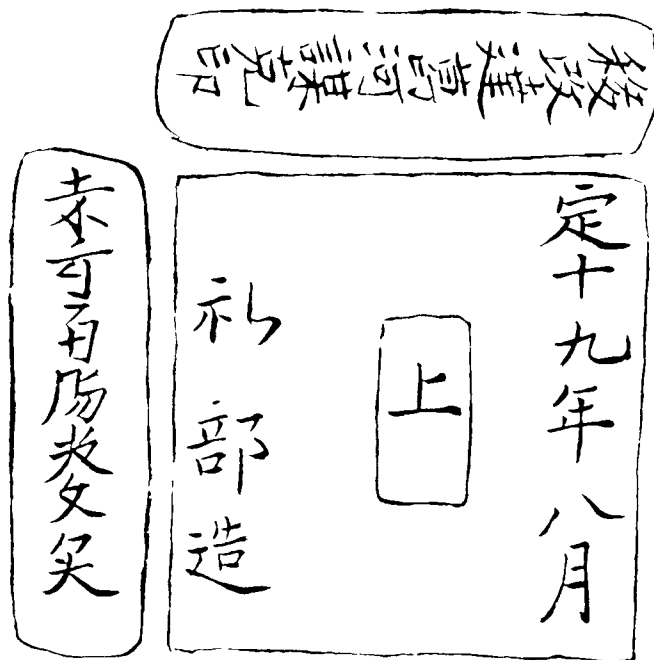
#### (4). Jurchen seals and mirrors with inscriptions in Jurchen.

There have been five seals (and one seal character) with Jurchen script discovered so far; there have also been three bronze mirrors discovered with a few Jurchen characters written on them. These, together with a couple of miscellaneous items, are listed below.

(1) The Kechenshan mouke seal: this was discovered in 1916, in Helong county, Jilin. It has six Chinese characters (Ke-chen-shan mou-ke yin), meaning "the seal of the mou-ke of Kechenshan". (A mouke was an official in charge of one hundred households; cf. L. Gilbert, Dictionnaire historique et géographique de la Mandchourie, p. 649). On the back of the seal is written in Chinese "manufactured by the Board of Rites (Li bu) in the tenth month of the eighteenth year of the dading period" (1178). On the side there are thirteen Jurchen characters, part of which seems to be a transcription of the Chinese. The only mention of this seal seems to be in Toriyama Ki'ichi, Mansen bunka shikan [The Cultural History of Manchuria and Korea], pp. 166-168 note 6, who records the Jurchen characters. This information was repeated in Amma Yaichirō, Joshimbun kinsekishi kō [A Study of Inscriptions in the Jurchen script], who says that this seal was discovered by a farmer, but is now lost. Japanese sources say it was discovered in Kando, Korea; recent Chinese catalogues say it was discovered in Helong county, Jilin, now part of the Korean Nationality Autonomous Region.



(2) The Yigaidagehe mouke seal: it is not known where or when this seal was discovered; it is reproduced in Luo Fucheng, Nüzhi yiyu [The Chinese-Jurchen Vocabulary of the Bureau of Translators]. On one side of the seal there are eight Chinese characters: Yi-gai-da-ge he mou-ke yin [Seal of the mouke of Yigaidage River]; on the back there is a date in Chinese: "manufactured by the Board of Rites in the eighth month of the dading period" (1179). The inscription is also reproduced in Amma Yaichirō, *op. cit.* p. 76. It is also reproduced in Luo Fuyi, Yinzhang gaishu [A general introduction to the study of seals] (1963), p. 103, and in Luo Fuyi, Nüzhenwen yin ji [A collection of seals in the Jurchen script] (unpublished manuscript dated 1965; mentioned in Jin and Jin *op. cit.* p. 49).

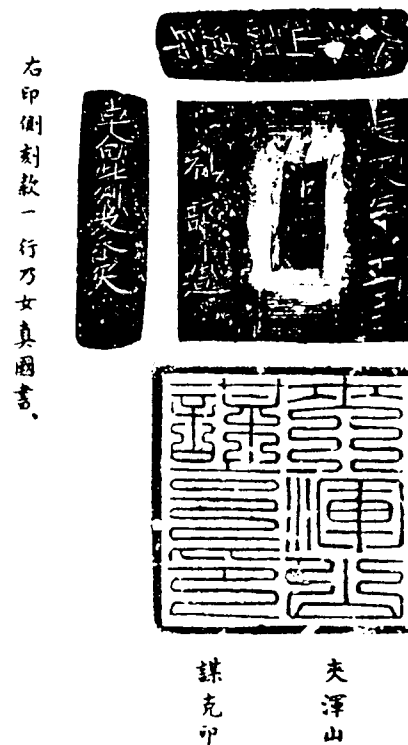


Ill. 24. The Yigaidage river mouke seal.

(3) The Hetouhulunhe mouke seal: this is now in the Tianjin Museum. It was also made by the Board of Rites in 1179. On the seal there are nine Chinese characters and six Jurchen characters. It is said to be recorded in the unpublished manuscript by Luo Fuyi mentioned above.

(4) The Hezhouhaiman mouke seal: this is also in the Tianjin Museum, with the same inscription indicating that it was manufactured in 1179 by the Board of Rites. There are eight Jurchen characters on it; these are also said to be recorded in Luo Fuyi, *op. cit.*

(5) The Jiahunshan mouke seal: this is held in the National Palace Museum, Beijing. Also issued in 1179 by the Board of Rites. On one side are the Chinese characters Jia-hun-shan mou-ke yin [Seal of the mouke of Jiahun Mountain] and seven characters in Jurchen. Also said to be recorded in Luo Fuyi, *op. cit.*



Ill. 25. The seal of the mouke of Jiahun mountain.

(6) The Xianping-fu mouke guan zao-jing [Mirror of the mouke of Xianping district]. This is a bronze mirror. On one side it has six Chinese characters and another symbol, which is believed to be the Jurchen seal-character of the official. It is reproduced in Jin and Jin op. cit. p. 39.



Ill. 26. The characters on the Xianping-fu mouke mirror.

(7) The Kewei meng'an tong-jing [Mirror of the meng'an of Kewei]. (A meng'an was an official in charge of one thousand households). The only reference to this seems to be in Jin and Jin, op. cit. pp. 39-40. There is a line of Jurchen characters along the side, only four of which are still legible; they seem to mean "the meng'an of Kewei".

(8) The Shou-dai wen tong-jing [Engraved bronze mirror with ribbon attached]. This was discovered in Mishan county, Heilongjiang, in 1974, and is now held by the Heilongjiang Cultural Relics Archeological Work Team. On the side of the mirror there are nine Jurchen and four Chinese characters; the Chinese shows that the mirror had come from Changchun. The characters seem to have been added afterwards, not at the time of the making of the mirror; this is also the case with (7) above.

(9) In an article "Heilongjiang pan Suibin Zhongxing gu cheng he Jindai mu-qun" [The ancient city near Zhongxing Commune, Suibin County, on the banks of the Heilongjiang River, and a group of graves from the Jin Dynasty] (1977), by the Cultural Relics and Archeological Work Team of Heilongjiang Province, there is a reproduction of a bronze seal. There is no mention of this seal in the article, but Jin and Jin op. cit. p. 40 have included it as being an example of a Jurchen "seal character". It is basically the same as the seal character on the mirror (No. 6) above.



Ill. 27. A Jurchen seal character.

(10) On the title page of Jin Qicong's Nūzhenwen cidian [Jurchen Dictionary] there is a handwritten seal character (hua-ya), which Jin said was written by a Jurchen. He does not give a source for it.

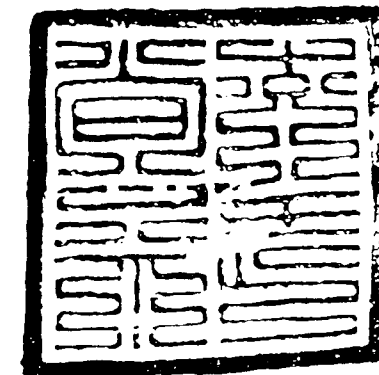
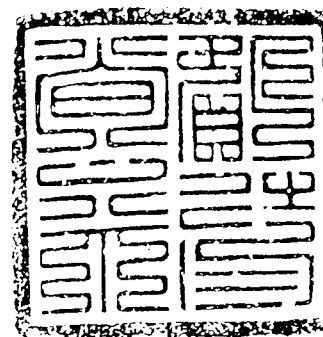


Ill. 28. A Jurchen cursive seal character (hua ya)

(5) Other inscriptions previously thought to be in Jurchen.

There are several inscriptions identified in various sources as being in Jurchen, which are now known to be in Xixia, Khitan, or at least of doubtful provenance. The first of these was the Xixia inscription on the Wall of the Juyongguan, one of the passes in the Great Wall not far from Beijing. A. Wylie, "On an ancient Buddhist inscription at Keu-yung Kwan in North China" (1860) thought that a script unknown to him in this multilingual inscription was Jurchen; he was corrected by G. Devéria, "L'écriture du Royaume de Si-hia ou Tangout" (1901). Another example of mistaken identity was that of the Da Jin huangdi dutong jinglue langjun xing ji inscription, which has been discussed above.

The characters on two bronze mirrors held in Korea, which are identified in the Chōsen kinseki sōran [General Inventory of Inscriptions in Korea] as being Jurchen, have now been identified as being Khitan (cf. K. Wittfogel and C.S. Fêng, op. cit. p. 245 and Tamura and Kobayashi, Keiryō pp. 267-268). The bronze seal, reproduced in Imanishi Shunjū, "Joshinji dōin" [A bronze seal in the Jurchen script] and included in Amma Yaichirō's corpus of Jurchen inscriptions, is regarded by Yan Wanzhang "Jinxi Xigushan chutu Qidanwen muzhi yanjiu" [Research on the epitaph in Khitan script excavated at Xigushan, Jinxi] (1957) as being an example of the Khitan small script, and by Toyoda Gorō, "Kittan reiji kō: Joshin moji no genryū" [The Khitan large script - the origin of the Jurchen script] (1963) and "An analysis of the Major Ch'i-tan characters" (1964) as being an example of the Khitan large script. Yan Wanzhang also refers to a seal held in the Dongbei bowuguan (Northeastern China Museum), the inscription on which was previously thought to be in Jurchen, but which is similar to those on the mirror published by Imanishi Shunjū. For other seals in this script, cf. Li Yuchun, "Liangke Qidanwen tongyin" [Two new official seals with Khitan script] (1959) and Li Yiyu, "Nei-Menggu chutu gudai guanyin de xin ziliao" [New material on official seals from ancient times excavated in Inner Mongolia] (1961). Similarly, Luo Fuyi, Yinzhang gaishu [A general introduction to the study of seals] (1963) reproduces a seal which he gives as an example of the Jurchen seal script; later he gives an almost identical seal which he says is an example of the Khitan seal script; it would seem that both are Khitan.



女真文篆书：

此是契丹國書篆體官  
印、印背無款識、案此殆  
即金史百官志中所說  
正隆元年以內外官印  
有用遼宋舊印及契丹  
字者、

此印印文不識

A seal in Khitan script; the two characters on the left appear to be identical to those on the seal thought to be in the Jurchen script

An example of a seal thought to be in Jurchen script, but more likely an example of Khitan script

Of far greater interest is an inscription presented in an article by Y. Rinčėn, "Mélanges archéologiques: les inscriptions sur pierre et les plaques d'or ornementées du Harnais de Tonyoucuc", (1958-59) in which he gives a photograph of an inscription and the following note: "Dans le territoire du Mōner sumun, Kentei ayimay, sur la roche Bičigtu qanan en montagne Salbar ayula, il y a une inscription hieroglyphique inconnue. Elle contient quatre lignes verticales du texte, dont la dernière est la date: jour du cinquième mois de la dixième année du règne de... Les caractères "jour", "cinquième", "mois" et "dixième" sont similaires aux caractères chinois. L'hieroglyphe significatif "an" est similaire au même caractère de l'écriture ĵurčėn. Les deux caractères au commencement de la dernière ligne donnent la devise du règne d'un empereur ĵurčėn ou kitan. Sur le roche Bičigtu qanan au côté droit de cette inscription il y a quelques emblèmes vieux-turcs et trois caractères en écriture inconnue. M. Batuvčir, le mandghouriste excellent et membre du Comité des Sciences, supposa que l'inscription eut été écrite en caractères kitan. Il est intéressant de mentionner qu'à l'Est, non très loin de cet endroit, il y a les ruines de deux villes des Kitans".



Ill. 30. The inscription on Bičigtu qanan, at Kentei ayimay.

In a later article, "Les dessins pictographiques et les inscriptions sur les rochers et sur les stèles en Mongolie" (1968), he reproduced the script of that inscription, with the note "The rock with Jurchid inscriptions at Bichigtu Khanan in Muren Sumun, Khentei Aimak". It seems, however, that it is more likely that this is another example of the Khitan "large script". If we examine the date, it is striking that the first two characters 天与 are very similar to the first two characters of the Xigushan inscription; these are written 天与 by Yan Wanzhang and 天与 by Toyoda Gorō, and corresponds to Chinese da'an. The character after this is the Chinese for 'ten', and also occurs in this form in the Xugushan and the Gu taishi mingshi bei inscription. The character following this also occurs in that form in both inscriptions, and has been shown to correspond to Chinese nian 'year'. The last three characters are the same as Chinese, and are also found in the Khitan inscriptions mentioned above. Seeing the da'an reign period of the Jin Dynasty lasted only five years, this must correspond to the da'an reign period of the Liao (1085-1094). The date on this inscription can then be determined as the fifth month of the tenth year of the da'an period (1094), and the script (if the inscription is genuine) can be provisionally classified as an example of the Khitan "large script".

#### (6). Dictionaries.

There is only one dictionary of Jurchen characters available, the Nüzhenwen cidian of Jin Qicong (1984). This is a major work, an essential tool for further research in Jurchen. Jin has collected over 700 Jurchen characters, from all the inscriptions mentioned above as well as the Hua-Yi yiyu and the laiwen (petitions). Under each entry he gives the number of the character in Grube's Die Sprache und Schrift der Jučen and Kiyose's A Study of the Jurchen Language and Script; the inscriptions in which the character occurs, including variants; the origin of the character, together with its source (if it is a Khitan character); the reconstruction of the pronunciation of the character, according to the Chinese transcription in the Hua-Yi yiyu; the reconstruction in Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong, Nüzhen yuyan wenzi yanjiu [Research on the Jurchen Language and

Script]; the reconstruction in Yamaji Hiroaki's various works; Kiyose's reconstruction; Grube's reconstruction and the reconstructions proposed in various articles by L. Ligeti. This is followed by the meaning or meanings of the character, then by a complete listing of where the character occurs in inscriptions (with sources clearly indicated), and in which compound words or expressions it occurs in the Hua-Yi yiyu, all with romanised reconstructions according to the system proposed in Jin and Jin, op. cit., and translations in Chinese. The characters are arranged according to a type of stroke direction and number of strokes system, common in dictionaries of Chinese simplified characters, but adapted to Jurchen. There is an index of the romanised forms; an appendix listing various grammatical suffixes and a bibliography.

In this bibliography, Jin mentions another dictionary, by Sun Jinji, entitled Nüzhenwen zidian, which was published by the Academy of Social Sciences of Liaoning in 1980 in mimeograph form. The etymological study of Jurchen characters by Yamaji Hiroaki, Joshin moji seiji kenkyū [Research on the Structure of Jurchen Characters], (1958, reprinted 1980) could also be considered a dictionary of sorts. L. Ligeti finished his article "Note préliminaire sur le déchiffrement des "petits caractères" joutchen" (1950) on a hopeful note: "J'envisage de publier, entre autres, un vocabulaire des 'petits caractères' joutchen actuellement connues, accompagnés de leurs vraies leçons, ainsi que tous les mots ou ces caractères sont attestés". In 1986, Professor Ligeti wrote "Recentement, grâce à l'encouragement de M. Herbert Franke, j'ai repris mon ancien travail, je l'ai mis au point et je compte le publier sous peu". (Private communication). Professor Ligeti died in 1987, but it is to be hoped that his work on Jurchen may yet be published. It should also be mentioned that Professor Nishida Tatsuo has announced a study of the Jurchen Hua-Yi yiyu in his series of studies on those vocabularies, of which the Tibetan and Burmese studies have already appeared. This work has found its way into some bibliographies, but as far as I am aware, has not yet been formally published.

#### (7). The study of the Jurchen language in Korea.

The study of Jurchen in Korea is the subject of an article by Ōgura Shimpei, "Chōsen ni okeru Kittan oyobi Joshin gogaku" [The study of the Khitan and Jurchen languages in Korea], (1917) which was later incorporated in his book Chōsen gogaku shi [A history of Korean linguistics] (1964).

Hiu Lie, in his book Die Mandschu-Sprachkunde in Korea (1972) draws heavily on this material, and adds some useful explanatory notes.

The first mention of the Jurchen language and script in Korean records is in the Koryŏ-sa, which records that in the year 1225 a deserter from the Eastern Jurchens arrived in Korea, and as he knew both Chinese and the "small characters", he was sent to the capital to teach there. In 1276 a State Interpreters and Translators Bureau was established, mainly for the study of Chinese. There seems to be some confusion as to whether Jurchen was taught in this institution or not. Hiu Lie, op.cit. p.17 says: "In der Ko-ryŏ Zeit gab es im Jahre 1276 staatliche Übersetzungs- und Dolmetscherbüros T'ong-mun-gwan, in denen Fremdsprachen wie die chinesische Sprache, die Sprache der Kitan, der Sprache der Jürchen, die mongolische Sprache und die japanische Sprache unterrichtet wurden... Aber in Wirklichkeit scheint hauptsächlich die chinesische Sprache in T'ong-mun-gwan unterrichtet worden zu sein". He gives as a reference Ōgura, op. cit. p. 664, who says: "... sore wa moppara Kango nomi o gakushu shita mono rashiku, Joshingo sono ta no gengo ni kanshite wa sukoshi mo genkyū shite inai" [it seems that Chinese only was studied there, there does not seem to be the slightest mention of Jurchen or other languages]. Hiu Lie also gives a reference to Yi Pyŏng-do, Kuksa taegwan [An outline of National History] (1957) p. 309, but here Yi gives only a passing reference to such organisations as the T'ong-mun-gwan and the Sa-yŏk-wŏn, in which the languages of the countries around Korea, such as Chinese, Khitan, Jurchen, Mongol and Japanese were studied. The Sa-yŏk-wŏn was established in 1393, initially only for the study of Chinese, but records in the Kyŏng-guk-tae-chon indicate that four languages were studied there. Various items in another historical record, the Yi-cho shil-lok show that during the reign of King Se-chong (1419-1450), Jurchen was studied as a regular foreign language in the Sa-yŏk-wŏn.

According to the T'ong-mun-gwan-chi, there were fourteen textbooks in use for teaching Jurchen, of which nine were lost and the remaining five translated into Manchu in 1639; the versions in the Jurchen script have all been lost. The titles of the textbooks used were (1) Qian zi wen; (2) Bing shu; (3) Xiao er lun; (4) San sui er; (5) Zi-shi-wei; (6) Ba sui er; (7) Juhua; (8) Qi sui er; (9) Chounan; (10) Shi er zhu guo; (11) Guichou; (12) Wuzi; (13) Sunzi and (14) Taigong shang shu. These are all well-known Chinese books, except for (7) Juhua (or Quhua), (9) Chounan and (11) Guichou. Ōgura suggests that Juhua/Quhua is from Manchu gekhu 'bird' and that Chounan is from Manchu gunan 'a three year old ox'. M. Courant, Bibliographie coréenne Vol. I p. 84 suggests for Guichou "titre probablement transcrit du

mantchou gudju 'corde, étai' ou kutchu 'ami, camarade' (?)".

In his article "Deux tablettes de T'ai-tsong des Ts'ing", L. Ligeti has the following remarks on the study of Jurchen in Korea: "Bien plus, avec la chute des Kin, la littérature jou-tchen a simplement cessé d'exister et, sous les Ming, les Chinois eurent beau faire revivre les petits caractères jou-tchen, une nouvelle littérature jou-tchen, pour modeste qu'elle fut, n'arriva pas à se former. En Corée, il en fut tout autrement. Dans ce pays on avait en 1469, reorganisé le Bureau des Traducteurs pour y enseigner les langues chinoise, mongole, japonaise et jou-tchen; ... Or, en Corée, on enseignait le jou-tchen au moins depuis le XVe siècle, en même temps, on avait traduit certains ouvrages chinois en jou-tchen. Avec l'événement de la dynastie mandchoue et avec l'introduction de la langue mandchoue écrite, on n'a pas mis de côté les anciennes traductions jou-tchen, mais en les corrigeant, on les a transformées en bons textes mandchous. Malheureusement aucune de ces anciennes traductions jou-tchen ne nous est parvenue..."

Lee Ki-moon, "Mongolian loan-words in Middle Korean" notes that there are many personal and place names of Jurchen origin in the Yong-bi-ŏ-ch'ŏn-ga, on which he was planning an article.

## CHAPTER SEVEN

## THE HUA-YI YIYU

(1) The Bureau of Translators vocabulary

(2) The Bureau of Interpreters vocabulary

\*

(1) The Bureau of Translators Vocabulary

The Jurchen language was studied in China during the Ming Dynasty, both in the Bureau of Translators (Si yi guan) and the Bureau of Interpreters (Hui tong guan). These institutions have been studied by F. Hirth, "The Chinese Oriental College" (1887); by G. Devéria, "Histoire du College des Interprètes a Pékin" (1896); by E. Denison Ross, "New Light on the History of the Chinese Oriental College" (1910) (cf. the revue by P. Pelliot (1909)), by Haneda Toru, "Si Yi Guan Ze" [On the Si yi guan] (1928) (cf. the revue by Pelliot, "Bibliographie: "Sseu-yi-kouan tsö" (1929); again by P. Pelliot in Appendix III of his work on "Le Höja et le Sayyid Hussein de l'Histoire des Ming" (1929), by Kanda Kiichirō, "Min no Shiyakkan ni tsuite" [On the Bureau of Translators of the Ming] (1932), and by N. Wild, "Materials for the Study of the Ssü I Kuan (Bureau of Translators)" (1945). The Bureau of Translators was concerned with the written languages, and the Bureau of Interpreters with the spoken languages. Several manuscripts of the Jurchen texts used in both institutions are extant.

屏角	孟水兒	屏兀也黑	錫 (白鉄)	兄子玉	上江塞勒	銅	荒	失里	金	乐土	安春温
琥珀	肖金	琥珀	蠟 全燭	本冊朱子	阿羊非本	鍊	主	塞勒	玉	吳土	古温
瑪瑙	元定	馬納敦	財	更利	兀里因	錢重	米中	只哈	銀	艾土	蒙古温
珊瑚	牙肖	珊瑚	物	色列	哈稱因	勅	采斥	阿刺瓦吉	寶	舟	哈的
赤玉	金	弗刺江古温	象牙	示化余兒	素法委黑	爾玉	荒玉	多羅温	珠	汗兒	寧佳黑

Ill. 31. A page from the "glossary" (za zi)  
from the Hua-Yi yiyu of the Bureau of Translators

The vocabularies of the Bureau of Translators were the first to be brought to the attention of European scholars by J.M. Amiot in 1789. A set acquired by J. Edkins and now in the British Museum (according to R.K. Douglas, Supplementary Catalogue of Chinese Books in the British Museum (1904)) did not contain a Jurchen section. In 1887, F. Hirth announced the discovery of a complete set of the vocabularies of the Bureau of Translators, which was acquired by the Königlische Bibliothek in Berlin. The Jurchen vocabulary and documents in this manuscript (which was in Jurchen script, with a Chinese transcription of the script and a Chinese translation) were studied by W. Grube, Die Sprache und Schrift der Jučen (1896). Although some progress had been made by some scholars, serious study of the language and script was not possible until the discovery of this bilingual glossary and its publication by Grube. Grube's edition is divided into four parts: (1) the Jurchen-Chinese vocabulary, copied by Grube from the manuscript. This is divided into three columns: the word or expression in Jurchen script, the pronunciation of these characters in Chinese transcription and the meaning. Each item is numbered, from 1 to 871; (2) an index to the characters in the Jurchen script, arranged according to the number of strokes in the character; (3) an alphabetical index of the Jurchen characters, according to Grube's "reconstruction" (which is no more than a transcription of the Ming Dynasty Chinese according to a non-identified non-standard late Qing dialect in an idiosyncratic romanisation) and (4) a Jurchen-German glossary, in which each word is transliterated, translated (according to the Chinese version) and, in as many cases as possible, the Manchu equivalent given. Where appropriate, reference is made to the Jurchen vocabulary appended to the History of the Jin Dynasty, as listed in the preface to A. Wylie, Translation of the Ts'ing wan k'e-mung, a Chinese Grammar of the Manchu Tartar Language (1855). Sometimes Mongol or Chinese equivalents are suggested. As an appendix, Grube added twenty laiwen ("petitions"), with transcriptions, translations and notes. These "petitions" were usually addressed to the Emperor, asking for a rise in salary, promotion and so on. They are of unknown provenance and little linguistic value, as they are purely word for word translations of the Chinese, with no regard for Jurchen word order or grammar. Cf. W. Grube, op. cit. "Die dem Glossar beigefugten Jučen-Texte beweisen, wie ich bereits in meiner "Note préliminaire" hervorhob, dass ihr Verfasser der Sprache völlig fremd gegenüberstand und sich darauf beschränkt hat, die ihm vorliegenden zwanzig chinesischen Texte mit Hilfe des Glossars Wort für Wort und unter Beibehaltung der chinesischen Wortstellung zu übersetzen... Auch werden die Worte in Texte ohne Berücksichtigung ihrer grammatischen Function, stets nur in derjenigen Form verwendet, in welcher sie zufällig im Glossar citirt sind. Es kann daher dreist

behaupet werden, dass ein des Chinesischen unkundiger Jučen jene Texte überhaupt nicht verstanden hätte". N. Wild, in his "Materials for the Study of the Ssü I Kuan (Bureau of Translators)" (1945) has similar comments. On the nature of these documents, P. Pelliot, in his "Le Hōjā et le Sayyid Houssein de l'Histoire des Ming" (1929), comments "... ceci ne veut pas dire d'ailleurs que les textes en écritures étrangères soient des documents originaux; on a vu plus haut qu'ils étaient le plus souvent refaits mécaniquement d'après les vocabulaires par les gens ignorant en réalité les règles essentielles des langues dont il étaient censés s'occuper. Ces pseudo-versions peuvent avoir été préparées au moment même pour être présentées à l'Empereur; il est moins probable, mais non exclu, que, dans certains cas, nous ayons affaire à des exercices d'école de dates indéterminées".

聖旨知道  
 奏奴婢在邊外出氣力因此得了前職每年  
 進貢馬匹貂鼠皮今可憐見口討紗帽併帶奴婢在邊地面  
 好管人又討蝦子穿用是好奏得  
 余臣奏為求仕吳文余右  
 原友父廷克更告文年弄化是律右屯原乎主五原同克育  
 老字原東化原又非反益鼎  
 克並為得列奇余更看更卒令長友父由休原金美更並友  
 是是廷廷克更更告文年坐至今肩列令友父伴亦金美不  
 是亦死亦其果非南危着列原友父有老  
 余臣奏見屏

111. 32. One of the "petitions" (laiwen) from the Bureau of Translators (copied by Luo Fucheng)



The publication of Grube's book prompted two articles suggesting further Manchu or Mongol cognates of words which Grube had left unidentified: a review by W. Bang (1896), who suggested five, and an article by E.R. von Zach, "Einige weitere Nachträge zum Jučen-Deutschen Glossar Prof. Grube's" (1897), who suggested some forty other possible cognates.

Apart from the "Berlin manuscript" from which Grube worked, there were three other manuscript copies of the Bureau of Translators Jurchen vocabulary extant: (1) the Tōyō bunko manuscript, (2) the Naikaku bunko manuscript (which contains only petitions and no glossary); and (3) the manuscript in the personal collection of Ke Shaomin (which closely resembles the Tōyō bunko manuscript). In 1933, Luo Fucheng published a handwritten copy of the Hua-Yi yiyu with a much larger collection of petitions than those presented by Grube, culled from the other manuscripts, and in 1940 Ishida Mikinosuke published "Gurūbe-bon Ka-I yakugo ho-i" [A supplement to Grube's Hua-Yi yiyu], in which he was able to add forty-six more vocabulary items to Grube's glossary, which had been preserved in the manuscripts in Japan but were missing from the Berlin text. Nevertheless, Grube's work remained until very recently the principal source of our knowledge of Jurchen, and was widely used in attempts to decipher various inscriptions in Jurchen, as well as in comparative studies between Jurchen and Manchu or other Tungus languages. After its publication, as L. Ligeti has noted, "les recherches sur l'écriture et la langue joutchen ont connu une longue période d'éclipse ce qu'on ne saurait regretter assez", a statement which is generally true of Jurchen studies in the West, but not in China, Japan or Korea. It was not until the publication of G.N. Kiyose's "A Study of the Jurchen Language and Script - Reconstruction and Decipherment" (1977) that a full scale revision of Grube's work was possible. Consulting the various other manuscripts mentioned above, and taking into account the many revisions and additions to Grube's work, Kiyose has produced the definitive edition of the Bureau of Translators vocabulary. Most importantly, he has reconstructed the Jurchen words in the vocabulary, not only on the basis of the Chinese transcription, as Grube had done, but has attempted to provide credible readings for the Jurchen characters in terms of Jurchen phonology, at least as far as their probable readings in the Ming Dynasty were. Kiyose has not attempted the task of reconstructing the original readings of the characters, those in use during the Jin Dynasty when the script was created, but his Ming Dynasty reconstructions will form an essential basis for this important task. Kiyose's work also includes an annotated edition of all the laiwen available, collected from all the manuscripts mentioned above, as well as important bibliographies and indices.

Another important recent work on the Bureau of Translators Jurchen vocabulary and the laiwen is by He Xige, "Nüzhenguan za-zi, laiwen yanjiu" [Research on the vocabulary and the petitions of the Jurchen Bureau of Translators] (1983). He Xige's study differs from Kiyose's in several ways: he compares the various editions of the vocabulary in great detail, and notes discrepancies; he lists and studies every word in the vocabulary individually, given the Jurchen script form, the transcription in Chinese, a romanised form of the Chinese characters (representing Ming pronunciation), the Manchu equivalent (when available) (which Kiyose does not provide), various philological notes and supplementary notes, which refer to variants in the form of the character as recorded in various inscriptions, or other Chinese transcriptions of the Jurchen word in question in various Chinese historical works. In his study of the laiwen, too, He Xige has annotated them thoroughly, pointing out errors in word order, miswritten characters and grammatical mistakes (which abound), and gives interlinear transcriptions and Chinese translations of the texts. Kiyose gives the Jurchen and Chinese texts and an interlinear transcription and translation, and translates the texts into English, but does not provide the grammatical and philological commentary. He Xige does not study the pronunciation of the individual Jurchen characters; that task has been left to his colleague Dao Erji, in his "Nüzhen yuyin chutan" [Preliminary study of the phonology of Jurchen] (1983). This is a study of each individual character; the reconstructions of Grube, Kiyose and Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong are noted and compared, and suggested readings given for each Jurchen character. Again, however, Dao Erji confines himself to the readings of these characters in Ming Dynasty Jurchen. These two studies (both originally theses written under the supervision of Jin Qicong) have been published in book form, under the title Nüzhen yiyu yanjiu [Research on the Jurchen Hua-Yi yiyu] (1983).

The studies on the Bureau of Translators' Hua-Yi yiyu by Kiyose, Dao Erji and He Xige may be said to be the culmination of studies on this text, and will form the basis for any further study. Professor Nishida Tatsuo has announced a study on the Jurchen section of the Hua-Yi yiyu in his series of studies on this set of vocabularies, of which the Tibetan (Xifan), Burmese, Toso and Lolo (Yi) vocabularies have already appeared. As far as I know the study on Jurchen has not yet been formally published.

## (2) The Bureau of Interpreters' vocabulary

The vocabularies of the Bureau of Interpreters (the Hui tong guan) were first brought to the attention of European scholars by E. Denison Ross, in his article "New Light on the History of the Chinese Oriental College, and a 16th Century Vocabulary of the Luchuan Language" (1910), though Denison Ross thought that the vocabularies he had discovered in the Morrison Collection of the University College, London, were from the Bureau of Translators. He was corrected by H. Maspero, in his article "Etudes sur la phonétique historique de la langue annamite" (1912). This collection does not contain a Jurchen vocabulary. In 1912 L. Aurousseau announced that he had acquired a complete set of these vocabularies, including one in Jurchen. This set came from the collection of Yang Shoujing, who had obtained it, handcopied by a Japanese, in Japan. When P. Pelliot saw it before 1929, it still contained a Jurchen version (cf. Le Hôja... p. 284 n. 367). According to Fukushima Kunimichi, Nihon yakugo [The Japanese Hua-Yi yiyu] (1968), these manuscripts are still in Hanoi, but lack the Jurchen and Korean sections.

There are several other sets of these vocabularies, some of which, such as the Shōkōkan text (destroyed in Japan during World War II) and the text in the personal collection of Inaba Iwakichi, also do not contain a Jurchen vocabulary. There are two other sets, however, which do contain such vocabularies: (1) The Awanokuni bunko text: this was destroyed by fire in 1950, but photographs of it are preserved in the Department of Linguistics at Kyoto University and (2) the Seikadō bunko text. In several catalogues of materials in Jurchen, two other manuscripts are said to exist: (1) that in the Seisai shōjaku kō (1823) by Kondo Morishige, and (2) that in the Ikoku shomoku gaishū (1820) by Matsuzawa Rōsen. Both these books, however, are annotated catalogues and comment on books, but do not reproduce them. According to Fukushima Kunimichi, *op. cit.* p. 228, the manuscript referred to in the Seisai shōjaku kō refers to the Seikadō bunko copy, and that in the Ikoku shomoku gaishū refers to the Awanokuni bunko copy. Ishida Mikinosuke, "Joshingo kenkyū no shin shiryō" [New material for research on the Jurchen language] (1931), also refers to a copy held in the private library of Inaba Iwakichi, which he thought also contained a Jurchen section. However, in a note to a later article "Iwayuru heishūbon Ka-I yakugo no Dattankan yakugo" [On the so-called C-type Hua-Yi yiyu of the Mongol section of the Bureau of Interpreters] (1973) he corrected this.

The Seikadō text was published by Ishida Mikinosuke in the article mentioned above, "Joshingo kenkyū no shin shiryō"

[New material for research on the Jurchen language]; Ishida prefaced the text with a long study listed all available inscriptions in Jurchen and other Hua-Yi yiyu manuscripts (with and without Jurchen sections), with long bibliographical references. The publication of this article prompted a study by Watanabe Kuntarō, "Joshingo no shin kenkyū", [New Research on the Jurchen Language] (1935), in which he identified a large number of words in this text with their Manchu equivalents.

In 1929, Yamamoto Mamoru discovered a Jurchen manuscript in the Awanokuni bunko, but did not publish it until 1944 under the auspices of the Jianguo University in the Japanese supported state of Manchukuo. This was apparently published in mimeograph form and must be very rare, as no mention is made of it in most bibliographical articles on Jurchen. It is mentioned, however, in the bibliography of Jin Qicong's Nūzhenwen cidian [Jurchen Dictionary]. In 1943, Yamamoto Mamoru published an article "Seikadō-bon Joshin yakugo kōi" [A study of variants in the Seikadō copy of the Jurchen Hua-Yi yiyu], in which he compared the two manuscripts, and was able to add several items to the list published by Ishida. Much later, in 1951, he also published a study comparing the Bureau of Interpreters' vocabulary, as preserved in the Seikadō and Awanokuni copies, and Grube's edition of the Bureau of Translators' vocabulary. ("Joshin yakugo no kenkyū" [Research on the Jurchen Hua-Yi yiyu]). In this study, however, he only compares those items held in common by both vocabularies. An important article which compares the two sets of vocabularies is by Yi Ki-mun (Lee Ki-moon), "Chung-se Yōchin-ō ūmunron yōngu" [A Study of the Phonology of Middle Jurchen] (1958). In this he compares Jurchen words common to both vocabularies with a large number of cognates in the other Tungus languages, mainly culled from J. Benzing, Die tungusischen Sprachen: Versuch einer vergleichenden Grammatik (1956). The author also points out a few cognates of words in Grube's Die Sprache und Schrift der Jučen which do not appear in Manchu, but which are extant in related Tungus languages. This article unfortunately teems with misprints, which diminishes its value considerably.

In 1973, Ishida republished his article on this manuscript in his collected works, Tōa bunkashi sōkō [Studies on the Cultural History of East Asia]. In this he corrected many misprints and misreadings of characters in the first version, mainly based on Yamamoto's published comparative studies on the Seikadō and Awanokuni manuscripts, as well as, of course, consulting the original manuscripts available to him. In 1940, L. Ligeti visited Tokyo and received a copy of the Awanokuni manuscript from Ishida. On his return to Europe, he prepared a transcription and translation of this text, to add to his study of the Bureau of Translators'

vocabulary (as published by Grube) which he had already prepared. World War II and other tasks made it impossible for him to continue that work at the time, but he began work on it again during the 1970s and 1980s. Professor Ligeti passed away before his work on this manuscript could be published, but it may yet see the light of day in his posthumous publications.

The first version of this study, prepared as a PhD thesis in 1974, was based on the edition in Ishida's Collected Works. In 1975, Professor Nishida Tatsuo kindly sent me a photocopy of the photographs of the Awanokuni manuscript mentioned above. The order of entries in Ishida's edition differs considerably from that in the Awanokuni manuscript, and is presumably based on the Seikadō manuscript. It has also been possible to make several corrections to the printed version published by Ishida, but, needless to say, that edition has been invaluable in trying to decipher some of the characters and transcriptions, some of which are very unclear. The edition presented here follows the order of the Awanokuni manuscript, which has been reproduced in the appendix.

## CHAPTER EIGHT

### THE LANGUAGE OF THE SINO-JURCHEN VOCABULARY OF THE BUREAU OF INTERPRETERS

1. General Remarks
2. Transcription
3. Phonology
4. Grammar
5. Table of transcription characters
6. Conclusion

#### 1. General remarks

The language of this vocabulary is very close to Manchu, and to the variety of Jurchen recorded in the vocabulary of the Bureau of Translators studied by Grube. It could be regarded both as a late form of Jurchen or as a form of early Manchu - in either case it is a record of a stage of the language which is very valuable for the study of the history of Manchu, representing a form of Manchu dating long before that language was first written in Mongol script in 1599 or in the reformed Manchu script (with added diacritics) in 1632. It has not been possible to date this manuscript accurately. The traditional attribution of the Hui tong guan vocabularies to Mao Ruicheng, who is said to have composed them circa 1601, is no longer generally accepted. On this problem Pelliot wrote: "Mais il est certain que plusieurs, et peut-être tous [of the vocabularies of the Bureau of Interpreters] sont plus anciens que la date que l'attribution à Mao Jouei-tcheng (circa 1601) aurait permis de supposer... toutefois le type des transcriptions chinoises ne permet guère de songer à une date antérieure à environ 1500". (Le Hōja... p. 284). On the vocabularies of the Bureau of Translators, he wrote: "Provisoirement, je conclus que les vocabulaires du Sseu-yi-kouan des Ming, sauf le Siamois qui

est de la fin du XVIème siècle, ont été compilés entre 1450 et 1500, et imprimés au plus tard dans la première moitié du XVIème siècle" (ibid. p. 278).

Chinese transcriptions of words from other languages are often not accurate, and a correct reconstruction of the original form of a word in Chinese transcription must rest on a good knowledge of the language represented. In the case of Jurchen, we must use earlier and later forms of what is essentially the same language to reconstruct the form of the word underlying the transcription. It is not permissible, however, to distort the evidence of the transcription in order to make a word look more like its Manchu cognate. The phonology of Jurchen is similar to that of Manchu, the chief differences being that the palatalisation of ti- > ci- and di- > ji- had not yet taken place; the Manchu si- is represented as ši- in Jurchen; there is frequent contraction in Jurchen forms; the vowels in words which are obviously identical often do not correspond in the two languages; final -n is far less frequent in Jurchen than in Manchu, and many medial consonants, following or preceding another consonant, are dropped - or rather, are not represented in the transcription. In this study I have used the device of indicating such consonants by enclosing them in square brackets: (transcription) wu-ši; (reconstruction) \*u[k]ši, cf. Manchu uksin 'armour'. Of course, the consonants indicated in square brackets were not necessarily pronounced. When the transcription was capable of indicating a consonant or consonant combination but did not, it is very difficult to decide whether the transcription is faulty or or it accurately reflects the pronunciation of that word in spoken Jurchen of the time, compared with the written Manchu of a later period. I have tried to be consistent, but have probably erred on the side of closeness to the transcription rather than closeness to the Manchu form.

The grammar of the language of the vocabulary is extremely simple, and presumably does not reflect the grammatical structure of the language accurately. Case endings are omitted more often than not (the accusative suffix, in Manchu be, which often occurs in Grube's vocabulary, does not appear at all in the vocabulary under discussion). Many features of the syntax are closer to Chinese than Manchu. The scholars of the Bureau of Interpreters, like those of the Bureau of Translators, were not well known for their competence in the languages they studied, or for their care in transcription. After all, these vocabularies had a limited aim: to be able to communicate, on a basic level, with "barbarians" on the rare occasions when this was absolutely inevitable, as when they brought tribute to the Court. Many of the expressions in the vocabulary express this use and sentiment. It is debatable how

accurately the language recorded in this vocabulary reflects the actual language of the Jurchens. However, it is our main evidence, and must be respected as such.

## 2. Transcription

The transcription of the Jurchen words in this vocabulary reflects a variety of late Ming Northern Chinese, and in this can be compared to the language of the Dengyun tujing (DYTJ), a rhyme book of the early seventeenth century. The language represented in this rhyme book was studied by Lu Zhiwei ("Ji Xu Xiao chongding Sima Wen Gong Dengyun tujing" [On the Dengyun tujing of Sima Wen, revised by Xu Xiao]) (1947), and, on the basis of Lu's reconstructions, Nishida Tatsuo determined the transcription values for the characters employed in the Tibetan and Burmese vocabularies of the Bureau of Translators ("Minmatsu kango no onin taikai" [The phonological structure of the Chinese Language at the end of the Ming Dynasty] (1970)). G.N. Kiyose also used Nishida's readings of the transcription characters in his A Study of the Jurchen Language and Script (1977). The transcription of Jurchen in this vocabulary, however, seems to be older than the Dengyun tujing, and in many important features seems to be closer to the Zhongyuan yinyun (ZYYY), a rhyme book of the early fourteenth century. In this study, the reconstruction of the ZYYY is based on that given by Dong Tonghe in his Hanyu yinyunxue [Chinese Historical Phonology] (1970), which is used as the basis of the edition of the ZYYY by Xu Shiying and Liu Dezhi, Yin zhu zhongyuan yinyun [The ZYYY with phonological annotations] (1969).

The main characteristics of the Chinese transcription are:

(1) In the ZYYY, the characters 換, 歡, 團, 斷, are reconstructed [xon, xon, ton, don], i.e. for the purposes of our transcription, hon, hon, ton, don. In the DYTJ they are reconstructed with the final -uan, as in Modern Mandarin. In the Jurchen vocabulary, however, the first readings are preferable:

換多莫	<u>hon-do-mo</u>	* <u>holdo mo</u>	'pine tree'
拙兒歡	<u>jue-r-hon</u>	* <u>Yuerhon</u>	'twelve'
團多	<u>ton-do</u>	* <u>tondo</u>	'loyal'
斷的	<u>don-di</u>	* <u>dondi-</u>	'to hear'

(2) In the DYTJ, the characters 生 and 勝 are not distinguished in pronunciation, both being sang. In the ZYYY

they are distinguished, by Dong Tonghe as [əng and ʃiəng; by Tōdō Akiyasu ("Development of Mandarin from 14c. to 19c.") as səng and ʃiəng, but by Nishida Tatsuo as səng and ʃing. In the language of the Sino-Jurchen vocabulary, the distinction is observed:

生吉	šeng-gi	*šenggi	'blood'
勝革力	šing-ge-li	*šingeri	'rat'

This also applies to characters which now end in -ən, but at an earlier stage (as late as Nicolas Trigault's *Xi Ru Er Mu Zi* (1626)) had the ending -in, e.g. 深 in do-šin-nu, J. \*došinu 'go in!'.  
 深 in

(3) In the DYTJ, characters such as 風蒙翁 have the final -ung, but Lu Zhiwei and Nishida argue that the development after labials -ung > <sup>w</sup>əng > əng had already occurred by that time. In the case of this vocabulary, it seems that such characters still were pronounced with a final -ung:

伏風	fu-fung	*fufun	'saw'
翁浦	ung-pu	*umpu	'hill-haw'

(4) Characters used to transcribe Jurchen syllables in -e, such as 得 de, 黑 he, 革 ge, 克 ke, 墨 me, 勒 le, (and 國 gue, 或 hue) are reconstructed by Lu Zhiwei with the main vowel -e. In this regard the language of the Jurchen vocabulary is closer to the DYTJ than to the ZYYY, in which such syllables are reconstructed with final diphthongs.

(5) Characters such as 後豆糲 which in Modern Mandarin end in -ou, are reconstructed by Lu Zhiwei as ending in -əu. This value corresponds to the Chinese of this vocabulary:

後力	həu-li	*heuli	'stomach'
糲兀	nəu-u	*neu'u	'younger sister'
豆	dəu	*deu	'younger brother'

(6) The Chinese dialect used in the transcription of Jurchen differs from Modern Mandarin (as do the DYTJ and the ZYYY) in that velars preceding had not yet been

palatalised. The characters 其吉希暇加 are pronounced ki, gi, hi, hia, gia and not qi, ji, xi, xia, jia as in Modern Mandarin.

(7) In Modern Mandarin -o occurs only after bilabials; in front of velars it is in complementary distribution with -e and in front of dentals and retroflexes with -uo. In the transcription syllables with end in -uo in Modern Mandarin are used to transcribe Jurchen syllables in -o:

多朵	do
羅	lo (ro)
活	ho

(8) The change from -o to -e after velars had apparently not taken place:

替課	ti-ko	*tiko	'cock'
----	-------	-------	--------

(9) At the time of the ZYYY, the characters 失, 尺只, were pronounced ši či ji. By the time of the DYTJ, the -i had already retracted to -i. In the transcriptions the value found in the ZYYY is still valid:

汗尺	han-či	*hanči	'near'
兀失	u-ši	*u[k]ši	'armour'
只哈	ji-ha	*jiha	'unit of money'

(10) The character 容, now read rong, in the transcription had the value yun(g). According to Wang Li (*Hanyu shigao* [Outline History of the Chinese Language] p. 129, "... the change from [j-] to [ʒ-] in words such as these is a very late one."

兀容	u-yun(g)	*uyun	'nine'
----	----------	-------	--------

(11) Characters in Modern Mandarin which begin with ɿ- ([ʒ]) from ńz- are used occasionally. Presumably they transcribe z-

木日勒	mu-ži-le	*mužile	'heart'
伏日	fu-ži	*fuži-	'to shave'

忽 入	<u>hu-žu</u>	* <u>hužu-</u>	'to bow'
額 熱	<u>e-že</u>	* <u>eže</u>	'head of household'

In Manchu these words are mujilen, fusi-, huju- and ejen. J. mužile and eže appear in Grube's vocabulary as meh[mai]-žih-lan (-poh) = \*mežilan and oh-žan \*ežan. Kiyose reconstructs \*mejilen and \*ejen, Jin Qicong reconstructs \*med3ilən and \*ed3en. On these words K. Menges, "Die Sprache der 3ürčen", p. 250 says "in beiden Fällen dürfte es sich um altes ʒ (i.e. [d3]) handeln, das vorhanden war, ehe im Manču und Nanaj die sekundäre Palatalisation eingetreten ist".

(12) The character 女 occurs occasionally. It seems to have had the value niu. The change -iu > -ü appears not to have occurred until the beginning of the seventeenth century.

(13) The characters 非 and 費 are apparently read fi:

非 刺	<u>fi-la</u>	* <u>fila</u>	'plate'
費 撒	<u>fi-sa</u>	* <u>fisa</u>	'back'

(14) There is no trace of a final -m, nor of any glottal stop.

### 3. Phonology

From a study of the transcription of each word, after comparing it to cognate words in the Vocabulary of the Bureau of Translators, Manchu and Sibe, it is generally possible to suggest a reconstruction of the original form of each word, with varying degrees of accuracy and probability. The reconstructions suggested in many cases seem to be fairly reliable, but those in other cases, especially where there do not seem to be any cognates in Manchu, or where the text is corrupt or incorrect, are possibly not. A general phonological system runs through the text, however, and from this it is possible to reconstruct the phonological system of the variety of Jurchen in this text. In this section, the

suggested reconstructed phonological system is compared to standard written Manchu.

It is convenient to discuss the phonemes of Jurchen according to the following groups:

#### Position of articulation:

- |     |        |     |   |       |
|-----|--------|-----|---|-------|
| (1) | velar  | k   | g | h (') |
| (2) | dental | t   | d |       |
| (3) | labial | (p) | b | f     |
- 
- |     |                |   |      |         |
|-----|----------------|---|------|---------|
| (4) | nasals         | m | n    | (ng)    |
| (5) | sibilants      | s | š    | (z) (ž) |
| (6) | affricates(ts) | č | (dz) | č̣      |
| (7) | liquids        | r | l    |         |

#### Manner of articulation:

#### Vowels, semivowels and diphthongs:

- |      |            |    |         |
|------|------------|----|---------|
| (8)  | semivowels | y  | w       |
| (9)  | vowels     | a  | e i o u |
| (10) | diphthong  | au | (oo)    |

The phonemes in brackets are uncommon, but must be provisionally set up to account for some of the transcriptions.

- (1) Velars /k/, /g/, /h/, (')

Initially and intervocalically, J. /k/ corresponds to M. /k/:

<u>kubu</u>	<u>kubun</u>	'cotton'
<u>duka</u>	<u>duka</u>	'door'
<u>buraki</u>	<u>buraki</u>	'dust'

In syllable-final position, when it occurs before t d s š č it is not shown in the transcription, and must be provided on the basis of comparison with Manchu:

<u>a[k]ta muri</u>	<u>akta morin</u>	'gelding'
<u>fu[k]to</u>	<u>fokto</u>	'shirt'
<u>su[k]dun</u>	<u>sukdun</u>	'breath'
<u>de[k]de-</u>	<u>dekde-</u>	'rise'
<u>o[k]do-</u>	<u>okdo-</u>	'meet'
<u>ši[k]se</u>	<u>sikse</u>	'yesterday'
<u>u[k]ši</u>	<u>uksin</u>	'armour'
<u>fa[k]ši</u>	<u>faksi</u>	'artisan'
<u>ma[k]ši-</u>	<u>maksi-</u>	'dance'
<u>fu[k]ču-</u>	<u>fekce-</u>	'jump'

In some words, J. /g/ corresponds to M. /k/; in others J. /k/ corresponds to M. /g/:

<u>sugu</u>	<u>sukū</u>	'skin'
<u>ergu</u>	<u>eriku</u>	'broom'
<u>halagu</u>	<u>halakū</u>	'trousers'
<u>tirgu</u>	<u>cirku</u>	'pillow'
<u>aligu</u>	<u>aliku</u>	'dish'
<u>serkun</u>	<u>serguwen</u>	'cool'
<u>boloko</u>	<u>bolgo</u>	'clean'

J. /g/ occurs initially and intervocalically, where it corresponds to M. /g/:

<u>gaša</u>	<u>gašan</u>	'village'
<u>geti-</u>	<u>gece-</u>	'freeze'
<u>gida</u>	<u>gida</u>	'spear'
<u>guši</u>	<u>gūsin</u>	'thirty'
<u>agu</u>	<u>aga</u>	'rain'
<u>tugi</u>	<u>tugi</u>	'cloud'

It does not appear in syllable final position, except perhaps as an allophone of /k/ before voiced consonants.

J. /h/ appears initially and intervocalically, and corresponds, generally, to M. /h/:

<u>haši</u>	<u>hasi</u>	'eggplant'
<u>juhe</u>	<u>juhe</u>	'ice'
<u>hudaša-</u>	<u>hudaša-</u>	'sell'

but: harhi                      hargi                      'mustard'

In some words, /h/ has to be provided on the basis of the Manchu form:

	<u>bit[h]e</u>	<u>bithe</u>	'writing'
but:	<u>betie(bet[h]ie?)</u>	<u>bethe</u>	'foot'

/g/ and /h/ occur in Manchu after /r/ and /l/ in many words, the Jurchen form of which seems to have dropped the /g/ or /h/ - at least in so far as the transcription is concerned: in such words the /g/ or /h/ can be supplied in square brackets; it is quite possible, however, in the spoken Jurchen of the time, that they were not pronounced.

<u>sara (sar[g]a?)</u>	<u>sargan</u>	'wife'
<u>yara (yar[h]a?)</u>	<u>yarga</u>	'leopard'
<u>fulian (ful[g]ian?)</u>	<u>fulgiyan</u>	'red'
	(cf. G. fuh-lah-kiang)	
<u>ila (il[h]a?)</u>	<u>ilha</u>	'flower'
	(cf. G. yih-leh-lah)	
<u>horo (hor[h]o?)</u>	<u>horho</u>	'pigpen'
<u>halan (hal[h]an?)</u>	<u>halhan</u>	'plough'
<u>hudara (hudar[g]a?)</u>	<u>kūdargan</u>	'crupper'
	(cf. G. huh-tih-lah)	

This contrasts with other words, in which both the /r/ and the /g/ or /h/ are clearly shown in the transcription:

<u>širga</u>	<u>sirga</u>	'roebuck'
<u>turha</u>	<u>turga</u>	'thin'
<u>derhi</u>	<u>derhi</u>	'mat'
<u>farhun</u>	<u>farhūn</u>	'dark'
<u>tirgu</u>	<u>cirku</u>	'pillow'
<u>merhe</u>	<u>merhe</u>	'bamboo comb'
<u>narhun</u>	<u>narhūn</u>	'fine'
<u>derhue</u>	<u>derhuwe</u>	'fly'

In the word u[ll]gia 'pig', the /l/ has to be inferred; this contrasts with a word like \*talkia 'lightning', in which the -lk- is denoted in the transcription by -rk-.

In quite a few words there is a vowel noted in the transcription between /r/ or /l/ and /k/, /g/ or /h/ in the Jurchen form which does not exist in the Manchu form:

<u>guluha</u>	<u>gūlha</u>	'boot'
---------------	--------------	--------

<u>silihi</u>	<u>silhi</u>	'liver'
<u>foroku</u>	<u>forko</u>	'spinning wheel'

This is presumably an accurate transcription, the Manchu forms being contracted. In this regard compare also:

<u>amuha</u>	<u>amha</u>	'father-in-law'
<u>namuki</u>	<u>namki</u>	'drawer'
<u>umuha</u>	<u>umgan</u>	'marrow'
<u>nomoho</u>	<u>nomhon</u>	'good, kind'

(cf. G. nen[nun]-muh-huo, Kiyose nonmuho, Jin non-mu-xo, Mongol nomuqan)

Note however:

<u>ergu</u>	<u>eriku</u>	'broom'
<u>banhu</u>	<u>banuhûn</u>	'lazy'

In several words the /g/ or /h/ of Manchu is shown in the transcription as an intervocalic hiatus:

<u>halu'u</u>	<u>halhûn</u>	'hot'
		(cf. Mongol <u>qalayun</u> )
<u>dilu'a</u>	<u>jilgan</u>	'voice'
<u>tulu'u</u>	<u>tulhun</u>	'dark'
<u>Solo'o</u>	<u>Solho</u>	'Korea'
<u>bu'u</u>	<u>buhu</u>	'deer'
		(cf. Mongol <u>buyu</u> )

Particularly interesting are the words:

<u>Šeu'un</u>	<u>šun</u> (< <u>*siun</u> < <u>*sigun</u> )	'sun'
---------------	--	-------

neu'u                      non  
(cf. G. nieh-hun-wen, Kiyose niyohun, Jin naxun  
'younger sister')

In a few words, the /g/ preserved in the Manchu form is missing from the Jurchen form:

<u>ŷu</u>	<u>jugun</u>	'road, way'
<u>do</u>	<u>dogo</u>	'blind man'

## 2. Dentals /t/ /d/

/t/ and /d/ occur initially and intervocalically. A very important contrast with Manchu is the occurrence of these initials before /i/. Jurchen /ti/ usually corresponds to M. ci and Jurchen /di/ to Manchu ji. The reverse is not

necessarily the case: Jurchen also possessed /č/ and /j/. Examples:

<u>talkia</u>	<u>talkiyan</u>	'lightning'
<u>tanggu</u>	<u>tanggû</u>	'hundred'
<u>tugi</u>	<u>tugi</u>	'cloud'
<u>tondo</u>	<u>tondo</u>	'loyal'
<u>tifa</u>	<u>cifa</u>	'mud'
<u>tirgu</u>	<u>cirku</u>	'pillow'
<u>tiko</u>	<u>coko</u>	'cock'
<u>tihe</u>	<u>cihe</u>	'louse'
<u>huti</u>	<u>hûcin</u>	'well'
<u>nietie-</u>	<u>niyece-</u>	'patch'
<u>huetie</u>	<u>kuwecihe</u>	'pigeon'
<u>da</u>	<u>da</u>	'root'
<u>de</u>	<u>den</u>	'high'
<u>deli</u>	<u>delun</u>	'mane'
<u>dehi</u>	<u>dehi</u>	'forty'
<u>dirami</u>	<u>jiramin</u>	'thick'
<u>diha</u>	<u>jaha</u>	'boat'
<u>dibehun</u>	<u>jibehun</u>	'blanket'
<u>fadira</u>	<u>fajiran</u>	'wall'
<u>dondi-</u>	<u>donji-</u>	'hear'

Sometimes J. /t/ corresponds to M. /d/:

<u>ute</u> (u[n]te)	<u>undehen</u>	'board'
<u>hatu</u>	<u>hadu-</u>	'sickle'

gi-:

There is one case of J. /di-/ corresponding to M.

<u>uŷu dida-</u>	<u>uju gida-</u>	'to let the head hang'
------------------	------------------	------------------------

and one case of J. /da-/ corresponding to M. ja-

<u>danču</u>	<u>jancuhun</u>	'sweet'
--------------	-----------------	---------

## 3. Labials /b/, /f/ (p)

/b/ occurs initially, intervocalically and between other consonants. Initially and intervocalically it generally corresponds to Manchu b:

<u>baha-</u>	<u>baha-</u>	'get'
<u>banhu</u>	<u>banuhûn</u>	'lazy'
<u>beri</u>	<u>beri</u>	'bow' (n)



<u>bila</u> (bil[h]a)	<u>bilha</u>	'throat'
<u>bosu</u>	<u>boso</u>	'cloth'
<u>dobi</u>	<u>dobi</u>	'fox'
<u>kubu</u>	<u>kubun</u>	'cotton'

Before other consonants, however, and sometimes intervocalically, the b in the Manchu form is represented by an "intervocalic hiatus" followed by /u/ or /o/, or a diphthong in -au in the Jurchen form:

<u>he'ude-</u>	<u>hebde-</u>	'discuss'
<u>e'uči</u>	<u>ebci</u>	'rib'
<u>heuli</u>	<u>hefeli</u>	'stomach' (cf. Mong. <u>kabeli</u> )
<u>sulau-</u>	<u>sulabu-</u>	'let free'
<u>fi'u</u>		(cf. G. <u>fei-pun</u> )
		'lamp'
<u>sau</u>	<u>sabu</u>	'shoes'
<u>he'ute</u>	<u>habta</u>	'saddle-flap'; cf. G. <u>hei-puh-t'eh</u>

Note too:

<u>eyu-</u>	<u>ebi-</u>	'to be full (after food)'
<u>tuyuhe</u>	<u>tubihe</u>	'vegetable'

It may be that the form \*agua for 'sky' (G. 'a-puh-hah[ka]; Kiyose \*abka; Jin \*abxa) can be explained \*abuha > \*auha > \*agua.

In two words, -bsu in the Manchu form is transcribed in Jurchen as [-tsu]:

<u>datsu</u> (dabsu?)	<u>dabsun</u>	'salt'
<u>hitsu</u> (hibsu?)	<u>hibsu</u>	'honey'

/f/ in Jurchen corresponds to f in Manchu:

<u>fa</u>	<u>fa</u>	'window'
<u>fahun</u>	<u>fehun</u>	'liver'
<u>fisa</u>	<u>fisa</u>	'back'
<u>fumo</u>	<u>femen</u>	'lips'
<u>funči</u>	<u>fulcin</u>	'cheek'

/p/ appears in a few words; if the transcription is accurate, these might represent a few survivors of the time before the change from p- (which is well documented for Jin Dynasty Jurchen) took place:

<u>umpu</u>	<u>umpu</u>	'hill-haw'
<u>upu</u>	<u>ufuhu</u>	'lungs'

<u>upu</u>	<u>ofoho</u>	'plough'
<u>apuha</u>	<u>abdaha</u>	'leaf'
<u>tipa/tiba</u>	<u>cifa</u>	'mud'
<u>sapa/saba</u>	<u>sabka</u>	'chopsticks'

upu 'lungs', upu 'plough' and apuha 'leaf' are all written in transcription with the character 浦, which seems to have only one reading, pu; it is also used in the word umpu 'hill-haw'. Both tipa/tiba 'mud' and sapa/saba 'chopsticks' are written with the characters 扒, which is given the readings ba or pa.

#### 4. Nasals /m/, /n/ (ng)

/m/ occurs initially, intervocalically and in syllable-final position before labials:

<u>ma</u>	<u>muwa</u>	'coarse'
<u>mafa</u>	<u>mafa</u>	'grandfather'
<u>meire</u>	<u>meiren</u>	'shoulder'
<u>meihe</u>	<u>meihe</u>	'snake'
<u>miho</u>	<u>mihan</u>	'small pig'
<u>muke</u>	<u>muke</u>	'water'

In some words in the Vocabulary of the Bureau of Translators, initial /m/ corresponds to n- in both Jurchen and Manchu:

<u>niehe</u>	<u>niyehe</u>	'duck'
(cf. G. <u>mieh-hei</u> ; Kiyose <u>miyehe</u> , Jin <u>mie-xə</u> );		
<u>niekuru-</u>	<u>niyakūra-</u>	'kneel'
(cf. G. <u>mieh-k'u-lu</u> ; Kiyose <u>miyaku</u> ; Jin <u>mie-xə-ly</u> )		

/m/ in syllable final position is represented in the transcription by -n or -ng:

<u>ang-ba</u>	<u>*amba</u>	<u>amba</u>	'big, great'
---------------	--------------	-------------	--------------

The word transcribed yang-di and glossed 'evening' corresponds to Manchu yamji, and can be reconstructed \*yamdi; this is a case of m preceding a dental and being transcribed by -ng.

In Manchu, the consonant clusters -mh- and -mk- occur. In Jurchen, such words are shown in the transcription as -muh- and -muk-:

<u>amuha</u>	<u>amha</u>	'father-in-law'
--------------	-------------	-----------------

<u>namuki</u>	<u>namki</u>	'drawer'
<u>nomuho</u>	<u>nomhon</u>	'good, kind'

Presumably the Jurchen forms are earlier, uncontracted ones.

/n/ occurs initially, intervocalically and in syllable-final position. It is the only consonant that appears at the end of a word. Compared to Manchu, however, the occurrence of -n in this position is not so frequent:

<u>na</u>	<u>na</u>	'earth'
<u>nei-</u>	<u>nei-</u>	'open'
<u>nimuha</u>	<u>nimaha</u>	'fish'
<u>honi</u>	<u>honin</u>	'sheep'
<u>indahu</u>	<u>indahûn</u>	'dog'
<u>inje-</u>	<u>inje-</u>	'laugh'
<u>narhun</u>	<u>narhûn</u>	'fine'
<u>su[k]dun</u>	<u>sukdun</u>	'breath'

In several words, /n/ appears internally in a word in Manchu, but is not indicated in the transcription for Jurchen:

<u>ute (u[n]te?)</u>	<u>undehen</u>	'board'
<u>uče (u[n]če?)</u>	<u>unce</u>	'tail'
<u>huta (hu[n]ta?)</u>	<u>huntahan</u>	'cup'
<u>otso (o[n]tso?)</u>	<u>onco</u>	'wide'
<u>nisu (ni[n]su?)</u>	<u>nincuhun</u>	'smelly'

In the word \*imanggi 'snow', the initial n- of the Manchu form nimanggi is missing (Cf. Kiyose \*imagi, Jin \*ima-ngi).

/ng/ does not appear as a phoneme in Jurchen, but as an allophone of /n/ before velars:

<u>an-ge-mu</u>	* <u>anggemu</u>	'saddle'
<u>hen-ke</u>	* <u>hengke</u>	'melon'

/ng/ is usually (but not consistently) indicated by the use Chinese transcription syllables in -ng. The reverse is not necessarily the case: Chinese syllables in -n or -ng are used to transcribe Jurchen -m, -n or -ng, the allophonic variety of /n/ (in syllable-final position) being determined by the position of articulation of the consonant following. The only exception to this seems to be the word yamdi- 'to become evening' and its derivatives.

There are several Chinese words used in Jurchen. Those which ended in -ng in Chinese were presumably pronounced that way in Jurchen, but -ng in word final

position seems to have occurred only in such non-Jurchen words.

## 5. Sibilants /s/, /ʃ/, (z), (ʒ).

/s/ occurs initially and intervocalically, and generally corresponds to Manchu /s/, except before -i.

<u>sa-</u>	<u>sa-</u>	'to know'
<u>sača</u>	<u>saca</u>	'helmet'
<u>serkun</u>	<u>serguwen</u>	'cool'
<u>sufa</u>	<u>sufan</u>	'elephant'
<u>sugi</u>	<u>sogi</u>	'vegetable'
<u>yasa</u>	<u>yasa</u>	'eye'

Not, however:

<u>hinda-</u>	<u>sinda-</u>	'put'
---------------	---------------	-------

Before -i, according to the transcription, M. /s/ was pronounced in Jurchen /ʃ/. This may be a peculiarity of the transcription, of course. K. Menges ("Die Sprache der ʃürčēn", p. 250,) notes "Die Lautgruppe -si- im ʃürčēn durchweg zu -ʃi- palatalisiert zu sein; das Manču hat keine Palatalisation."

<u>ʃiʃi</u>	<u>sisi</u>	'hazelnut'
<u>ʃiri</u>	<u>sirin</u>	'bronze'
<u>guʃi</u>	<u>gûsin</u>	'thirty'
<u>uʃiha</u>	<u>usiha</u>	'star'
<u>aʃ[h]a</u>	<u>asiha</u>	'small'

/ʃ/ also occurs before other vowels:

<u>ʃan</u>	<u>ʃan</u>	'ear'
<u>ʃahuru</u>	<u>ʃahurun</u>	'cold'
<u>ʃe</u>	<u>ʃeri</u>	'spring' (water)
<u>ʃomi</u>	<u>ʃumin</u>	'deep'

In some cases, Jurchen /s/ corresponds to Manchu /s/; in others Manchu /s/ corresponds to Jurchen /ʃ/:

<u>ʃunja</u>	<u>sunja</u>	'five'
<u>ʃenggi</u>	<u>senggi</u>	'blood'
<u>ʃan(g)ča</u>	<u>sanča</u>	'wood-fungus'
<u>ʃa</u>	<u>suwan</u>	'egret'
<u>suʃiha</u>	<u>ʃusiha</u>	'whip'

When /s/ follows a consonant, the transcription

deals with the situation in one of two ways:

(1) the consonant preceding the -s- is not indicated:

<u>u[k]ši</u>	<u>uksin</u>	'armour'
<u>ma[k]ši-</u>	<u>maksi-</u>	'dance'

(2) sometimes a transcription character with an affricate initial is used to represent -ks-, -bs-:

<u>datsu (dabsu?)</u>	<u>dabsun</u>	'salt'
<u>hitsu (hibsu?)</u>	<u>hibsu</u>	'honey'
<u>satseha (sakseha?)</u>	<u>saksaha</u>	'small bird'
<u>laša-</u>	<u>laksa-</u>	'break'

/z/ (pronounced [dz]) may have occurred in the pronunciation of certain Chinese loanwords, such as \*waze 'tile', \*lingze 'damask'. The status of /z/ is much more problematical: there seems to be no way to account for the transcription of certain words than to presume the value of /z/ for consonants corresponding to /j/ and /s/ in Manchu. This is even more the case when those same words are transcribed in the Bureau of Translators' vocabulary with /z/:

<u>hužu-</u>	<u>huju-</u>	'bow', cf. Grube <u>huh-zu-lah</u>
<u>čanžura-</u>	<u>canjura-</u>	'salute'
<u>mužile</u>	<u>mujilen</u>	'heart' cf. Grube <u>meh[mei]-žih-lan</u>
<u>fuži-</u>	<u>fusi-</u>	'shave'
<u>eže</u>	<u>ejen</u>	'head of the household', cf. Grube <u>oh-žan</u>
<u>aže</u>	<u>aša</u>	'sister in law'

#### 6. Affricates /č/, /j/ (ts), (dz)

Generally speaking, the Jurchen affricates /č/ and /j/ correspond to Manchu č and j, but not necessarily vice versa:

<u>uči</u>	<u>uce</u>	'door'
<u>iče</u>	<u>ice</u>	'new'
<u>čačari</u>	<u>cacari</u>	'tent'
<u>jiha</u>	<u>jiha</u>	'unit of money'
<u>jalu</u>	<u>jalu</u>	'full'
<u>uju</u>	<u>uju</u>	'head'
<u>bujan</u>	<u>bujan</u>	'forest'
<u>jakun</u>	<u>jakun</u>	'eight'

Note however:

<u>ešehe</u>	<u>ecike</u>	'uncle'
<u>nuši</u>	<u>necin</u>	'harmony'

It is hard to determine whether the affricates /ts/ and /dz/ which appear in the transcriptions reflect the pronunciation of Jurchen, or the inadequacies of the transcription. /ts/ appears in a few words, e.g. otso M. onco 'wide', and in words which have, in Manchu, consonant combinations such as -bs- and -ks-, which have been discussed above. /dz/ occurs only in the word hadza, Manchu hasaha 'scissors', cf. Grube hah-tsi-hah, Kiyose haiha, Jin xa-si-xa.

#### 7. Liquids /l/ /r/.

/l/ occurs initially, intervocalically and in syllable-final position:

<u>lefu</u>	<u>lefu</u>	'bear'
<u>loho</u>	<u>loho</u>	'dagger'
<u>ali</u>	<u>alin</u>	'mountain'

In syllable-final position, sometimes it is represented by -r- in the transcription:

<u>herme (helme?)</u>	<u>helmen</u>	'shadow'
<u>garma (galma?)</u>	<u>galman</u>	'mosquito'
<u>tarmagi (talmagi?)</u>	<u>talman</u>	'frost'
<u>tarkia (talkia?)</u>	<u>talkiyan</u>	'lightning'

Sometimes -l- has to be supplied on the basis of the Manchu equivalent:

<u>go[l]mi</u>	<u>golmin</u>	'long'
<u>u[l]gia</u>	<u>ulgiyan</u>	'pig'
<u>gu[l]mahun</u>	<u>gūlmahūn</u>	'hare'

Sometimes it is represented by a transcription syllable ending in -n. In such cases it is difficult to decide between /l/ and /n/ as representing the original form:

<u>funči/fulči</u>	<u>fulcin</u>	'cheek'
<u>hondo/holdo</u>	<u>holdon</u>	'pine tree'

/r/ occurs intervocalically and in syllable-final position before velars. It does not occur initially:

<u>muri</u>	<u>morin</u>	'horse'
-------------	--------------	---------

<u>ori</u>	<u>orin</u>	'twenty'
<u>beri</u>	<u>beri</u>	'bow'
<u>širga</u>	<u>sirga</u>	'roebuck'
<u>tirgu</u>	<u>cirku</u>	'pillow'
<u>narhun</u>	<u>narhūn</u>	'fine'

Other combinations of /r/ with /g/ and /h/ have been dealt with above, in connection with velars.

Final -ri of some Manchu words is missing in the Jurchen form:

<u>še</u>	<u>šeri</u>	'spring' (water)
<u>jule</u>	<u>juleri</u>	'in front of'
<u>mede</u>	<u>mederi</u>	'sea'

#### 8. Semivowels /y/, /w/

Both /y/ and /w/ occur initially and intervocalically:

<u>yafa</u>	<u>yafan</u>	'garden'
<u>yadahun</u>	<u>yadahun</u>	'poor'
<u>yasa</u>	<u>yasa</u>	'eye'
<u>yaha</u>	<u>yaha</u>	'poor'
<u>wahun</u>	<u>wahun</u>	'smelly'
<u>weiju</u>	<u>weijun</u>	'stork'
<u>weihe</u>	<u>weihe</u>	'horn'
<u>baya</u>	<u>bayan</u>	'rich'
<u>beye</u>	<u>beye</u>	'body'

In the transcription, characters ending in -ai, -ei diphthongs are generally used before /y/ in the next syllable: bai-ya, bei-ye, sai-yin and so on.

The Manchu diphthongs -iya-, -iye-, -uwa-, -uwe- are often contracted in the Jurchen forms:

<u>yači-</u>	<u>yacihiya-</u>	'sneeze'
<u>imiha</u>	<u>imiyaha</u>	'insect'
<u>fuli-</u>	<u>feliye-</u>	'walk, go'
<u>fuča-</u>	<u>fucihiya-</u>	'cough'
<u>ta-</u>	<u>tuwa-</u>	'look at'
<u>ma</u>	<u>muwa</u>	'course'
<u>suyan</u>	<u>suwayan</u>	'yellow'
<u>hušigu</u>	<u>huwešeku</u>	'flat iron'
<u>funhe</u>	<u>funiyehe</u>	'hair'

#### 9. Vowels /a/ /e/ /i/ /o/ /u/ (au)

The vowels in Jurchen words, generally speaking, correspond to the same vowels in Manchu; there are, however, many exceptions for every vowel. Jurchen /u/ often corresponds to Manchu /o/, but there is no definite rule. Long vowels are not indicated in the transcription, except for M. /oo/, which is occasionally denoted in the transcription by means of a Chinese syllable ending in -ao; I have transcribed this as au, and it may well represent an intermediary stage between \*agu > \*a'u > \*au > oo. The transcription is inconsistent, however: hao-sa \*hauša 'paper' (Manchu hoošan) but bo \*bo 'house' (M. boo), mo \*mo, (M. moo) 'tree'. There is no distinction made between Manchu /u/ and /û/.

J. a = M. a	<u>ara</u> <u>fa</u>	<u>ara</u> <u>fa</u>	'chaff' 'window'
J. a # M. a	<u>agu</u> <u>anggemu</u> <u>falangga</u>	<u>aga</u> <u>enggemu</u> <u>falanggū</u>	'rain' 'saddle' 'palm' (of the hand)
	<u>fahun</u>	<u>fehun</u>	'liver'
J. e = M. e	<u>edu</u> <u>elu</u>	<u>edun</u> <u>elu</u>	'wind' 'leek'
J. e # M. e	<u>ehe</u> <u>jure</u> <u>hendu</u> <u>elenggu</u> <u>mete-</u>	<u>eihen</u> <u>juru</u> <u>hundu</u> <u>ulenggu</u> <u>mute-</u>	'ass' 'pair' 'hunchback' 'navel' 'complete'
J. i = M. i	<u>iče</u> <u>indahu</u> <u>ilan</u>	<u>ice</u> <u>indahūn</u> <u>ilan</u>	'new' 'dog' 'three'
J. i # M. i	<u>ilenggi</u> <u>geti-</u> <u>deli</u> <u>guifi</u>	<u>ilenggu</u> <u>gece-</u> <u>delun</u> <u>guifun</u>	'tongue' 'freeze' 'mane' 'finger-ring'
J. o = M. o	<u>ori</u> <u>orho</u>	<u>orin</u> <u>orho</u>	'twenty' 'grass'
J. o # M. o	<u>fo</u> <u>moda</u>  <u>fumo</u>	<u>fe</u> <u>mudan</u>  <u>femen</u>	'old' 'bend' (of a river) 'lip(s)'

J. u = M. u	<u>ure-</u>	<u>ure-</u>	'ripe'
	<u>uši</u>	<u>usin</u>	'field'
	<u>ušiha</u>	<u>usiha</u>	'star'
J. u = M. û	<u>ahun</u>	<u>ahûn</u>	'elder'
			'brother'
	<u>indahu</u>	<u>indahûn</u>	'dog'
J. U # M. u	<u>agu</u>	<u>aga</u>	'rain'
	<u>fu[k]ši-</u>	<u>feksi-</u>	'run'
	<u>nimuha</u>	<u>nimaha</u>	'fish'
	<u>uša-</u>	<u>waša-</u>	'scratch'
	<u>muri-</u>	<u>mari-</u>	'return'
	<u>sungu-</u>	<u>songgo-</u>	'weep'
	<u>diu</u>	<u>jio</u>	'come!'
	<u>fumo</u>	<u>femen</u>	'lip(s)'
	<u>umi-</u>	<u>omi-</u>	'drink'
	<u>muri</u>	<u>morin</u>	'horse'

## 4. Grammar

Since this vocabulary is composed of individuals and short phrases, with no connected text, it does not contain suitable material for a full study of the grammar of Jurchen. However, parallels to most of the simple grammatical features of Manchu can be found.

## Verbal endings:

- (1) -bi (-mbi)
- (2) -ra/-re
- (3) -ha/-he/-ho
- (4) -me
- (5) -či

The form in -bi (-mbi from the assimilation of a base form in -n + -bi) corresponds to the "dictionary form" of the verb. On this form Denis Sinor writes: "les dictionnaires et grammaires mandjoues indigènes enregistrent les verbes sous une forme en -mbi, qu'aucuns considèrent comme

l'équivalent d'un infinitif et d'autres comme un signe du présent. Or, en fait, cette forme ne situe pas dans le temps le procès exprimé par le verbe... On peut dire que la forme en -mbi énonce un procès, en général, sans y apporter aucune précision".

The form in -ra/-re (depending on original vowel harmony) is usually regarded as the "imperfective aspect" (or the "imperfective participle") of the verb, and the form in -ha/-he/-ho as the "perfective aspect" (or the "perfective participle"). On these forms Sinor writes: "l'aspect inaccompli du verbe mandjou est formé moyennant le suffixe -ra (-re, -ro). Dans les grammaires européennes cette forme est, en général, désignée comme celle du futur. En réalité, là encore, nous sommes en présence d'une adjective qui, à l'instar de la forme en -ha, détermine un concept en lui attribuant une action. Seulement cette action déterminante est encore en cours au moment de son énoncé: taire ihan 'un boeuf labourant'... yabure niyalma 'un homme "allant", un voyageur'.

The form in -me is a gerund, used after the first verb when two actions are performed simultaneously, and the form in -či is used to denote the conditional. Some examples:

<u>-bi</u>	<u>ma[k]ši-bi</u>	'to dance'
	<u>efi-bi</u>	'to play'
	<u>inje-bi</u>	'to laugh'
	<u>gele-bi</u>	'to fear'
	<u>fuča-bi</u>	'to cough'
<u>-mbi</u>	<u>beyi-mbi</u>	'to love'
	<u>fu[k]ču-mbi</u>	'to jump'
	<u>nime-mbi</u>	'to ache'
	<u>ara-mbi</u>	'to do, to make'
	<u>tari-mbi</u>	'to cultivate'
<u>-ra/-re</u>	<u>uši tari-re iha</u>	'a ploughing ox'
	<u>de-re buraki</u>	'flying dust'
	<u>u[k]ši bu-re fa[k]ši</u>	'armourer'
	<u>adu au-re fa[k]ši</u>	'launderer'
<u>-ha/-he/-ho</u>	<u>muke goti-ha</u>	'the water has receded'
	<u>bie jalu-ha</u>	'the moon has become full'

<u>tugi nei-he</u>	'the clouds have dispersed'
<u>sokto-ho</u>	'become drunk (intoxicated)'
<u>golo-ho</u>	'frightened'
<u>še'un tuhe-he</u>	'the sun has set'
<u>edu de[k]de-he</u>	'the wind has risen'
<u>ši[k]se dobori agu-ha</u>	'last night it rained'

There are also some irregular forms in -ka/-ke, e.g.:

<u>bie ʔe-ke</u>	'the moon has been eclipsed'
<u>-me</u>	<u>muke amba, seʔe fuli-me baharakua</u> 'the water is high, the carts cannot get through' (lit. going, are not able to get through) <u>e[r]gi amuši sai muri tede-me diu</u> 'from now on you must bring in good horses as tribute' (lit. bringing in (as tribute) come (imp.))
<u>-či</u>	<u>agu akua-či, ordo došinu</u> 'if there is no rain, go to the court' <u>hufurun de, dule-či manga</u> 'the bridge is high, if you want to cross it, it will be difficult'

There is also a form in -resebi, which is probably the imperfective participle followed by -sebi, corresponding to Manchu -sembi. It seems to mean 'it is about to', e.g.

agua imangi-resembi 'it's going to snow'; tugi uʔe agu-resebi 'the clouds are dense, it's going to rain'. An optative form in -ki, meaning 'I would like', appears in the expression nure gaiki 'ask for wine', i.e. 'I would like to ask for wine'.

The imperative is generally expressed by the base form of the verb:

<u>yasa nei</u>	'open the eyes!'
<u>dere au</u>	'wash the face!'
<u>yasa niču</u>	'close the eyes!'

Several verbs, however, have imperatives in -su:

<u>gaisu</u>	'want!'
<u>alisu</u>	'wait!'
<u>fulisu</u>	'walk!'

Some have imperative forms in -nu:

<u>ušinu</u>	'go up!'
<u>wašinu</u>	'go down!'
<u>došinu</u>	'go in!'

Note also:

<u>ʔefu</u>	'eat!' (M. <u>ʔefu</u> )
<u>diu</u>	'come!' (M. <u>jio</u> )

The negative imperative is formed with the word ume followed by the verb in the imperfective aspect:

<u>ume nie[l]ma uli duri-re</u>	'do not steal other people's property!'
<u>ume fuča-ra</u>	'do not cough!'
<u>ume uš[h]un to-ra</u>	'to not look upwards'
<u>muri ume ehe ʔafa-ra</u>	'when you return you must not do anything bad!'

Negation of a declarative sentence is expressed by using the word akua (M. akû) following the word it negates:

<u>agu akua</u>	'there is no rain'
-----------------	--------------------

After verbs, it follows the imperfect participle, and is contracted to -kua:

<u>gairakua</u>	'doesn't want'
<u>direkua</u>	'doesn't come'
<u>sarakua</u>	'doesn't know'

There are very few examples of nominal declensional suffixes in this vocabulary. There are some in -i, the genitive form corresponding to Manchu -i:

<u>ba-i uli</u>	'local products'
<u>bo-i nie[l]ma</u>	'member of a family'

There are also some in -de, locative forms corresponding to Manchu -de:

<u>ju-de fuli-mbi</u>	'to walk along the road'
<u>heče wa[r]ge-de</u>	'under the city walls'

It is interesting to note that there are no accusative forms, corresponding to Manchu -be. There are innumerable occasions when this suffix would be used in Manchu, but in this vocabulary they are simply omitted.

There are occasional examples of subordinate clauses introduced with the particle de ('as, when'):

<u>agua fudasu-he de bude</u>	'he who opposes Heaven perishes'
<u>agua da-ha de go[l]mi</u>	'he who obeys Heaven prospers'
<u>bie de[k]de-he de došinu</u>	'when the moon rises, go to court'

\*\*\*

# 5. TABLE OF CHARACTERS USED IN THE TRANSCRIPTION

a 阿	bie 别
ai 艾	bing 並 3
an 安案	bo 博
an(g) 昂	bu 布不(浦) 4
ao 敖 1	ča 察插
ba 八(扒) 2	čao 朝 5
bai 拜	če 徹
ban 伴	či 赤尺(遲) 6
be 迫伯	čie 切
bei 背	čo 戮
bi 必	ču 出
	čun 春

1. Used to transcribe au, e.g. au- 'to wash'. The Jurchen form corresponds to the long Manchu vowel oo.

2. The character 扒 has two readings in Modern Mandarin, ba and pa. In the vocabulary it is used in the following words:

撒扒 <u>sa-ba</u>	* <u>sab[k]a?</u> 'chopsticks'
	(cf. Manchu <u>sabka</u> , Mongol <u>sabqa</u> ; Grube <u>sah-pen-hah</u> , Kiyose <u>sabunha</u> , Jin <u>sa-bun-xa</u> )
提扒 <u>ti-ba/ti-pa</u>	* <u>tiba/tipa</u> 'mud'
	(cf. Manchu <u>cifa</u> )

3. Used only to transcribe the Chinese expression bingbu yamen 'Board of War'.

4. The character 浦 is used in the following words: 阿浦哈 a-bu-ha/a-pu-ha \*abuha; 'leaf', Manchu abdaha, Grube a-puh-hah; Kiyose abuha, Jin abuxa.

兀浦 u-bu/u-pu \*upu? 'lungs' Manchu ufuhu

5. Used to transcribe čau, as in Jurchen čauha 'army'.

6. The character 遲 is only used in the word \*yači? 'be careful', for which there appears to be no Manchu cognate.

da 答	fan 凡
dai 大 7	fan(g) 放
dan(g) 當	fi 非費
de 得	fo 佛
den(g) 登 鄧	fu 伏富(浦)(Cf. 4)
deu 豆	fun 分 10
di 的	fun(g) 風
dien 甸 8	ga 哈 11
diu 去	gai 蓋
do 多朵奪	ge 革
don 端	gi 吉
du 都度	gia 加甲
dui 對	gian(g) 姜
dun 敦	gin 金
dun(g) 東董	gin(g) 經 12
dza 雜 9	giu 舊
e 額	go 過戈
en 恩	gu 古顧
eu 歐	gua 掛瓜
fa 發	

7. This character is used only in transcribing the Chinese word 大夫 which has two pronunciations, dafu and daifu 'high official'/'doctor'. It occurs also in the word da-na-ra/dai-na-ra \*da(i)nara- 'to argue'; for which no

cognate appears to be in Manchu.

8. Used to transcribe dien, e.g. a[k]dien 'lightning'.

9. Used only to transcribe 哈雜 ha-dza, \*hadza 'scissors', cf. Manchu hasaha and Grube hah-tsi-hah.

10. NB fun, not fen.

11. One must rely on Manchu to distinguish ga, ha and ka.

12. Used only to transcribe the Chinese word 更 'period of time'.

gue 國 13	hue 或
gui 鬼貴	hui 回
gun 混棍	hun(g) 洪
ha 哈	i 亦一
hai 亥	in 因
han 汗	ja 答
hao 好 15	jan 占
he 黑	jan(g) 章
hen 恨	je 者
hen(g) 橫	jen 鎮
hi 希戲	ji 只計
hia 暇夏	jo 卓着灼
hian(g) 享 16	ju 住主珠
hin 欣	jue 拙
hin(g) 興	jui 追
ho 賀活	jun(g) 中 17
hon 歡換	ka 哈 18
hu 忽	ke 克

13. This character only appears in the word \*kungueri muri (or: \*kungg(u)ori muri) 'buff-coloured horse'; cf. Manchu konggoro morin. On the basis of 或 = hue, and 國 appearing in the same rhyme in the Dengyun tujing and elsewhere, one would expect the reading gue for 國.

On comparison with the Manchu form, however, perhaps go is preferable.

14. Cf. the comments for note 11 above.

15. Used to transcribe hau, e.g. \*hauša 'paper' (M. \*hoošan).

16. Only used to transcribe the Chinese word 香 xiang 'incense'.

17. Only used to transcribe the Chinese word 鐘 jung 'bell'.

18. Cf. comments in notes 11 and 14 above.



ki 其	mei 妹
kia 恰	men (?) 們 20
ko 課	men(g) 猛(?) 21
ku 苦	mi 迷
kun(g) 空(孔) 19	min(g) 命
-l- 兒	mo 莫
la 刺	ne 捏 22
lan 藍	nei 內
lan(g) 郎	neu 禱
le 勒	ni 泥(你) 22
lei 雷	nia (?) 捏 22
len(g) 冷	nian 念
li 力里立利	nie 捏
lian(g) 良	nio 虐
lin 林	niu 女
lun 倫	niu 牛 23
ma 麻	no 那 24
man(g) 忙	nu 奴
me 墨	

19. Used only in the word discussed in note 13 above.

20. Possibly mun? It only occurs in the word \*šišimen da, 'a type of plant', for which I have not been able to find a plausible cognate in Manchu.

21. Possibly mun(g)? Perhaps men(g) is preferable; it is used in the word \*menggu 'silver', cf. M. menggun. Note however that Sibe has two forms, menuN and muṅuN.

22. This character is also used to transcribe nia, nie and ni. It occurs in the word nie-če \*n(i)eče 'level', cf. M. nečen. Whether this character is to be interpreted as nia, nie, ni or ne must to a large degree depend on the Manchu form. I have tended to use nie when in doubt, as this most accurately reflects the transcription.

23. Used only in the word niu-nie-ha \*niunieha 'goose', cf. Manchu niongniyaha.

24. NB: not na.

o 幹 餓 窩	ši 矢
-r- 兒	šin 深 26
-s- 思	šo 說
sa 撒	šu 述 書
sai 賽	šun 順
san 散	ta 塔(他) 27
san(g) 桑	tai 太
sao 掃	tan(g) 湯
se 塞	te 忒
sen(g) 僧	ti 替提骨體
so 銷梭索	tiao 跳 28
su 速素	tie 帖
suan 算	to 它托(他) 29
sun(g) 宋	ton 團
ša 廈沙	tsai 才 30
šan(g) 尚	tse 測
še 舍蛇	tso 撮

25. Used only in the word suan-ko \*suanko(?) 'key'. There does not seem to be a cognate in Manchu for this word.

26. NB. not šen.

27. This character has the "reading pronunciation" to. It is only used in the word for fire, \*ta, cf. Manchu tuwa. However, the word 'to look at' is written with 托, which could only be interpreted as \*to, cf. however Manchu tuwa-. The word for 'rough' is written with 麻, so \*ma, M. muwa.

28. Used in the word transcribed tiao-lu-neng-gi, so \*tiaoru-nengi 'the day after tomorrow'. Manchu, however, has a short vowel: coro.

29. Cf the comments in note 27 above.

30. Used only to transcribe the Chinese word for tailor, \*tsaifung.

tsu 粗	ya 牙 (選) 33
tu 壳	yan(g) 羊樣
tui 退 31	ye 夜葉
tun(g) 同通痛	yo 約
u 兀	yu 玉
un 溫文 32	yun(g) 容
un(g) 翁 33	ze 子紫 34
wa 襪瓦	ze 熱
wan(g) 汪	zi 日
wei 未	zu 入如

31. Perhaps tei? Used in the word tui-fu \*tuifu 'crutch, walking stick', cf. M. teifun.

32. NB. not wen, weng.

33. Used only in the word \*yači 'careful'. Cf. note 6 above.

34. Used to transcribe Chinese 子 -zi.

\*\*\*\*\*

# CONCLUSION

The Dengyun tujing is dated 1606. The transcription used in this vocabulary seems to be considerably earlier than this. The nature of the Chinese transcription lends weight to the supposition that this vocabulary dates from the first half of the sixteenth century.

The general phonological structure of the variety of Chinese used for transcribing this text is fairly clear. Its inadequacy for transcribing accurately gives rise to a number of uncertainties in regard to the correct reconstruction of many words, for example:

(1). The character 捏 is used to transcribe words, of which the Manchu cognates have niya-, niye-, ni- or ne:

<u>nie-ma</u>	* <u>nie[ɫ]ma</u>	cf. M. <u>niyalma</u> 'man'
<u>nie-he</u>	* <u>niehe</u>	cf. M. <u>niyehe</u> 'duck'
<u>nie-lu</u>	* <u>nieru</u>	cf. M. <u>niru</u> 'arrow'
<u>nie-če</u>	* <u>nieče</u>	cf. M. <u>necin</u> 'level'

(2) There are syllables available in -an, -ien, -ang or -iang, but none in -ian. To transcribe Jurchen syllables in -ian (M. -iyan) it was necessary to use Chinese syllables ending in -ien or -iang:

<u>a-dien</u>	* <u>a[k]dien</u>	cf. M. <u>akjan</u> 'lighting'
<u>sa-ha-liang</u>	* <u>sahalian</u>	cf. M. <u>sahaliyan</u> 'black'

(3) Jurchen words ending in a vowel or -n. To transcribe syllables in -n, Chinese syllables in -n or -ng were used more or less indiscriminately. Internally, the -n or -ng was assimilated to the initial consonant of the next syllable, becoming -n- before dentals and finally, -m- before labials and -ng- before velars:

<u>i-lan(g)</u>	* <u>ilan</u>	'three'
<u>den(g)-de</u>	* <u>dende-</u>	'to divide'
<u>an(g)-ba</u>	* <u>amba</u>	'big, great'
<u>an(g)-ha</u>	* <u>angga</u>	'mouth'

Note in the case of \*dende- there was no syllable den in Chinese which could have been used.

(4) The character 哈 ha was used to transcribe Jurchen ha, ga or ka:

<u>sa-ha-lian(g)</u>	* <u>sahalian</u> 'black'
<u>du-ha</u>	* <u>duka</u> 'door'
<u>ha-la</u>	* <u>gala-</u> 'to become clear'

(5) Chinese syllables such as la, le, lo were used to transcribe Jurchen syllables la or ra, le or re, lo or ro etc:

<u>ge-le-bi</u>	* <u>gele-</u> 'to fear'
<u>mu-li</u>	* <u>muri</u> 'horse'
<u>di-li</u>	* <u>dili</u> 'anger' (M. <u>jili</u> )
<u>de-le</u>	* <u>dere</u> 'face'

Liquids at the end of a syllable were either noted by transcribing -r- or -l-, or were simply omitted:

<u>o-r-ho</u>	* <u>orho</u> 'grass'
<u>ta-r-kia</u>	* <u>talkia</u> 'lightning'
<u>u-gia</u>	* <u>u[l]gia</u> 'pig' (M. <u>ulgiyan</u> )

Sometimes syllables in -n seem to have been used for the purpose of transcribing Jurchen -l at the end of a syllable:

<u>hon-do-mo</u>	* <u>hondo/holdo mo</u> 'pine tree' (cf. Manchu <u>holdon</u> )
<u>fun-či</u>	* <u>funči/fulči</u> 'cheek' (cf. Manchu <u>fulci</u> )
<u>an-ču</u>	* <u>anču/alču</u> 'gold'

(6) -s- at the end of a syllable was noted by the character .

<u>ta-s-ha</u>	* <u>tasha</u> 'tiger' (M. <u>tasha</u> )
----------------	---

note however:

<u>su-s-ha</u>	* <u>susha</u> 'leg', cf. M. <u>suksaha</u> 'thigh'
----------------	--

(7) Long vowels were not noted. Words which have a long oo in Manchu are transcribed by using Chinese syllables in -ao; I have transcribed these as diphthongs rather than long vowels:

<u>hao-ša</u>	* <u>hauša</u> 'paper' (M. <u>hoošan</u> )
---------------	--

Manchu words in oo were not always transcribed in such a way, however:

<u>bo</u>	* <u>bo</u> 'house' (M. <u>boo</u> )
-----------	--------------------------------------

<u>mo</u>	* <u>mo</u> 'tree' (M. <u>moo</u> )
-----------	-------------------------------------

Other ambiguities and various possible interpretations of a particular transcription are more conveniently discussed in the section on the phonology of Jurchen, or as part of the main text.

\*\*\*\*\*

## CHAPTER NINE

THE SINO-JURCHEN VOCABULARY  
OF THE  
BUREAU OF INTERPRETERS

## Explanation of symbols

- [A] the text according to the  
Awanokuni manuscript
- [C] transcription of the Chinese  
entry and translation into  
English
- [T] transcription of the Jurchen  
entry according to the Chinese  
characters
- [\*] reconstruction of the Jurchen  
word or expression
- [G] the cognate word in the Bureau  
of Translators' vocabulary,  
according to W. Grube, Die Sprache  
und Schrift der Jučen (and the  
number given in Grube's book)
- [K] the cognate word in the Bureau  
of Translators' vocabulary,  
according to G.N. Kiyose, A Study  
of the Jurchen Language and Script  
(the numbers in Kiyose are the same  
as those of Grube)
- [M] the cognate word in standard  
written Manchu, according to E.  
Hauer, Handwörterbuch der  
Mandschusprache. J. Norman, A  
Concise Manchu-English Lexicon  
has also been consulted

- [S] the cognate word in modern spoken  
Manchu (Sibe) according to Yamamoto  
Kengo, A Classified Dictionary of  
Spoken Manchu. Where two forms are  
recorded, they are dialectal  
varieties; cf. the Introduction  
of Yamamoto's book for details.  
In the present work, ᡤ has been  
used for the inverted ᡤ (ᡤ) of  
the original book.

- [N] notes on the entry, including  
references to other entries in  
which basic information on the  
words constituting that entry  
may be found

\*\*\*\*\*

## SECTION ONE - THE SKY

- 1 [A] 天·阿瓜  
 [C] tian 'sky, heaven'  
 [T] a-gua \*agua  
 [G] 'a-puh-hah[ka]-i (1)  
 [K] abkai  
 [M] abka  
 [S] 'afəqaa  
 [N] -i in Grube and Kiyose  
 is a genitive suffix
- 2 [A] 雲·秃吉  
 [C] yun 'cloud'  
 [T] tu-gi \*tugi  
 [G] t'uh-kih (6)  
 [K] tugi  
 [M] tugi  
 [S] tiuxi
- 3 [A] 雨·阿古  
 [C] yu 'rain'  
 [T] a-gu \*agu  
 [G] 'a-hah[ka] (8)  
 [K] aga  
 [M] aga  
 [S] 'ahaa

- 4 [A] 雷·阿甸  
 [C] lei 'thunder'  
 [T] a-dien \*a[k]dien  
 [G] 'a-tien (7)  
 [K] akdiyan  
 [M] akjan  
 [S] 'ahəjaN, 'a'ujaN,  
 'ahəjuN  
 [N] The transcription \*a[k]dien could equally be \*a[k]dian, as there was presumably no phonemic distinction between -ian and -ien. The Manchu form akjan obviously derives from an earlier form \*a[k]dian.
- 5 [A] 日·受温  
 [C] ri 'sun'  
 [T] šeu-un \*še'un  
 [G] šeu-wen (20)  
 [K] šun  
 [M] šun  
 [S] šun, suN  
 [N] in Grube, ri is transcribed yih-neng-gi, i.e. \*inenggi, which means 'day'. [G] 20 is yin, a mistake for yang.
- 6 [A] 月·别阿  
 [C] yue 'moon'  
 [T] bie-a \*bie'a  
 [G] pih-'a (4)  
 [K] biya  
 [M] biya  
 [S] biaa  
 [N] the word for 'moon' is generally given in this text as \*bie; this word could also be transcribed \*bia, but this is departing from the transcription

- 7 [A] 星·兀矢哈  
 [C] xing 'star'  
 [T] u-ši-ha \*ušiha  
 [G] woh-ši-hah (12)  
 [K] ošiha  
 [M] usiha  
 [S] 'ušihaa
- 8 [A] 霜·塞忙吉  
 [C] shuang 'frost'  
 [T] se-mang-gi \*semanggi  
 [G] seh-ma-kih (9)  
 [K] saimagi  
 [M] no cognate. cf.  
 silenggi 'dew'
- 9 [A] 風·額都  
 [C] feng 'wind'  
 [T] e-du \*edu  
 [G] 'oh-tu-wen (5)  
 [K] edun  
 [M] edun  
 [S] 'uduN  
 [N] the text has 雪 ,  
 not 風 . Cf. 26.
- 10 [A] 雹·博虐(吉)  
 [C] bao 'hail'  
 [T] bo-nio \*bonio  
 [G] puh-nen[nun] (16)  
 [K] bonon  
 [M] bono  
 [S] boni  
 [N] The Awanokuni text has  
 bo-nio-gi (吉); but in  
 entry (99) bao is translated  
 as bonio; in the Seikadō  
 manuscript (as edited by  
 Ishida) this entry is given  
 as bo-nio.

- 11 [A] 露·矢雷  
 [C] lu 'dew'  
 [T] ši-lei \*šilei  
 [G] ši-leh-wen (10)  
 [K] šileun  
 [M] no cognate. cf.  
silenggi 'dew'  
 [N] G. 10 has ši-leh-hoh  
 [hah], but hoh is a  
 mistake for wen
- 12 [A] 氣·速董  
 [C] qi 'breath'  
 [T] su-dung \*su[k]dun  
 [M] sukduN  
 [S] suvəduN, suvuduN
- 13 [A] 陰·秃魯兀  
 [C] yin 'dark'  
 [T] tu-lu-u \*tulu'u  
 [G] t'uh-lu-wen (27)  
 [K] tulhun  
 [M] tulhun
- 14 [A] 合天理·阿瓜亦朵羅答哈  
 [C] he tianli 'in accordance  
 with the principles of  
 heaven'  
 [T] a-gua-i-do-lo-da-ha \*agua-i doro  
 [M] doro 'way' daha  
 [N] 1-gen-14-48  
 cf. 110

- 15 [A] 晴·哈刺哈  
 [C] qing 'clear'  
 [T] ha-la-ha \*gala-ha  
 [G] hah-leh-hah (28)  
 [K] [abka] garha  
 [M] gala-  
 [S] Galēmē  
 [N] the -ha suffix is the perfective participle form.
- 16 [A] 霧·塔兒麻吉  
 [C] wu 'fog'  
 [T] ta-r-ma-gi \*talmagi  
 [G] t'ah-ma-kih (18)  
 [K] tamagi  
 [M] talman  
 [S] talēmēN
- 17 [A] 煙·尚加  
 [C] yan 'mist, smoke'  
 [T] šang-gia \*šanggia  
 [G] šang-kiang (13)  
 [K] šangiyan  
 [M] šanggiyan 'smoke, white'  
 [S] šiaŋēN 'smoke'
- 18 [A] 虹·拙勒莫  
 [C] hong 'rainbow'  
 [T] ĵue-le-mo \*ĵuelemo  
 [M] no cognate
- 19 [A] 昏·發兒洪  
 [C] hun 'dark, dusk'  
 [T] fa-r-hung \*farhun  
 [G] fah-li-kien (609)  
 [K] farigiyen  
 [M] farhūn  
 [S] farēhuN

- 20 [A] 影·黑兒墨  
 [C] ying 'shadow'  
 [T] he-r-me \*helme  
 [M] helmen  
 [S] xelēmēN
- 21 [A] 天上·阿瓜得勒  
 [C] tian shang 'in the sky'  
 [T] a-gua-de-le \*agua dele  
 [N] 1-158
- 22 [A] 電·塔兒恰  
 [C] dian 'lightning'  
 [T] ta-r-kia \*talkia  
 [G] t'ah-li-kiang (2)  
 [K] talgiyan  
 [M] talkiyan  
 [S] talixiaN
- 23 [A] 天下·阿瓜伏職勒  
 [C] tian xia 'under heaven'  
 [T] a-gua-fu-ĵi-le \*agua fuĵile  
 [G] fuh-či-leh 'under' (595)  
 [K] fuĵile  
 [M] fejile  
 [S] fejērēxi 'below'  
 fejērēši 'under'  
 [N] 1-23
- 24 [A] 天邊·阿瓜者尺  
 [C] tian bian 'horizon'  
 [T] a-gua-ĵe-či \*agua ĵeči  
 [G] ĉe-č'e (612)  
 [K] ĵeče  
 [M] jecen  
 [S] jecēN 'frontier'  
 [N] 1-24

- 25 [A] 雪下天冷·亦忙吉壳黑黑阿瓜厦忽魯  
 [C] xue xia tian leng  
 'it is snowing, the  
 weather is cold'  
 [T] i-mang-gi-tu-he-he \*imanggi tuhe-he  
 a-gua-ša-hu-lu agua šahuru  
 [G] t'uh-woh[wah]-hei (687)  
 [K] tuwehei  
 [M] tuhe- 'fall down'  
 [S] tuxēmě, tuxumě  
 [G] yih-ma-kih (17)  
 [K] imagi  
 [M] nimanggi  
 [S] nimaně
- 26 [A] 風似箭·額都捏魯革塞  
 [C] feng si jian 'the wind is  
 like an arrow'  
 [T] e-du-nie-lu-ge-se \*edu nieru gese  
 [M] gese 'to be like'  
 [S] gese  
 [N] 9-580-26
- 27 [A] 天有霧·阿瓜塔兒麻吉必  
 [C] tian you wu 'there is fog  
 in the sky'  
 [T] a-gua-ta-r-ma-gi-bi \*agua talmagi-bi  
 [M] talma-  
 [S] talēmēlēmě  
 [N] the -bi shows this is a  
 verbal form, corresponding  
 approximately to the  
 infinitive 'to be foggy'  
 1-16-bi

- 28 [A] 逆天者亡·阿瓜伏'答速黑得不得  
 [C] ni tian zhe wang ' he who  
 opposes heaven perishes'  
 [T] a-gua-fu-da-su-he-bu-de \*agua fudasuhe  
de bude  
 [M] fudasihun 'go against'  
 [S] fēdasēhuN, fēdasihuN,  
 fudasēhuN  
 [N] this is an example of a  
 subordinate clause introduced  
 by the particle de (as, when).  
 For examples of this  
 construction in Manchu, cf.  
 E. Haenisch, Mandschu  
Grammatik, p. 65  
 1-28-de-812
- 29 [A] 月明如畫·別革帖亦能吉革塞  
 [C] yue ming ru zhou 'the moon is  
 so bright it looks like  
 daytime'  
 [T] bie-ge-tie-i-neng-gi-ge-se  
\*bie getie  
inenggi gese  
 [G] yih-neng-gi (3)  
 [K] inengi  
 [M] inenggi 'day'  
 [S] inēngě  
 [N] 6-71-29-26
- 30 [A] 天要下雪·阿瓜亦忙吉勒塞必  
 [C] tian yao xia xue 'it's  
 going to snow'  
 [T] a-gua-i-mang-gi-le-se-bi \*agua imanggi-  
resebi  
 [N] the form in -resebi is  
 probably the imperfective  
 participle followed by sebi,  
 corresponding to Manchu  
sembi. It seems to mean 'to  
 be about to... cf. 47, 67  
 1-9-resebi



- 31 [A] 天高·阿瓜得  
 [C] tian gao 'the sky is high'  
 [T] a-gua-de \*agua de  
 [M] den 'high'  
 [S] deN  
 [N] 1-31
- 32 [A] 天晴·阿瓜哈刺哈  
 [C] tian qing 'the sky is clear'  
 [T] a-gua-ha-la-ha \*agua gala-ha  
 [N] 1-15-ha
- 33 [A] 無雨進朝·阿古阿誇尺幹兒多朵深奴  
 [C] wu yu jin chao 'if there  
 is no rain, go to court'  
 [T] a-gu-a-kua-či-o-r-do-do-šin-nu  
 \*agu akua-či  
 ordo došinu  
 [M] dosi- 'go in, enter'  
 [S] diošimě  
 [N] the form in -nu is imperative,  
 cf. Manchu dosinu  
 the form in -či is conditional.  
 akua is a negative form (cf.  
 Manchu akū)  
 In the Seikadō text, there  
 are two -o- between the -či-  
 and the -r-, but not in the  
 Awanokuni text, which is  
 obviously correct.  
 3-neg-cond-547-33
- 34 [A] 天陰·阿瓜秃魯兀  
 [C] tian yin 'the sky is dark'  
 [T] a-gua-tu-lu-lu \*agua tulu'u  
 [N] 1-13

- 35 [A] 天曉·阿瓜革兒克  
 [C] tian xiao 'day breaks'  
 [T] a-gua-ge-r-ke \*agua gerke  
 [M] gere- 'to break' of day  
 [S] gerēmě  
 [N] the form in -ke is an  
 irregular form of the  
 perfective participle  
 1-35
- 36 [A] 天氣熱·阿瓜哈魯  
 [C] tianqi re 'the weather is  
 hot'  
 [T] a-gua-ha-lu \*agua halu  
 [N] in 276 below, 'hot' is  
 given as \*halu'u  
 1-276
- 37 [A] 天上有雲·阿瓜得勒秃吉必  
 [C] tian shang you yun  
 'there are clouds in  
 the sky'  
 [T] a-gua-de-le-tu-gi-bi \*agua dele  
 tugi-bi  
 [N] on -bi, cf. the comments  
 under 27 above  
 1-21-2-bi
- 38 [A] 天晚·阿瓜樣的哈  
 [C] tian wan 'it's late'  
 [T] a-gua-yang-di-ha \*agua yamdi-ha  
 [N] 1-275-ha
- 39 [A] 天旱·阿瓜夏力哈  
 [C] tian han 'the weather  
 is dry'  
 [T] a-gua-hia-li-ha \*agua hiari-ha  
 [M] cf. hiyaribu- 'to  
 wither up from a  
 drought'  
 [N] 1-39-ha

- 40 [A] 狂風大有塵·昂八額都不刺其必  
[C] kuang feng da you chen  
'when the wind is strong,  
[it raises] a lot of dust  
[T] ang-ba-e-du-bu-la-ki-bi \*amba edu  
[N] 1153-26-145-bi buraki-bi
- 41 [A] 祭天·阿瓜珠黑  
[C] ji tian 'to sacrifice  
to heaven'  
[T] a-gua-ju-he \*agua juhe  
[M] juge- 'to offer sacrifices  
to the Big Dipper at night'  
[N] 1-41
- 42 [A] 天知·阿瓜撒刺  
[C] tian zhi 'heaven knows'  
[T] a-gua-sa-la \*agua sa-ra  
[G] sah-hi (353)  
[K] sahi  
[M] sa-  
[S] same  
[N] the -ra is a sign of  
the imperfective  
participle.  
1-42
- 43 [A] 綵雲·哈尺禿吉  
[C] cai yun 'multicoloured  
clouds'  
[T] ha-či-tu-gi \*hači tugi  
[M] hacin 'kind, sort'  
hacingga 'kinds of,  
various, different'  
[S] hacin, hacině  
[N] 43-2
- 44 [A] 敬天·阿瓜禿其  
[C] jing tian 'respect heaven'  
[T] a-gua-tu-ki \*agua tuki  
[N] 1-777

- 45 [A] 雲遮·禿吉或的黑  
[C] yun zhe 'clouds cover  
[the sky]'  
[N] 2-124-he \*tugi huedi-he
- 46 [A] 雲開·禿吉內黑  
[C] yun kai 'clouds disperse'  
[T] tu-gi-nei-he \*tugi nei-he  
[M] nei- 'to open'  
[S] limě  
[N] 2-46-he
- 47 [A] 天要下雨·阿瓜阿古勒塞必  
[C] tian yao xia yu  
'it's going to rain'  
[T] a-gua-a-gu-le-se-bi \*agua agu-resebi  
[N] The Awanokuni text has  
  
欲 yu for 要 yao  
  
in the Chinese entry.  
1-3-resebi
- 48 [A] 順天者昌·阿瓜苔哈哈得過兒迷  
[C] shun tian zhe chang  
'he who obeys heaven  
prosper'  
[T] a-gua-da-ha-ha-de \*agua daha-ha de  
[G] go-r-mi golmi  
[K] taha  
[M] daha 'to follow, to be  
obedient'  
[S] dahěmě  
[N] 1-48-ha-de-149
- 49 [A] 日落·受溫禿黑黑  
[C] ri luo 'the sun sets'  
[T] šeu-un-tu-he-he \*še'un tuhe-he  
[N] 5-25-he

- 50 [A] 日出·受溫禿提黑  
 [C] ri chu 'the sun rises'  
 [T] šeu-un-tu-ti-he \*še'un tuti-he  
 [G] t'uh-t'i-mei (25)  
 [K] tutime  
 [M] tuci-  
 [S] tiucimě  
 [N] 5-50-he
- 51 [A] 日短·受溫佛活羅  
 [C] ri duan '[the time of]  
 the sun is short'  
 [T] šeu-un-fo-ho-lo \*še'un foholo  
 [N] 5-150
- 52 [A] 日長·受溫過迷  
 [C] ri chang '[the time of]  
 the sun is long  
 [T] šeu-un-go-mi \*še'un go[l]mi  
 [N] 5-149
- 53 [A] 月落時進朝·別禿黑勒額力幹兒多朵深奴  
 [C] yue luo shi jin chao  
 'attend court when the  
 moon has set'  
 [T] bie-tu-he-le-e-ri \*bie tuhe-re eri  
 o-r-do-do-šin-nu ordo doši-nu  
 [N] 6-25-re-271-547-33
- 54 [A] 天氣冷·阿瓜廈忽魯  
 [C] tianqi leng 'the weather  
 is cold'  
 [T] a-gua-ša-hu-lu \*agua šahuru  
 [N] 1-277  
 cf. 25 above

- 55 [A] 日斜·受溫迷灼  
 [C] ri xie '[the rays of]  
 the sun [are] slanting  
 [T] šeu-un-mi-jo \*še'un mi'jo  
 [N] cf. Manchu miošoro-  
 'to become crooked or  
 bent, to become askew'  
 5-55
- 56 [A] 日中·受溫亦能吉佛  
 [C] ri zhong 'the sun is  
 at its highest'  
 [T] šeu-un-i-neng-gi-fo \*še'un inenggi fo  
 [G] fuh-wan-to 'time' (81)  
 [K] fondo  
 [M] fon  
 [S] foN  
 [N] the -to (-do) in G. and  
 K. 81 is a locative  
 suffix. The word fo(n)  
 would derive from a Jin  
 form \*po(n), which appears  
 to be a borrowing from  
 Khitan.
- 57 [A] 日影·受溫黑兒墨  
 [C] ri ying 'shadow of the sun'  
 [T] šeu-un-he-r-me \*še'un helme  
 [N] 5-20
- 58 [A] 日高·受溫得  
 [C] ri gao 'the sun is high'  
 [T] šeu-un-de \*še'un de  
 [N] 5-31
- 59 [A] 天起風·阿瓜額都得得黑  
 [C] tianqi feng 'it's getting  
 windy'  
 [T] a-gua-e-du-de-de-he \*agua edu  
 [N] 1-26-113-he de[k]de-he

- 60 [A] 星满天·兀失哈阿瓜割魯  
 [C] xing man tian 'stars  
 fill the sky'  
 [T] u-ši-ha-a-gua-ja-lu \*ušiha agua jalu  
 [N] 7-1-65
- 61 [A] 雲開日出·秃吉内黑受温秃提黑  
 [C] yun kai ri chu 'the  
 clouds disperse and  
 the sun comes out'  
 [T] tu-gi-nei-he-še-un \*tugi nei-he,  
 tu-ti-he še'un tuti-he  
 [N] 2-46-he-5-50-he
- 62 [A] 日照·受温受出哈  
 [C] ri zhao 'the sun shines'  
 [T] še-un-še-cu-ha \*še'un še'ucu-ha  
 [N] there does not seem to  
 be a cognate for se'uču-  
 in Manchu. It is derived  
 from še'un.  
 5-62-ha
- 63 [A] 月出·别秃提黑  
 [C] yue chu 'the moon has  
 risen'  
 [T] bie-tu-ti-he \*bie tuti-he  
 [N] the past participle form  
 of tuti- in Manchu ends  
 in -ke (tucike), as does  
 the past participle of  
tuhe- (tuheke). However,  
 as the transcription could  
 have indicated -ke but has  
 still used -he in such  
 words, I have retained  
 this form in the recon-  
 struction.  
 6-50-he

- 64 [A] 月落·别秃黑黑  
 [C] yue luo 'the moon has set'  
 [T] bie-tu-he-he \*bie tuhe-he  
 [N] 6-25-he
- 65 [A] 月满·别割刺哈  
 [C] yue man 'the moon is full'  
 [T] bie-ja-la-ha \*bie jala-ha  
 [G] čah-lu-hah (726)  
 [K] jaluha  
 [M] jalu-  
 [S] jaluu  
 [N] 6-65-ha
- 66 [A] 雲霧滿山·秃吉塔兒麻吉阿力割魯  
 [C] yun wu man shan 'clouds  
 and mists fill the  
 mountains'  
 [T] tu-gi-ta-r-ma-gi \*tugi talmagi  
 a-li-ja-lu ali jalu  
 [N] 2-16-130-65
- 67 [A] 密雲欲雨·秃吉兀者阿古勒塞必  
 [C] mi yun yu yu 'the clouds  
 are dense - it's about  
 to rain'  
 [T] tu-gi-u-je-a-gu-le-se-bi \*tugi uje agu-  
 -resebi  
 [G] wuh-če 'heavy' (396,699)  
 [K] ujee  
 [M] ujen  
 [S] 'ujěN  
 [N] 2-67-3-resebi
- 68 [A] 月圓·别木力額  
 [C] yue yuan 'the moon is  
 round'  
 [T] bie-mu-li-e \*bie muli'e  
 [M] muheliyen 'round'  
 [S] muxéliN, muxuliN  
 [N] 6-68

- 69 [A] 月缺·別額測  
 [C] yue que 'the moon is waning'  
 [T] bie-e-tse \*bie etse  
 [M] cf. edele- 'to wane'  
 [N] 6-69
- 70 [A] 月斜·別迷灼  
 [C] yue xie 'the [rays of the moon are slanting'  
 [T] bie-mi-jo \*bie mi jo  
 [N] 6-55
- 71 [A] 月明·別革帖  
 [C] yue ming 'the moon is bright'  
 [T] bie-ge-tie \*bie getie  
 [G] cf. ken-kien 'bright' (608)  
 [K] gengiyen  
 [M] cf. genggiyen 'bright',  
 getuken 'clear, distinct'  
 [S] giŋiN 'light-coloured,  
 bright-coloured',  
 getəxukəN 'distinct'  
 [N] 6-71
- 72 [A] 連日有雨·亦能吉開阿古必  
 [C] lian ri you yu 'there is rain day after day'  
 [T] i-neng-gi-nao(?) -a-gu-bi \*inenggi nao agu-bi  
 [M] no cognate for \*nao.  
 H. Franke suggests that  
 開 nao might be a mistake  
 for 開 lan, and \*inenggilan  
 a previously unrecorded  
 form parallel with written  
 Manchu biyalame 'months long,  
 for months on end'.

- 73 [A] 雷嚮·阿甸棍必  
 [C] lei xiang 'thunder roars'  
 [T] a-dien-gun-bi \*a[k]dien gu-mbi  
 [M] guwe- 'to sound, resound'  
 [N] 4-73-mbi
- 74 [A] 月黑·別發兌洪  
 [C] yue hei 'the moon is dark'  
 [T] bie-fa-r-hung \*bie farhun  
 [N] 6-19
- 75 [A] 雷打了·阿甸都黑  
 [C] lei da-le 'there has been a thunderclap'  
 [T] a-dien-du-he \*a[k]dien du-he  
 [N] 4-810-he
- 76 [A] 月影·別黑兌墨  
 [C] yue ying 'shadow of the moon'  
 [T] bie-he-r-me \*bie helme  
 [N] 6-20
- 77 [A] 月蝕·別者瓦  
 [C] yue shi 'eclipse of the moon'  
 [T] bie-je-ke \*bie je-ke  
 [M] biya je-  
 [S] biao jemě  
 [N] cf. 1017 je- 'to eat'.  
 The -ke is an irregular  
 past participle form, cf.  
 Manchu jeke
- 78 [A] 昨夜下雨·失塞多博力阿古哈  
 [C] zuo ye xia yu  
 'last night it rained'  
 [T] ši-se-do-bo-li-a-gu-ha \*ši[k]se dobori  
 [N] 280-273-3-ha

- 79 [A] 月照·别受出哈  
[C] yue zhao 'the moon is shining'  
[T] bie-še-čū-ha \*bie še-čū-ha  
[N] 6-62-ha
- 80 [A] 月盡·别餓的哈  
[C] yue jin 'the moon has waned'  
[T] bie-o-di-ha \*bie odi-ha  
[M] waji- 'to finish'  
[S] vajěmě, vajimě  
[N] 6-80-ha
- 81 [A] 有雨免朝·阿古尺幹兒多朵深荅誇  
[C] you yu mian chao 'if there is rain, it is not necessary to go to court'  
[T] a-gu-či-o-r-do \*agu-či ordo  
do-šin-da-kua došindakua  
[N] 3-či-547-33-kua (neg.)
- 82 [A] 雨不住·阿古翁得誇  
[C] yu buzhu 'the rain won't stop'  
[T] a-gu-ung-de-kua \*agu unde-kua  
[N] 3-93
- 83 [A] 星多·兀失哈昂八刺  
[C] xing duo 'there are many stars'  
[T] u-ši-ha-ang-ba-la \*ušiha ambala  
[G] 'an-pan-lah (668, 724)  
[K] amban  
[M] amba  
[N] 7-83

- 84 [A] 星稀·兀失哈塞力  
[C] xing xi 'stars are rare'  
[T] u-ši-ha-se-li \*ušiha seri  
[M] seri 'rare'  
[N] 7-84
- 85 [A] 星少·兀失哈我鎖  
[C] xing shao 'stars are few'  
[T] u-ši-ha-o-so \*ušiha oso  
[G] woh[wah]suh-wan (669)  
[K] oson  
[M] osohon  
[N] 7-85
- 86 [A] 風息·額都納哈哈  
[C] feng xi 'the wind has ceased'  
[T] e-du-na-ha-ha \*edu naka-ha  
[M] naka- to cease, give up  
[S] naqěmě  
[N] 26-86-ha
- 87 [A] 星落·兀失哈禿黑黑  
[C] xing luo 'stars have fallen'  
[T] u-ši-ha-tu-he-he \*ušiha tuhe-he  
[N] 7-25-he
- 88 [A] 大風·昂八額都  
[C] da feng 'big wind'  
[T] ang-ba-e-du \*amba edu  
[N] 1153-26
- 89 [A] 雷霹·阿甸都必  
[C] lei pi 'thunderclap'  
[T] a-dien-du-bi \*a[k]dien du-bi  
[N] 4-810-bi cf. 75

- 90 [A] 大雨·昂八阿古  
[C] da yu 'big rain'  
[T] ang-ba-a-gu \*amba agu  
[N] 1153-3
- 91 [A] 春風·捏捏里額都  
[C] chun feng 'spring wind'  
[T] nie-nie-li-e-du \*nienieri edu  
[N] 265-26
- 92 [A] 風吹·額都仗冷必  
[C] feng chui 'the wind blows'  
[T] e-du-fu-leng-bi \*edu fule-mbi  
[M] fulgiye- 'to blow'  
[S] filiximě
- 93 [A] 雨住·阿古翁苦  
[C] yu zhu 'the rain stops'  
[T] a-gu-ung-ku \*agu ungku  
[N] cf. 82 undekua  
3-82
- 94 [A] 風來·額都的必  
[C] feng lai 'the wind comes'  
[T] e-du-di-bi \*edu di-bi  
[N] 26-758-bi
- 95 [A] 風冷·額都廈忽魯  
[C] feng leng 'the wind is  
cold'  
[T] e-du-ša-hu-ru \*edu šahuru  
[N] 26-277

- 96 [A] 無雨·阿古阿誇  
[C] wu yu 'there is no rain'  
[T] a-gu-a-gua \*agu akua  
[M] cf. akû 'to be non-  
existent'; neg. suffix  
[S] cf. 'aqu  
[N] 3-96
- 97 [A] 好風·賽因額都  
[C] hao feng 'good wind'  
[T] sai-in-e-du \*sain edu  
[N] this word could also  
be transcribed sayin  
or sai'in  
694-26
- 98 [A] 好雨·賽因阿古  
[C] hao yu 'good rain'  
[T] sai-in-a-gu \*sain agu  
[N] 694-3
- 99 [A] 雹下·博虛禿黑必  
[C] bao xia 'it's hailing'  
[T] bo-nio-tu-he-bi \*bonio tuhe-bi  
[N] 10-25-bi
- 100 [A] 小雨·阿沙阿古  
[C] xiao yu 'small rain'  
[T] a-ša-a-gu \*aš[h]a agu  
[N] 1154-3
- 101 [A] 有雨·阿古必  
[C] you yu 'it is raining'  
[T] a-gu-bi \*agu-bi  
[N] 3-bi

- 102 [A] 霧散·塔兒麻吉必黑  
 [C] wu san 'the fog has  
 dispersed'  
 [T] ta-r-ma-gi-nei-he \*talmagi nei-he  
 [N] 16-46-he
- 103 [A] 雪下·亦忙吉禿黑必  
 [C] xia xue 'it is snowing'  
 [T] i-mang-gi-tu-he-bi \*imanggi tuhe-bi  
 [N] 9-25-bi
- 104 [A] 煙多·尚加昂八刺  
 [C] yan duo 'much mist'  
 [T] šang-gia-ang-ba-la \*šanggia ambala  
 [N] 17-83
- 105 [A] 露乾·失雷餓羅活  
 [C] lu gan 'the dew has  
 dried up'  
 [T] šī-lei-o-lo-ho \*šīlei oloho  
 [N] 11-235
- 106 [A] 日蝕·受溫者克  
 [C] ri shi 'eclipse of  
 the sun'  
 [T] šeu'un-je-ke \*še'un je-ke  
 [N] 5-77
- 107 [A] 路濕·失雷兀失黑  
 [C] lu shi 'the dew is wet'  
 [T] šī-lei-u-ši-he \*šīlei ušihe  
 [M] usihi 'to get wet'  
 [S] 'ušixě 'wet'  
 [N] 12-107

- 108 [A] 煙出·尚加禿提黑  
 [C] yan chu 'mist has risen'  
 [T] šang-gia-tu-ti-he \*šanggia tuti-he  
 [N] 17-50-he
- 109 [A] 煙息·尚加納哈哈  
 [C] yan xi 'the mist has  
 disappeared'  
 [T] šang-gia-na-ha-ha \*šanggia naka-ha  
 [N] 17-86-ha
- 110 [A] 天理·阿瓜荅哈  
 [C] tian li 'principles of  
 heaven'  
 [T] a-gua-da-ha \*agua daha  
 [N] the Jurchen means  
 'to follow Heaven'  
 1-48
- 111 [A] 冰·珠黑  
 [C] bing 'ice'  
 [T] ju-he \*juhe  
 [G] ču-hei (15)  
 [K] juhe  
 [M] juhe  
 [S] juxee, juxuu
- 112 [A] 明星·革帖兀失哈  
 [C] ming xing 'bright star'  
 [T] ge-tie-u-ši-ha \*getie ušiha  
 [N] 71-7
- 113 [A] 風起·額都得得黑  
 [C] feng qi 'a wind has  
 risen'  
 [T] e-du-de-de-he \*edu de[k]de-he  
 [G] t'eh-ye-mei (392)  
 [K] teyemei  
 [M] dekde- 'to float, to rise'  
 [S] dexědēmě  
 [N] 26-113-he



- 114 [A] 風嚮·客額都混必  
[C] feng xiang 'the wind is howling'  
[T] e-du-gun-bi \*edu gu-mbi  
[N] 26-73-mbi
- 115 [A] 雪薄·亦忙吉捏克葉  
[C] xue bao 'the snow is thin'  
[T] i-mang-gi-nie-ke-ye \*imanggi neke[l]ie  
[N] 9-152
- 116 [A] 雪大·亦忙吉昂八  
[C] xue da 'there is a lot of snow'  
[T] i-mang-gi-ang-ba \*imanggi amba  
[N] 9-1153
- 117 [A] 雪厚·亦忙吉郎的刺迷  
[C] xue hou 'the snow is thick'  
[T] i-mang-gi-di-la-mi \*imanggi dirami  
[N] In the Seikadō manuscript, there is  
郎 -lang- between the  
-gi- and the -di-, but  
this is not there in  
the Awanokuni ms., and  
should be omitted.
- 118 [A] 雪消·亦忙吉翁克  
[C] xue xiao 'the snow has melted'  
[T] i-mang-gi-ung-ke \*imanggi ungke  
[M] we- 'to melt', pp.  
wengke  
[N] this may be the same  
word as in 82 and 93  
9-118

- 119 [A] 北斗星·納荅兀失哈  
[C] bei dou xing 'The Dipper'  
[T] na-da-u-ši-ha \*nada ušiha  
[M] nadan usiha  
[S] nadēN 'ušihaa  
[N] lit. 'seven stars'  
1115-7
- 120 [A] 霧收·塔兒麻吉黑志黑  
[C] wu shou 'the fog has receded'  
[T] ta-r-ma-gi-he-te-he \*talmagi hete-he  
[M] hete- 'to fold, to tuck up, to recede (of fog)  
[S] xetēmē  
[N] 16-120-he
- 121 [A] 煙起·尚加得得黑  
[C] yan qi 'the mist has risen'  
[T] šang-gia-de-de-he \*šanggia de[k]de-he  
[N] 17-223-he
- 122 [A] 煙散·尚加內黑  
[C] yan san 'the mist has dispersed'  
[T] šang-gia-nei-he \*šanggia nei-he  
[N] 17-46-he
- 123 [A] 天河·阿瓜亦必刺  
[C] tian he 'the Milky Way'  
[T] a-gua-i-bi-la \*agua-i bira  
[N] 1-i (gen.)-137
- 124 [A] 煙罩·尚加或的黑  
[C] yan zhao 'the mist has covered [...]'  
[T] šang-gia-hue-di-he \*šanggia huedi-he  
[M] huweje- 'to screen off, to cover'  
[N] 17-124-he

- 125 [A] 煙收·尚加黑忒黑  
 [C] yan shou 'the mist has receded'  
 [T] šang-gia-he-te-he \*šanggia hete-he  
 [N] 17-120-he
- 126 [A] 水凍·木克革提黑  
 [C] shui dong 'the water has frozen'  
 [T] mu-ke-ge-ti-he \*muke geti-he  
 [G] koh-t'i-leh (96)  
 [K] getile  
 [M] gece- 'to freeze'  
 [S] gecēmě  
 [N] 131-126-he
- 127 [A] 斗·納答  
 [C] dou 'The Dipper'  
 [T] na-da [-----] \*nada [ušiha]  
 [N] cf. 119. It would seem that ušiha has been mistakenly omitted from this entry
- 128 [A] 月上進朝·別得得黑得幹兒多朵深奴  
 [C] yue shang jin chao  
       'when the moon rises,  
       go into the court'  
 [T] bie-de-de-he \*bie de[k]de-he  
       de-o-r-do-do-šin-nu de ordo došinu  
 [N] 6-113-he-de-547-33

## SECTION TWO - GEOGRAPHY

- 129 [A] 江·兀刺  
 [C] jiang 'river'  
 [T] u-la \*ula  
 [G] wuh-lah (49)  
 [K] ula  
 [M] ula  
 [S] 'ulaa  
 [N] cf. bira (137) below;  
ula is a large river,  
bira a smaller river.
- 130 [A] 山·阿力  
 [C] shan 'mountain'  
 [T] a-li \*ali  
 [G] 'a-li-yin (39)  
 [K] alin  
 [M] alin  
 [S] 'aliN
- 131 [A] 水·木克  
 [C] shui 'water'  
 [T] mu-ke \*muke  
 [G] muh (51)  
 [K] mu  
 [M] muke  
 [S] mukee, mukuu
- 132 [A] 石·兀黑  
 [C] shi 'stone'  
 [T] u-he \*uhe  
 [G] woh-hei (52)  
 [K] wehe  
 [M] wehe  
 [S] vehee

- 133 [A] 路·住  
[C] lu 'road'  
[T] ju \*ju  
[G] ču-wuh (57)  
[K] jugu  
[M] jugûn  
[S] johěN
- 134 [A] 井·忽提  
[C] jing 'well' (n.)  
[T] hu-ti \*huti  
[G] hi-ših (56)  
[K] hiši  
[M] hûcin  
[S] qociN
- 135 [A] 牆·發的刺  
[C] qiang 'wall'  
[T] fa-di-la \*fadira  
[G] fah-tah-'an (64)  
[K] fadan  
[M] fajiran  
[S] fajěřěhěN
- 136 [A] 城·黑徹  
[C] cheng 'city wall'  
[T] he-če \*heče  
[G] hei-č'e-ni (33)  
[K] hečeni  
[M] hecen  
[S] kecěN  
[N] the -ni in G. and K.  
is a gen. suffix
- 137 [A] 河·必刺  
[C] he 'river'  
[T] bi-la \*bira  
[G] pih-'a (40)  
[K] bira  
[M] bira  
[S] biraa

- 138 [A] 海·墨得  
[C] hai 'sea'  
[T] me-de \*mede  
[G] meh-t'eh-'oh-lin (46)  
[K] meterin  
[M] mederi  
[S] mederi, muduri
- 139 [A] 地·納  
[C] di 'land'  
[T] na \*na  
[G] nah (37)  
[M] na  
[S] naa
- 140 [A] 土·伯和  
[C] tu 'earth'  
[T] be-ho \*beho  
[G] puh-huo (38)  
[K] boiho  
[M] boihon  
[S] biohěN, biohuN
- 141 [A] 田·兀失  
[C] tian 'field'  
[T] u-ši \*uši  
[G] wu-ših-yin (50)  
[K] ušin  
[M] usin  
[S] 'ušiN
- 142 [A] 橋·忽伏倫  
[C] qiao 'bridge'  
[T] hu-fu-lun \*hufurun  
[M] no cognate  
[S] cf. kurěvě, kuruvu  
[N] the Chinese transcription  
could also represent a  
form \*hufulun; I have  
opted for the form with  
-r- on the basis of the  
Sibe forms

- 143 [A] 泉水·舍亦木克  
[C] quanshui 'spring water'  
[T] še-i-mu-ke \*še-i muke  
[N] 233-i-131
- 144 [A] 沙·灼兒窩  
[C] sha 'sand'  
[T] ʃo-r-o \*ʃoro  
[M] no cognate. cf.  
šurga 'snow blown  
by the wind; blowing  
sand'. The transcription  
is unusual for a form  
\*ʃoro (for which one  
would have expected  
ʃo-lo); perhaps we  
have here a form like  
\*ʃor[ʃ]o
- 145 [A] 塵·不刺其  
[C] chen 'dust'  
[T] bu-la-ki \*buraki  
[G] puh-leh-k'i (59)  
[K] bureki  
[M] buraki  
[N] the form given in  
Kiyose is dureki,  
but this is an  
obvious misprint
- 146 [A] 灰·伏冷吉  
[C] hui 'ash'  
[T] fu-leng-gi \*fulenggi  
[G] fuh-leh-kih (65)  
[K] fulegi  
[M] fulenggi  
[S] filiŋi
- 147 [A] 淺·迷察  
[C] qian 'shallow'  
[T] mi-ča \*miča  
[M] micihyan  
[S] micaN, miciaN

- 148 [A] 近·答刺刺  
[C] jin 'close'  
[T] ʃa-ha-la \*ʃakara  
[M] no cognate. Cf.  
jakan 'just now,  
not long, recently'  
[S] cf. jai 'next, following'  
[N] in the absence of an  
obvious cognate in M or  
S, it is impossible to  
decide whether the  
second syllable should  
be ha, ka or ga, or the  
third syllable ra or la
- 149 [A] 長·過迷  
[C] chang 'long'  
[T] go-mi \*go[l]mi  
[G] kuo-mi-kih (690)  
[K] golmigi  
[M] golmin  
[S] GolēmiN
- 150 [A] 短·佛活羅  
[C] duan 'short'  
[T] fo-ho-lo \*foholo  
[G] fuh-huo-lo (691)  
[K] foholo  
[M] foholon  
[S] fiohēlēN, fiohuluN
- 151 [A] 厚·的刺迷  
[C] hou 'thick'  
[T] di-la-mi \*dirami  
[G] tih-lah-mei  
[K] diramei  
[M] jiramin  
[S] jiramě

- 152 [A] 薄·捏克葉  
 [C] bao 'thin'  
 [T] nie-ke-ye \*neke[l]ie  
 [G] nan-k'oh-hong (693)  
 [K] nankehun  
 [M] nekeliyen  
 [S] niNkěN, niNkiN  
 [N] it would be possible  
 on the basis of the  
 Chinese transcription  
 to reconstruct \*nie  
 for the first syllable  
 of this word; I have  
 opted for \*ne- on the  
 basis of Manchu
- 153 [A] 深·說迷  
 [C] shen 'deep'  
 [T] šo-mi \*šomi  
 [G] šu-mi-kih (695)  
 [K] šumigi  
 [M] šumin  
 [S] šumiN, sumiN
- 154 [A] 村·哈廈  
 [C] cun 'village'  
 [T] ha-ša \*gaša  
 [G] hah-ša (42)  
 [K] gaša  
 [M] gašan  
 [S] gašěN 'countryside'
- 155 [A] 遠·過羅  
 [C] yuan 'far'  
 [T] go-lo \*goro  
 [G] kuo-lo-woh (701)  
 [K] goroo  
 [M] goro  
 [S] Gorě

- 156 [A] 山低·阿力不提  
 [C] shan di 'the mountain  
 is low'  
 [T] a-li-bu-ti \*ali buti  
 [M] cf. buten 'the foot  
 of a mountain'  
 [N] cf. 162  
 130-156
- 157 [A] 山高·阿力提  
 [C] shan gao 'the mountain  
 is high'  
 [T] a-li-de \*ali de  
 [N] 130-31
- 158 [A] 山上·阿力得勒  
 [C] shan shang 'on the  
 mountain'  
 [T] a-li-de-le \*ali dele  
 [M] dele 'on top of'  
 [N] 130-158
- 159 [A] 山下·阿力機革得  
 [C] shan xia 'under the  
 mountain'  
 [T] a-li-wa-ge-de \*ali wa[r]ge-de  
 [M] cf. wargi 'under'  
 [N] -de is loc. suffix  
 130-159
- 160 [A] 山深·阿力說迷  
 [C] shan shen 'the mountain  
 is deep'  
 [T] a-li-šo-mi \*ali šomi  
 [N] 130-153

- 161 [A] 山中·阿力都林八  
[C] shan zhong 'in the  
middle of the mountain'  
[T] a-li-du-lin-ba \*ali dulimba  
[N] 130-1148
- 162 [A] 山脚·阿力伯帖  
[C] shan jiao 'foot of the  
mountain'  
[T] a-li-be-tie \*ali betie  
[N] cf. 156  
130-889
- 163 [A] 山顶·阿力<sup>寧</sup>谷  
[C] shan ding 'peak of the  
mountain'  
[T] a-li-ning-gu \*ali ninggu  
[M] ninggu 'on top of,  
over, above'  
[S] nuquu, niuquu, niuu  
[N] 130-163
- 164 [A] 水深·木克說迷  
[C] shui shen 'the water is  
deep'  
[T] mu-ke-šo-mi \*muke šomi  
[N] 131-154
- 165 [A] 山<sup>邊</sup>·阿力者尺  
[C] shan bian 'side of the  
mountain'  
[T] a-li-je-če \*ali ječe  
[N] 130-24
- 166 [A] 水清·木克革帖  
[C] shui qing 'the water is  
clear'  
[T] mu-ke-ge-tie \*muke getie  
[N] 131-72

- 167 [A] 水淺·木克迷察  
[C] shui qian 'the water is  
shallow'  
[T] mu-ke-mi-ča \*muke miča  
[N] 131-148
- 168 [A] 水漲·木克必撒哈  
[C] shui zhang 'the water  
has risen'  
[T] mu-ke-bi-sa-ha \*muke bisa-ha  
[M] bisa- 'to overflow,  
to flood'  
[S] bisaN 'flood'  
[N] 131-168-ha
- 169 [A] 水渾·木克發哈刺  
[C] shui hun 'the water is  
muddy'  
[T] mu-ke-fa-ha-la \*muke fahala  
[M] fahala 'muddy, turbid'  
[N] 131-169
- 170 [A] 水落·木克納哈哈  
[C] shui luo 'the water has  
fallen'  
[T] mu-ke-na-ha-ha \*muke naka-ha  
[N] 131-87-ha
- 171 [A] 水出·木克秃提黑  
[C] shui chu 'water has  
come out'  
[T] mu-ke-tu-ti-he \*muke tuti-he  
[N] 131-51-he
- 172 [A] 水寬·木克我<sup>最</sup>撮  
[C] shui kuan 'the water  
is wide'  
[T] mu-ke-o-tso \*muke o[n]tso  
[M] onco 'wide'  
[N] 131-172

- 173 [A] 青山·念加阿力  
 [C] qing shan 'green mountain'  
 [T] nien-gia-a-li \*niengia ali  
 [N] 1099-130
- 174 [A] 水流·木克額因必  
 [C] shui liu 'water flows'  
 [T] mu-ke-e-in-bi \*muke e'i-mbi  
 [M] eye- 'to flow'  
 [S] 'e'ime  
 [N] this could be written  
 \*eyi-mbi.  
 131-174-mbi
- 175 [A] 水淹了田·木克兀失兀刺哈  
 [C] shui yan-le tian  
 'water has submerged  
 the fields'  
 [T] mu-ke-u-ši-u-la-ha \*muke uši  
 [M] ulga- (old form ulha-) ul[h]a-ha  
 'to wet, to dampen, to  
 dip in liquid'  
 [N] 131-141-175-ha
- 176 [A] 水淹了城·木克黑徹兀刺哈  
 [C] shui yan-le cheng  
 'water has submerged  
 the city walls'  
 [T] mu-ke-he-če-u-la-ha \*muke heče  
 [N] 131-136-176-ha ul[h]a-ha
- 177 [A] 江心·兀刺都林八  
 [C] jiang xin 'in the middle  
 [lit. 'heart'] of the  
 river'  
 [T] u-la-du-lin-ba \*ula dulimba  
 [N] 129-1148

- 178 [A] 江邊·兀刺者尺  
 [C] jiang bian 'the side of  
 the river'  
 [T] u-la-je-či \*ula ječi  
 [N] 129-24
- 179 [A] 河闊·必刺我撮  
 [C] he kuo 'the river is  
 wide'  
 [T] bi-la-o-tso \*bira o[n]tso  
 [N] 137-172
- 180 [A] 河窄·必刺办塞洪  
 [C] he zhai 'the river is  
 narrow'  
 [T] bi-la-i-se-hung \*bira isehun  
 [M] isheliyen 'narrow'  
 [N] 137-180
- 181 [A] 大河·昂八必刺  
 [C] da he 'big river'  
 [T] ang-ba-bi-la \*amba bira  
 [N] 1153-137
- 182 [A] 粗沙·麻灼兒窩  
 [C] cu sha 'rough sand'  
 [T] ma-jo-r-o \*ma joro  
 [G] ma-rh (671)  
 [K] mar  
 [M] muwa  
 [N] 182-144
- 183 [A] 江闊·兀刺我撮  
 [C] jiang kuo 'the river is  
 wide'  
 [T] u-la-o-tso \*ula o[n]tso  
 [N] 129-179

- 184 [A] 江窄·兀刺办塞洪  
[C] jiang zhai 'the river  
is narrow'  
[T] u-la-i-se-hung \*ula isehun  
[N] 129-180
- 185 [A] 小河·阿沙必刺  
[C] xiao he 'small river'  
[T] a-ša-bi-la \*aš(h)a bira  
[N] 1154-137
- 186 [A] 大江·昂八兀刺  
[C] da jiang 'big river'  
[T] ang-ba-u-la \*amba ula  
[N] 1153-129
- 187 [A] 細沙·納兒洪灼兒窩  
[C] xi sha 'fine sand'  
[T] na-r-hung-jo-r-o \*narhun ʔoro  
[G] nah-rh-hung (672)  
[K] narhun  
[M] narhûn  
[S] narǝhuN  
[N] 187-144
- 188 [A] 大石·昂八兀黑  
[C] da shi 'big stone'  
[T] ang-ba-u-he \*amba uhe  
[N] 1153-132
- 189 [A] 碎石·不牙兀黑  
[C] sui shi 'broken stones'  
[T] bu-ya-u-he \*buya uhe  
[M] buya 'small, scant'  
[S] buyaa 'petty'  
[N] 189-132

- 190 [A] 石橋·兀黑忽伏倫  
[C] shi qiao 'stone bridge'  
[T] u-he-hu-fu-lun \*uhe hufurun  
[N] 132-142
- 191 [A] 板橋·兀志忽伏倫  
[C] ban qiao 'bridge made  
of boards'  
[T] u-te-hu-fu-lun \*u[n]te hufurun  
[N] 546-142
- 192 [A] 新橋·办車忽伏倫  
[C] xin qiao 'new bridge'  
[T] i-če-hu-fu-lun \*iče hufurun  
[G] yih-č'e-kih (626,666)  
[K] ičegi  
[M] ice  
[S] 'icee  
[N] 192-142
- 193 [A] 石路·兀黑住  
[C] shi lu 'stone road'  
[T] u-he-ʔu \*uhe ʔu  
[N] 132-133
- 194 [A] 石沙·兀黑灼兒窩  
[C] shi sha 'stones [and]  
sand'  
[T] u-he-ʔo-r-o \*uhe ʔoro  
[N] 132-144
- 195 [A] 舊橋·佛忽伏倫  
[C] jiu qiao 'old bridge'  
[T] fo-hu-fu-lun \*fo hufurun  
[G] fuh-'oh-yin (667)  
[K] fuwei  
[M] fe  
[S] fee  
[N] 195-142



- 196 [A] 路近·住汗尺  
 [C] lu jin 'the road is close'  
 [T] ĵu-han-č'i \*ĵu hanč'i  
 [M] hanci 'near'  
 [S] haNci  
 [N] 133-196
- 197 [A] 大路·昂八住  
 [C] da lu 'big road'  
 [T] ang-ba-ĵu \*amba ĵu  
 [N] 1153-133
- 198 [A] 過橋·忽伙倫都勒克  
 [C] guo qiao 'crossed over the bridge'  
 [T] hu-fu-lun-du-le-ke \*hufurun dule-ke  
 [M] dule- 'to go by, to pass through'  
 [S] dulěmě, dulumě  
 [N] 198-142-ke
- 199 [A] 渡船·的哈奪文必  
 [C] du jiang 'to cross a river by boat'  
 [T] di-ha-do-un-bi \*diha do'u-mbi  
 [M] doo- 'to cross over'  
 [S] da'ume  
 [N] 614-228-mbi
- 200 [A] 開田·兀矢內必  
 [C] kai tian 'to open up the fields'  
 [T] u-ši-nei-bi \*uši nei-bi  
 [N] 141-46-bi

- 201 [A] 走路·住得伙倫必  
 [C] zou lu 'to walk along the road'  
 [T] ĵu-de-fu-lun(lin)-bi \*ĵu-de fulu-mbi  
 [M] feliye- 'to walk' (fuli-mbi?)  
 [N] -de is a sign of the locative  
 The Awanokuni text  
 has 倫 -lun- here,  
 the Seikadō text 林  
 -lin-.  
 It would seem that  
 -lin- is correct, cf.  
 207 \*fuli-
- 202 [A] 分田·兀矢登得必  
 [C] fen tian 'to divide a field'  
 [T] u-ši-deng-de-bi \*uši dende-bi  
 [N] 141-801-bi
- 203 [A] 路遠·住過羅  
 [C] lu yuan 'the road is far'  
 [T] ĵu-go-lo \*ĵu goro  
 [N] 133-155
- 204 [A] 路平·住捏徹  
 [C] lu ping 'the road is level'  
 [T] ĵu-nie-če \*ĵu neče  
 [M] necin  
 [S] neciN  
 [N] 133-204
- 205 [A] 泥路·提扒住  
 [C] ni lu 'mud road'  
 [T] ti-pa(ba)-ĵu \*tipa/tiba ĵu  
 [N] 261-133

- 206 [A] 熟田·兀勒黑,兀失  
[C] shou tian 'ripe field'  
[T] u-le-he-u-ši \*ure-he uši  
[N] 1028-141
- 207 [A] 水大車行不得·木克昂八塞者伏力墨八哈刺誇  
[C] shui da, che xingbude  
'the water is big [=high]  
the vehicles cannot go  
[through]'  
[T] mu-ke-ang-ba-se-je \*muke amba, seje  
fu-li-he-ba-ha-la-kua fuli-he baha-rakua  
[M] baha- 'to be able'  
[N] 131-1153-603-he-201-rakua
- 208 [A] 上御路·戲兒勒兀失奴  
[C] shang yu lu 'go along  
the road leading to the  
imperial palace'  
[T] hi-r-le-u-si-nu \*hirle ušinu  
[M] no cognate for \*hirle  
\*uši, cf. wesi- 'to mount,  
to ascend'  
[N] note irr. imperative in  
-nu, cf. M. wesinu.
- 209 [A] 菓園·壳子黑,牙發  
[C] guo yuan 'fruit garden'  
[T] tu-yu-he-ya-fa \*tuyuhe yafa  
[M] yafan  
[S] yafəhəN  
[N] 347-209
- 210 [A] 菜園·素吉牙發  
[C] cai yuan 'vegetable garden'  
[T] su-gi-ya-fa \*sugi yafa  
[N] 353-209

- 211 [A] 花園·亦刺牙發  
[C] hua yuan 'flower garden'  
[T] i-la-ya-fa \*il[h]a yafa  
[N] 346-209
- 212 [A] 種田·兀失塔林必  
[C] zhong tian 'to cultivate  
a field'  
[T] u-ši-ta-lin-bi \*uši tali-mbi  
[M] tari-  
[S] tiarimə 'to sow, plant'  
[N] 141-212-mbi
- 213 [A] 搬段土·伯和秃其  
[C] ban tu 'to move earth,  
soil'  
[T] be-ho-tu-ki \*beho tuki  
[M] tukiye- 'raise, lift'  
boihon 'soil, earth, dirt'  
[S] boihəN, boihuN
- 214 [A] 和泥·伯和歲  
[C] he ni 'to mix mud  
[for plaster]'  
[T] be-ho-sui \*beho sui  
[M] sui- 'to mix'  
[N] 213-214
- 215 [A] 石灰·多火  
[C] shihui 'lime'  
[T] do-ho \*doho  
[M] doho
- 216 [A] 看城·黑徹托必  
[C] kan chang 'to guard  
the city walls'  
[T] he-če-to-bi \*heče to-bi  
[N] 136-807-bi

- 217 [A] 上城·黑徹忒得  
[C] shang cheng 'to climb  
the city walls'  
[T] he-če-te-de \*heče te[k]de  
[M] cf. dekde- 'to float,  
to rise' (?)  
[N] 136-217
- 218 [A] 城外·黑徹秃魯革得  
[C] cheng wai 'outside the  
city walls'  
[T] he-če-tu-lu-ge-de \*heče tulu[r]ge-de  
[N] 136-1152-de (loc.)
- 219 [A] 城裏·黑徹朵羅  
[C] cheng li 'inside the  
city walls'  
[T] he-če-do-lo \*heče dolo  
[N] 136-1151
- 220 [A] 城下·黑徹襪革得  
[C] cheng xia 'under the  
city walls'  
[T] he-če-wa-ge-de \*heče wa[r]ge-de  
[M] wargi 'under'  
[N] 136-220-de (loc.)
- 221 [A] 城高·黑徹得  
[C] cheng gao 'the city walls  
are high'  
[T] he-če-de \*heče de  
[N] 136-31
- 222 [A] 出城·黑徹秃提黑  
[C] chu cheng 'went out from  
the city walls'  
[T] he-če-tu-ti-he \*heče tuti-he  
[N] 136-50-he

- 223 [A] 下御路·戲兒勒襪矢奴  
[C] xia yu lu 'go down from  
the road leading to  
the imperial palace'  
[T] hi-r-le-wa-ši-nu \*hirle waši-nu  
[M] wasi- to go down  
[N] note irr. imp. in -nu,  
cf. Manchu wasinu.  
208-223
- 224 [A] 御路上不要坐·戲兒勒外羅兀忒勒  
[C] yu lu shang bu yao zuo  
'do not sit on the road  
leading to the imperial  
palace'  
[T] hi-r-le-do-lo-u-me-te-re \*hirle dolo  
[N] 208-1151-neg.-770-re ume te-re
- 225 [A] 萬里長城·壳墨巴過迷黑徹  
[C] wanli changcheng 'the  
ten-thousand li  
long wall: the Great  
Wall'  
[T] tu-me-ba-go-mi-he-če \*tume ba go[l]mi  
[M] ba 'a Chinese mile, li' heče  
[N] 1129-225-149-136
- 226 [A] 獨木橋·額木莫忽伏倫  
[C] du mu qiao 'a bridge made  
from a single board'  
[T] e-mu-mo-hu-fu-lun \*emu mo hufurun  
[N] 1109-352-142

- 227 [A] 橋高難過·忽伏倫得都勒尺忙哈  
 [C] qiao gao nan guo 'the bridge  
 is high; if you want to  
 get across it, it will be  
 difficult.'  
 [T] hu-fu-lun-de \*hufurun de,  
 du-le-či-mang-ha dule-či mangga  
 [G] mang-hah[ka] (702)  
 [K] manga  
 [M] mangga  
 [S] maně  
 [N] the -či suffix is a  
 sign of the conditional  
 gerund  
 142-31-198-227
- 228 [A] 渡江·兀刺奪文必  
 [C] du jiang 'to cross over  
 a river'  
 [T] u-la-do-un-bi \*ula do'u-mbi  
 [N] 129-199-mbi
- 229 [A] 水湧·木克兀刺哈  
 [C] shui yan 'water has  
 overflowed'  
 [T] mu-ke-u-la-ha \*muke ula-ha  
 [N] 131-175-ha
- 230 [A] 山岩·阿力哈答  
 [C] shan yan 'cliff'  
 [T] a-li-ha-da \*ali hada  
 [M] hada 'cliff, crag'  
 [N] 130-230
- 231 [A] 苦水·過灼木克  
 [C] ku shui 'bitter water'  
 [T] go-šo-mu-ke \*gošo muke  
 [M] gosihon  
 [S] GosěhuN  
 [N] 231-131

- 232 [A] 山林·阿力不章  
 [C] shan lin 'mountain forest'  
 [T] a-li-bu-jiang \*ali bujan  
 [G] čah-puh (= puh-čah) (47)  
 [K] jabu?/buja?  
 [M] bujan  
 [S] bujan  
 [N] 130-232
- 233 [A] 山泉·阿力舍  
 [C] shan quan 'mountain spring'  
 [T] a-li-še \*ali še  
 [G] še-'oh (48)  
 [K] šere  
 [M] šeri  
 [S] seri, seri  
 [N] 130-233
- 234 [A] 山舍·阿力博  
 [C] shan she 'mountain hut'  
 [T] a-li-bo \*ali bo  
 [N] 130-525
- 235 [A] 路乾·住餓羅活  
 [C] lu gan 'the road is dry'  
 [T] ju-o-ho-lo \*ju oholo  
 [M] olho  
 [S] 'olěhě, 'olěhěN, 'olěhuN  
 [N] 133-235
- 236 [A] 城門·黑徹都哈  
 [C] cheng men 'gate in a  
 city wall'  
 [T] he-če-du-ha \*heče duka  
 [N] 136-557

- 237 [A] 水退·木克過提哈  
[C] shui tui 'the water  
has receded'  
[T] mu-ke-go-ti-ha \*muke goti-ha  
[M] goci- 'to fall (of  
water)'  
[N] 131-237-ha
- 238 [A] 皇城·斡兒多黑, 徹  
[C] huang cheng 'Imperial  
City'  
[T] o-r-do-he-če \*ordo heče  
[N] 547-136
- 239 [A] 水急·木克哈塔  
[C] shui ji 'water is  
rushing'  
[T] mu-ke-ha-ta \*muke hata  
[M] hatan 'hasty'  
[S] hatēN  
[N] 131-239
- 240 [A] 河灣·必刺莫答  
[C] he wan 'bend in a  
river'  
[T] bi-la-mo-da \*bira moda  
[M] mudan 'bend'  
[N] 137-240
- 241 [A] 路濕·住兀矢黑,  
[C] lu shi 'the road  
is wet'  
[T] ju-u-si-he \*ju ušihe  
[M] usihi- 'to be wet'  
[S] 'ušixě  
[N] 133-241

- 242 [A] 荒田·兀良哈兀失  
[C] huang tian 'barren field'  
[T] u-lang-ha-u-ši \*ulangga uši  
[M] no cognate  
[N] 242-141
- 243 [A] 山路·阿力往  
[C] shan lu 'mountain road'  
[T] a-li-ju \*ali ju  
[N] 130-133
- 244 [A] 皇牆·斡兒多黑, 徹  
[C] huang qiang 'wall  
around Imperial City'  
[T] o-r-do-he-če \*ordo heče  
[N] 547-136.  
Same as 238
- 245 [A] 高牆·得黑, 徹  
[C] gao qiang 'high walls'  
[T] de-he-če \*de heče  
[N] 31-136
- 246 [A] 牆倒·黑徹禿黑, 黑  
[C] qiang dao 'the wall  
has fallen down'  
[T] he-če-tu-he-he \*heče tuhe-he  
[N] 136-25-he
- 247 [A] 築牆·黑徹都必  
[C] zhu qiang 'to build a  
wall'  
[T] he-če-du-bi \*heče du-bi  
[M] du- 'to beat, hit'  
[N] 137-247-bi

- 248 [A] 飛塵·得勒不刺其  
[C] fei chen 'flying dust'  
[T] de-le-bu-la-ki \*de-re buraki  
[M] deye- 'to fly'  
[S] de'imě, diemě  
[N] 248-re-145
- 249 [A] 斷橋·忽伏倫刺答哈  
[C] duan qiao 'broken bridge'  
[T] hu-fu-lun-la-ja-ha \*hufurun laja-ha  
[M] cf. laksa- 'to break'  
[N] 142-249-ha
- 250 [A] 桑園·办馬刺牙發  
[C] sangyuan 'mulberry-tree garden'  
[T] i-ma-la-ya-fa \*imala yafa  
[G] yin-ma-lah (108)  
[K] inmala  
[M] nimalan 'mulberry'  
[S] nimalēN  
[N] 250-209
- 251 [A] 村店·哈慶忽答慶博  
[C] cun dian 'village shop'  
[T] ha-ša-hu-da-ša-bo \*gaša hudaša bo  
[N] 154-698-525
- 252 [A] 井深·忽提說迷  
[C] jing shen 'the well is deep'  
[T] hu-ti-šo-mi \*huti šomi  
[N] 134-153
- 253 [A] 大井·昂八忽提  
[C] da jing 'big well'  
[T] ang-ba-hu-ti \*amba huti  
[N] 1153-134

- 254 [A] 甜水井·當出木克忽提  
[C] tian shui jing 'sweet water well'  
[T] dang-ču-mu-ke-hu-ti \*danču muke huti  
[N] 1021-131-134
- 255 [A] 邊牆·者尺黑徹  
[C] bian qiang 'side of city wall'  
[T] je-či-he-če \*ječi heče  
[N] 24-136
- 256 [A] 淺河·迷察必刺  
[C] qian he 'shallow river'  
[T] mi-ča-bi-la \*miča bira  
[N] 147-137
- 257 [A] 海深·墨得說迷  
[C] hai shen 'the sea is deep'  
[T] me-de-šo-mi \*mede šomi  
[N] 138-153
- 258 [A] 高橋·得忽伏倫  
[C] gao qiao 'high bridge'  
[T] de-hu-fu-lun \*de hufurun  
[N] 31-142
- 259 [A] 平橋·捏徹忽伏倫  
[C] ping qiao 'level bridge'  
[T] nie-če-hu-fu-lun \*neče hufurun  
[N] 204-142
- 260 [A] 土橋·伯和忽伏倫  
[C] tu qiao 'earth bridge'  
[T] be-ho-hu-fu-lun \*beho hufurun  
[N] 140-142

- 261 [A] 泥沙·提扒灼兒窩  
 [C] ni sha 'mud [and] sand'  
 [T] ti-pa[ba]-jo-r-o \*tipa/tiba joro  
 [M] cifahan 'viscous mud,  
 mud used as plaster'  
 [N] 261-144
- 262 [A] 塵沙·不刺其灼兒窩  
 [C] chen sha 'dust [and] sand'  
 [T] bu-la-ki-jo-r-o \*bulaki joro  
 [N] 145-144
- 263 [A] 灰塵·伏冷吉不刺其  
 [C] hui chen 'ash [and] dust'  
 [T] fu-leng-gi-bu-la-ki \*fulenggi buraki  
 [N] 146-145
- 264 [A] 石井·兀黑忽提  
 [C] shi jing 'stone well'  
 [T] u-he-hu-ti \*uhe huti  
 [N] 132-134

## SECTION THREE - TIME AND SEASONS

- 265 [A] 春·捏捏里  
 [C] chun 'spring'  
 [T] nie-nie-li \*nienieri  
 [G] nieh-nieh-'oh-lin (73)  
 [K] niyenyen erin  
 [M] niyengniyeri  
 [S] ni'ianǝni'iari
- 266 [A] 夏·莊里  
 [C] xia 'summer'  
 [T] juang-li \*juanri  
 [G] ču-'a 'oh-lin (74)  
 [K] juwa erin  
 [M] juwari  
 [S] jiuari
- 267 [A] 秋·博羅里  
 [C] qiu 'autumn'  
 [T] bo-lo-ri \*bolori  
 [G] puh-lo-'oh-lin (75)  
 [K] bolo erin  
 [M] bolori  
 [S] bolori
- 268 [A] 冬·秃額里  
 [C] dong 'winter'  
 [T] tu-e-li \*tu'eri  
 [G] t'uh-'oh-'oh-lin (76)  
 [K] tuwe erin  
 [M] tuweri  
 [S] tiuri

- 269 [A] 年·塞  
 [C] nian 'year'  
 [T] se \*se  
 [G] seh-koh (82)  
 [K] sege  
 [M] se  
 [S] see  
 [N] M. se, S. see refer  
 to years of age
- 270 [A] 節·哈失  
 [C] jie 'season, festival'  
 [T] ha-ši \*haši  
 [G] hah-č'eng-yin (80)  
 [K] hačin 'term'  
 [M] cf. hacin 'the fifteenth  
 day of the first month;  
 the lantern festival'
- 271 [A] 時·客頤力  
 [C] shi 'time'  
 [T] e-li \*eri  
 [M] erin  
 [S] 'eriN
- 272 [A] 早·替麻里  
 [C] zao 'early'  
 (here: morning)  
 [T] ti-ma-li \*timari  
 [M] cimari 'morning'  
 [S] cimarě 'tomorrow'
- 273 [A] 夜·多博力  
 [C] ye 'night'  
 [T] do-bo-li \*dobori  
 [G] to-lo-woh (78)  
 [K] dorowo  
 [M] dobori  
 [S] diověřě

- 274 [A] 寒·矢木兀  
 [C] han 'cold'  
 [T] ši-mu-wu \*šimu'u  
 [M] no cognate  
 [N] In the Awanokuni text  
 this entry is written  
 矢木兀 ši-mu-wu,  
 but in the Seikadō text  
 矢木克 ši-mu-ke;  
 in 338 and 345, this  
 word is also written  
ši-mu-ke. The word  
 for 'hot' in no. 276  
 is written ha-lu-u,  
 so \*halu'u, parallel  
 with \*šimu'u. Cf. M.  
šahuran 'to be cold'
- 275 [A] 晚·樣的哈  
 [C] wan 'evening'  
 (here: 'it has become  
 evening')  
 [T] yang-di-ha \*yamdi-ha  
 [G] yen-tih-hung (98)  
 [K] yamdihun  
 [M] yamji 'evening'  
 yamji- 'to become evening'  
 [S] yaměji
- 276 [A] 熱·哈魯兀  
 [C] re 'hot'  
 [T] ha-lu-u \*halu'u  
 [G] hah-lu-wen (92)  
 [K] halgun  
 [M] halhûn  
 [S] halěhuN  
 [N] in 344 and 1007,  
 this word is written  
 ha-lu, so \*halu or  
 \*hal[h]u



- 277 [A] 冷·廈忽魯  
 [C] leng 'cold'  
 [T] ša-hu-lu \*šahuru  
 [G] cf. Šen-wen (91)  
 [K] šingun  
 [M] šahurun  
 [S] šahuruN, sahurun  
 [N] the G. and K. forms  
 are related to M.  
singkeyen 'chilly'
- 278 [A] 明日·替麻哈能吉  
 [C] ming ri 'tomorrow'  
 [T] ti-ma-ha-neng-gi \*timahanenggi  
 [M] cimaha inenggi
- 279 [A] 晨·不答額力  
 [C] chen 'morning'  
 [T] bu-da-e-li  
 [M] buda 'rice, food'  
 (cf. 1008)  
 eri 'time'  
 (cf. 271)  
 [N] the expression  
 literally means  
 'food time'  
 \*buda eri
- 280 [A] 昨日·失塞能吉  
 [C] zuo ri 'yesterday'  
 [T] ši-se-neng-gi \*ši[k]senenggi  
 [M] sikse  
 [S] cikěsee, cekěsee
- 281 [A] 今日·客額能吉  
 [C] jin ri 'today'  
 [T] e-neng-gi \*enenggi  
 [M] enenggi  
 [S] eněņě

- 282 [A] 出月·别阿壳提黑  
 [C] chu yue 'the moon  
 has risen'  
 [T] bie-a-tu-ti-he \*bie'a tuti-he  
 [N] note the transcription  
 bie-a, so \*bie'a or  
 perhaps \*bi'a (though  
 the transcription could  
 have represented such  
 a form as bi-a or bi-ya.  
 Presumably this is the  
 stressed form of the word;  
 usually it is \*bie.  
 6-50-he
- 283 [A] 後日·跳魯能吉  
 [C] hou ri 'the day after  
 tomorrow'  
 [T] tiao-lu-neng-gi \*tiaorunenggi  
 [M] coro  
 [S] ciorě
- 284 [A] 今年·客勒阿捏  
 [C] jin nian 'this year'  
 [T] e-le-a-nie \*ere anie  
 [G] 'a-nieh (70)  
 [K] aniya  
 [M] ere 'this'  
 aniya 'year'  
 [S] 'erě 'this'  
 'ani 'year'
- 285 [A] 前日·塔能吉  
 [C] qian ri 'the day  
 before yesterday'  
 [T] ta-neng-gi \*tanenggi  
 [M] cananggi  
 [S] cianěņě, caněņě  
 [N] note the unusual  
 development ta > ca

- 286 [A] 後年·跳魯阿捏  
 [C] hou nian 'year after next'  
 [T] tiao-lu-a-nie \*tiaoru anie  
 [N] 283-284
- 287 [A] 前月·住勒別  
 [C] qian yue 'the month before last'  
 [T] ĵu-le-bie \*ĵule bie  
 [M] cf. julesi, juleri 'before'  
 [N] 287-6
- 288 [A] 前年·塔阿捏  
 [C] qian nian 'the year before last'  
 [T] ta-a-nie \*ta anie  
 [M] cf. ca- in cala, cargi, canenggi etc.  
 [N] 288-284
- 289 [A] 明年·亦速阿捏  
 [C] ming nian 'next year'  
 [T] i-su-a-nie \*is[h]u anie  
 [M] ishun aniya  
 [N] 289-284
- 290 [A] 舊年·佛阿捏  
 [C] jiu nian 'years gone by'  
 [T] fo-a-nie \*fo anie  
 [N] 196-284

- 291 [A] 去年·度察阿捏  
 [C] qu nian 'last year'  
 [T] du-ča-a-nie \*duča anie  
 [M] duleke aniya  
 [N] perhaps -ča- is a mistake? H. Franke (1982) suggests \*duča might represent a form related to M. tuci-; 'to exit, to go out, to depart, to leave'. In this case the J. form might be a calque based on the Chinese expression.
- 292 [A] 一年·額木阿捏  
 [C] yi nian 'one year'  
 [T] e-mu-a-nie \*emu anie  
 [N] 1109-284
- 293 [A] 千年·命哈阿捏  
 [C] qian nian 'one thousand years'  
 [T] ming-ha-a-nie \*mingga anie  
 [N] 1128-284
- 294 [A] 百年·倘古阿捏  
 [C] bai nian 'one hundred years'  
 [T] tang-gu-a-nie \*tanggu anie  
 [N] 1127-284
- 295 [A] 十年·莊阿捏  
 [C] shi nian 'ten years'  
 [T] ĵuang-a-nie \*ĵuan anie  
 [N] 1118-284

- 296 [A] 萬年·禿墨阿捏  
 [C] wan nian 'ten thousand years'  
 [T] tu-me-a-nie \*tume anie  
 [N] 1129-284
- 297 [A] 正月·寒別  
 [C] zhengyue 'first month'  
 [T] se-bie \*se bie  
 [M] cf. aniya biya 'the first month'  
 [N] presumably se 'year (of age)' is a mistake for anie, or perhaps the two terms were interchangeable in usage. 267-284
- 298 [A] 二月·拙別  
 [C] eryue 'second month'  
 [T] yue-bie \*yue bie  
 [N] 1110-6
- 299 [A] 三月·亦郎別  
 [C] sanyue 'third month'  
 [T] i-lang-bie \*ilan bie  
 [N] 1111-6
- 300 [A] 四月·對因別  
 [C] siyue 'fourth month'  
 [T] dui-in-bie \*du'in bie  
 [N] 1112-6
- 301 [A] 五月·順答別  
 [C] wuyue 'fifth month'  
 [T] šun-ja-bie \*šunja bie  
 [N] 1113-6

- 302 [A] 六月·寧谷別  
 [C] liuyue 'sixth month'  
 [T] ning-gu-bie \*ninggu bie  
 [N] 1114-6
- 303 [A] 七月·納答別  
 [C] qiyue 'seventh month'  
 [T] na-da-bie \*nada bie  
 [N] 1115-6
- 304 [A] 八月·答空別  
 [C] bayue 'eighth month'  
 [T] ja-kung-bie \*jakun bie  
 [N] 1116-6
- 305 [A] 九月·兀答別  
 [C] jiuyue 'ninth month'  
 [T] u-yung-bie \*uyun bie  
 [N] 1117-6
- 306 [A] 十月·莊別  
 [C] shiyue 'tenth month'  
 [T] juang-bie \*juan bie  
 [N] 1118-6
- 307 [A] 十一月·莊額木別  
 [C] shiyiyue 'eleventh month'  
 [T] juang-e-mu-bie \*juan emu bie  
 [N] 1118-1109-6
- 308 [A] 十二月·拙兒歡別  
 [C] shieryue 'twelfth month'  
 [T] yue-r-hon-bie \*yuerhon bie  
 [G] či-rh-huan (647)  
 [K] yirhon  
 [M] jorgon 'twelfth month'  
 [S] jorěhěN bīaa, jorěhuN bīaa  
 [N] 308-6

- 309 [A] 半月·都魯阿別  
 [C] banyue 'half month'  
 [T] du-lu-a-bie  
 [M] dulga 'half, half-filled' \*dulu'a bie  
 [N] 309-6
- 310 [A] 夜長·多博力過迷  
 [C] ye chang 'the night  
 is long'  
 [T] do-bo-li-go-mi \*dobori go[ll]mi  
 [N] 273-150
- 311 [A] 幾夜·兀暇忽多博力  
 [C] ji ye 'how many  
 nights/several  
 nights'  
 [T] u-hia-hu-do-bo-ri \*uhiahu dobori  
 [M] no cognate cf.  
 udu 'how many'  
 [S] cf. 'udu  
 [N] cf. 312  
 311-273
- 312 [A] 幾日·兀暇忽能吉  
 [C] ji ri 'how many  
 days/several  
 days'  
 [T] u-hia-hu-neng-gi \*uhiahu nenggi  
 [N] note contracted  
 form of \*inenngi  
 'day'  
 311-29
- 313 [A] 撞鐘·中東必  
 [C] zhuang zhong 'to  
 strike a bell'  
 [T] jung-dung-bi \*jung du-mbi  
 [N] 562-810-mbi

- 314 [A] 發擂·痛克都必  
 [C] fa lei 'to beat  
 a drum'  
 [T] tung-ke-du-bi \*tungke du-bi  
 [N] 562-810-bi
- 315 [A] 一更·額本經佛  
 [C] yi geng 'the first  
 watch of the night'  
 [T] e-mu-ging-fo \*emu ging fo  
 [M] ging 'night-watch'  
 ( < Chinese)  
 [N] 1109-315-56
- 316 [A] 二更·拙經佛  
 [C] er geng 'the second  
 watch of the night'  
 [T] jue-ging-fo \*jue ging fo  
 [N] 1110-315-56
- 317 [A] 三更·亦郎經佛  
 [C] san geng 'the third  
 watch of the night'  
 [T] i-lang-ging-fo \*ilan ging fo  
 [N] 1111-315-56
- 318 [A] 四更·對因經佛  
 [C] si geng 'the fourth  
 watch of the night'  
 [T] du-in-ging-fo \*du'in ging fo  
 [N] 1112-315-56
- 319 [A] 五更·順答經佛  
 [C] wu geng 'the fifth  
 watch of the night'  
 [T] sun-ja-ging-fo \*sunja ging fo  
 [N] 1113-315-56

- 320 [A] 初一日・亦扯能吉  
 [C] chuyi ri 'the first  
       day of the month'  
 [T] i-če-neng-gi \*iče nenggi  
 [N] 192-29
- 321 [A] 十五日・托伏能吉  
 [C] shiwu ri 'fifteenth  
       day of the month'  
 [T] to-fu-neng-gi \*tofu nenggi  
 [G] t'oh-puh-huan  
 yih-neng-kih (86)  
 [K] tobohon inengi  
 [M] tofohon inenggi  
 [S] tofěhěN, tofuhuN
- 322 [A] 二十日・幹里能吉  
 [C] ershi ri 'twentieth  
       day (of the month)'  
 [T] o-li-neng-gi \*ori nenggi  
 [N] 1119-29
- 323 [A] 三十日・答哈能吉  
 [C] sanshi ri 'thirtieth  
       day (of the month)'  
 [T] ĵa-ha-neng-gi \*ĵaka nenggi  
 [M] jaka 'intermediate  
       space, gap,  
       interstice'  
 [N] this refers to the last  
       day of the month in the  
       lunar calendar
- 324 [A] 子時・勝革力 額力  
 [C] zi shi '11 pm - 1 am'  
 [T] šing-ge-li-e-li \*šinggeri eri  
 [N] 416-271

- 325 [A] 丑時・亦哈額力  
 [C] chou shi '1 pm - 3 am'  
 [T] i-ha-e-li \*iha eri  
 [N] 412-271
- 326 [A] 寅時・塔思哈額力  
 [C] yin shi '3 am - 5 am'  
 [T] ta-s-ha-e-li \*tasha eri  
 [N] 407-271
- 327 [A] 卯時・姑麻洪額力  
 [C] mao shi '5 am - 7 am'  
 [T] gu-ma-hung-e-li \*gu[1]mahun eri  
 [N] 420-271
- 328 [A] 辰時・木都力額力  
 [C] chen shi '7 am - 9 am'  
 [T] mu-du-li-e-li \*muduri eri  
 [N] 406-271
- 329 [A] 巳時・妹黑額力  
 [C] si shi '9 am - 11 am'  
 [T] mei-he-e-li \*meihe eri  
 [N] 425-271
- 330 [A] 午時・亦能 額力  
 [C] wu shi '11 am - 1 pm'  
 [T] i-neng-[gi]-e-li \*inenggi eri  
 [M] cf. inenggi dulin 'noon'  
 [N] -gi- is missing from the  
       Awanokuni text, but is  
       supplied here on the basis  
       of the Seikadō text, as  
       well as many examples in  
       other entries  
       29-271

- 331 [A] 未時・亦木阿客額力  
 [C] wei shi '1 pm - 3 pm'  
 [T] i-mu-a-e-li \*imu'a eri  
 [M] imahu 'ibex' (Hauer);  
 'wild sheep' (Gabelenz);  
 'goral (Naemorhedus goral)'  
 (Norman); cf. Mongol  
 imaya 'goat'. (Cf. Ligeti,  
 "Les inscriptions de Tyr..."  
 p. 11)  
 331-271
- 332 [A] 申時・莫虐額利  
 [C] shen shi '3 pm - 5 pm'  
 [T] mo-nio-e-li \*monio eri  
 [N] 424-271
- 333 [A] 酉時・替課額利  
 [C] you shi '5 pm - 7 pm'  
 [T] ti-ko-e-li \*tiko eri  
 [N] 421-271
- 334 [A] 戌時・因答忽額利  
 [C] xu shi '7 pm - 9 pm'  
 [T] in-da-hu-e-li \*indahu eri  
 [N] 413-271
- 335 [A] 亥時・兀甲額利  
 [C] hai shi '9 pm - 11 pm'  
 [T] u-gia-e-li \*u[ll]gia eri  
 [N] 414-271
- 336 [A] 夜短・多博力佛活羅  
 [C] ye duan 'the night  
 is short'  
 [T] do-bo-li-fo-ho-lo \*dobori foholo  
 [N] 274-151

- 337 [A] 連日・額塞能吉  
 [C] lian ri 'one day after  
 another; days on end;  
 day after day'  
 [T] e-se-neng-gi \*ese nenggi  
 [M] ese 'these'  
 [S] 'esě  
 [N] 337-29
- 338 [A] 春寒・捏捏里失木克  
 [C] chun han 'spring cold'  
 [T] nie-nie-li-si-mu-ke \*nienieri šimuke  
 [N] cf. form \*šimuke with  
 \*šimu'u (274) above  
 265-274
- 339 [A] 新年・亦車阿捏  
 [C] xin nian 'new year'  
 [T] i-če-a-nie \*iče anie  
 [N] 192-284
- 340 [A] 春暖・捏捏里都魯兀  
 [C] chun nuan 'spring warmth'  
 [T] nie-nie-li-du-lu-u \*nienieri dulu'u  
 [G] tu-lu-ken (94)  
 [K] dulgun  
 [M] no cognate  
 [N] 265-340
- 341 [A] 夏日長・莊里受溫過迷  
 [C] xia ri chang 'the summer  
 days are long'  
 [T] juang-li-šeu-un-go-mi \*juanri še'un  
 [N] 266-5-149  
 go[ll]mi

- 342 [A] 秋風起·博羅里額都得得黑  
 [C] qiu feng qi 'in autumn,  
 the wind rises'  
 [T] bo-lo-li-e-du-de-de-he \*bolori edu  
de[k]de-he  
 [N] 267-26-113-he
- 343 [A] 秋涼·博羅里塞克空  
 [C] qiu liang 'autumn cool'  
 [T] bo-lo-li-se-r-[kung] \*bolori serkun  
 [M] serguwen  
 [S] šerǝxuN, serǝxuN  
 [N] there is no -kung in  
 the Awanokuni text,  
 but is supplied here  
 on the basis of the  
Seikadō text
- 344 [A] 夏熱·莊里哈魯  
 [C] xia re 'summer heat'  
 [T] juang-li-ha-lu \*juanri halu  
 [N] note the shortened  
 form of \*halu, cf.  
 276 above \*halu'u
- 345 [A] 冬寒·禿額里失木克  
 [C] dong han 'winter cold'  
 [T] tu-e-li-si-mu-ke \*tu'eri šimu'u  
 (šimuke?)  
 [N] the Awanokuni text  
 has 失木兀 ši-bu-wu,  
-bu- presumably being a  
 mistake for 木 -mu-; the  
Seikadō text has 失木兀  
ši-mu-wu; cf. the comments  
 on this word (274, 338) above.

## SECTION FOUR - FLOWERS AND TREES

- 346 [A] 花·亦刺  
 [C] hua 'flower'  
 [T] i-la \*il[h]a  
 [G] yih-leh-hah (118)  
 [K] ilha  
 [M] ilha  
 [S] 'ilǝhaa
- 347 [A] 果·禿子黑  
 [C] guo 'fruit'  
 [T] tu-yu-he \*tuyuhe  
 [G] t'uh-woh-hei (124,125)  
 [K] tuwehe  
 [M] tubihe  
 [S] tiufǝxi, tiuvǝxii
- 348 [A] 梨·失魯  
 [C] li 'pear'  
 [T] ši-lu \*šil[h]u  
 [G] ših-lu (112)  
 [K] šilu  
 [M] šulhe  
 [S] šulǝxee, sulǝxee, suluxuu
- 349 [A] 李·佛約  
 [C] li 'plum'  
 [T] fu-yo \*fuyo  
 [G] [fu]-yoh-moh (107)  
 [K] foyo mo  
 [M] foyoro 'plum'  
 [N] G. 107 reads čuen-yoh-  
moh; čuen is a  
 transcription error  
 for fu

- 350 [A] 索·兒兒  
 [C] zao 'date'  
 [T] zao-r  
 [N] < Chinese  
\*zaor
- 351 [A] 杏·貴  
 [C] xing 'apricot'  
 [T] gui  
 [G] kuei-fah-lah (110)  
 [K] guwifala?/guilafa?  
 [M] guilehe  
 [S] gulixii  
 [N] in G. 110, fah and lah may be inverted, in view of the M. form. The J. form seems truncated; it appears in this form also in entry 388  
\*gui
- 352 [A] 木·莫  
 [C] mu 'tree'  
 [T] mo  
 [G] moh [muh] (117)  
 [K] mo  
 [M] moo  
 [S] moo  
\*mo
- 353 [A] 采·素吉  
 [C] cai 'vegetable'  
 [T] su-gi  
 [G] so-kih (524)  
 [K] sogi  
 [M] sogi  
 [S] siogē, siogi  
\*sugi
- 354 [A] 菲菜·塞苦勒  
 [C] jiucai 'scallion'  
 [T] se-ku-le  
 [M] sengkule  
 [S] semēkēlē  
\*sekule

- 355 [A] 葱·額魯  
 [C] cong 'leek'  
 [T] e-lu  
 [M] elu  
 [S] 'ulu  
\*elu
- 356 [A] 瓜·恨克  
 [C] gua 'melon'  
 [T] hen-ke  
 [G] hei-k'oh (131)  
 [K] heke (henke?)  
 [M] hengke  
 [S] keNkee, xeNkee  
\*hengke
- 357 [A] 茄·哈失  
 [C] qie 'eggplant'  
 [T] ha-ši  
 [M] hasi  
 [S] hašii  
\*haši
- 358 [A] 豆·壳力  
 [C] dou 'bean'  
 [T] tu-li  
 [M] turi  
 [S] tiurii  
 [N] in the Awanokuni text, the second character is -gi, but the form in -li appears in entry 404 and is correct, based on the M. form  
\*turi
- 359 [A] 米·伯勒  
 [C] mi 'uncooked rice'  
 [T] be-le  
 [G] puh-leh (530)  
 [K] bule  
 [M] bele  
 [S] bele  
\*bele



- 360 [A] 稻·洪帕  
 [C] dao 'rice [still in  
 the field]'  
 [T] hung-pa \*hungpa?  
 [M] handu 'rice-plant'  
 [N] perhaps the character  
 -pa is a mistake

- 361 [A] 根·荅  
 [C] gen 'root'  
 [T] da \*da  
 [G] tah (120)  
 [K] da  
 [M] da  
 [S] daa

- 362 [A] 葉·阿浦哈  
 [C] ye 'leaf'  
 [T] a-pu-ha \*apuha?  
 [G] 'a-puh-hah (119)  
 [K] abuha  
 [M] abdaha  
 [S] afëhë  
 [N] the character 浦 is  
 read pu, however  
 it may represent  
 bu here, as the  
 phoneme [p] is  
 very rare, even  
 non-existent in  
 Jurchen of the  
 Ming period.

- 363 [A] 枝·哈兒哈  
 [C] zhi 'branch'  
 [T] ha-r-ha \*garga  
 [M] gargan  
 [S] Garëhën

- 364 [A] 柳樹·速黑莫  
 [C] liu shu 'willow tree'  
 [T] su-he-mo \*suhe mo  
 [M] suhai moo 'tamarisk'

- 365 [A] 蘑菇·費黑  
 [C] mogu 'mushroom'  
 [T] fihe \*fihe  
 [M] no cognate

- 366 [A] 木耳·尚察  
 [C] mu'er 'wood fungus'  
 [T] šang-ča \*šanča  
 [M] sanča

- 367 [A] 核桃·忽書  
 [C] hetao 'walnut'  
 [T] hu-šu \*hušu  
 [G] huh-šu (129)  
 [K] hušu  
 [M] hûsiha 'wild walnut'

- 368 [A] 松子·忽力  
 [C] songzi 'pine kernel'  
 [T] hu-li \*huri  
 [G] huh-li (127)  
 [K] huri  
 [M] hûri

- 369 [A] 蒲桃·莫戮幹  
 [C] putao 'grape'  
 [T] mo-č'o-o \*moč'o'o  
 [G] meh-č'uh (130)  
 [K] mecu  
 [M] mucu  
 [N] the final -o may  
 represent a long  
 vowel, or may be  
 a mistake

- 370 [A] 榛子·矢矢  
 [C] zhenzi 'hazelnut'  
 [T] ši-ši \*šiši  
 [G] ši-ši (128)  
 [K] šiši  
 [M] sisi
- 371 [A] 山定兒·矢刺  
 [C] shandinger 'a type of  
 plant'  
 [T] ši-la \*šira  
 [N] Franke (1982) points out  
 that shandinger might  
 be the same word as  
 山靛 shandian  
 (Morohashi Vol 4 207/11;  
 215/1) 'a plant from  
 which a blue dye is  
 obtained, similar to  
 indigo'.  
 [M] Franke suggests siraca,  
 'Chinese boxthorn;  
 a yellow dye made from  
 the rotten bark of the  
 tree Quercus bungeana  
 (Norman)
- 372 [A] 榆樹·亥刺莫  
 [C] yu shu 'elm'  
 [T] hai-la-mo \*haila mo  
 [G] hai-lah (109)  
 [K] haila  
 [M] hailan  
 [S] hialiN  
 [N] 372-353
- 373 [A] 蕎麥·墨勒  
 [C] qiaomai 'buckwheat'  
 [T] me-le \*mere  
 [M] mere

- 374 [A] 蘿蔔·念木竹  
 [C] luobo 'turnip'  
 [T] nien-mu-ju \*nienmuju  
 [G] nieh-ču (132)  
 [K] niyaju  
 [M] no cognate
- 375 [A] 松樹·換多莫  
 [C] song shu 'pine tree'  
 [T] hon-do-mo \*hondo/holdo mo  
 [G] huo-to-moh (104)  
 [K] holdo mo  
 [M] holdon  
 [N] 375-352
- 376 [A] 草·幹兒火  
 [C] cao 'grass'  
 [T] o-r-ho \*orho  
 [G] woh-rh-huo (116)  
 [K] orho  
 [M] orho  
 [S] 'orëhë
- 377 [A] 紅花·伏良亦刺  
 [C] hong hua 'red flower'  
 [T] fu-liang-i-ha \*ful[g]ian il[h]a  
 [N] 1100-346
- 378 [A] 芥菜·哈兒希素吉  
 [C] jiecai 'mustard'  
 [T] ha-r-hi-su-gi \*harhi sugi  
 [M] hargi  
 [N] 378-353

- 379 [A] 五味子·迷速忽廈  
[C] wuweizi 'type of medicine'  
[the seeds of the schizandra chinensis - used as a tonic]  
[T] mi-su-hu-ša \*misu huša  
[M] misu hûsiha
- 380 [A] 人參·幹兒火荅  
[C] rensheng 'ginseng'  
[T] o-r-do-da \*ordoda  
[M] ordoda  
[N] cf. orho 'grass' 376  
da 'root' 361
- 381 [A] 綿花·苦不  
[C] mianhua 'cotton'  
[T] ku-bu \*kubu  
[M] kubun  
[S] kuvuN  
[N] the text has 綿 ,  
not 棉 .
- 382 [A] 細辛·矢矢們荅  
[C] xi xin 'type of  
plant (asarum sieboldi)  
[T] ši-ši-men-da \*šišimen da  
[M] no cognate  
[N] šišimen is possibly  
from Chinese xi xin;  
da means 'root'.  
(cf. 361)
- 383 [A] 冬瓜·昂八恨克  
[C] donggua 'type of melon'  
(benincasa cerifera)  
[T] ang-ba-hen-ke \*amba hengke  
[N] the J. is literally  
'big melon'  
1153-356

- 384 [A] 槐樹·過羅莫  
[C] huai shu 'locust tree'  
(sophora japonica)  
[T] go-lo-mo \*goro mo  
[M] goro 'a tree of the  
Sophora family'  
[N] 384-352
- 385 [A] 栗木·忽廈莫  
[C] li mu 'chestnut tree'  
[T] hu-ša-mo \*huša mo  
[M] hûsiha 'wild walnut'  
[N] cf. 368 hušu  
385-352
- 386 [A] 結果·兀力黑  
[C] jie guo 'to bear fruit'  
[T] u-li-he \*uri-he  
[M] ure- 'to become ripe'  
[S] 'urēmē, 'urumē
- 387 [A] 山里紅·翁浦  
[C] shanlihong 'hill-haw'  
[T] ung-pu \*umpu  
[M] umpu
- 388 [A] 杏花·貴办刺  
[C] xing hua 'apricot  
blossoms'  
[T] gui-i-la \*gui il[h]a  
[N] 351-346
- 389 [A] 白楊樹·發哈莫  
[C] baiyangshu 'poplar'  
[T] fa-ha-mo \*fa[l]ha mo  
[M] fulha  
[N] 389-352

- 390 [A] 樹枝·莫哈兒哈  
[C] shu zhi 'branch [of  
a tree]'  
[T] mo-ha-r-ha \*mo garga  
[N] 352-363
- 391 [A] 檀樹·金得黑莫  
[C] tanshu 'sandlewood tree'  
[T] gin-de-he-mo \*gindehe mo  
[M] cf. ayan gintehe 'a tree  
with green bark, small  
leaves and fine wood --  
good for making bows and  
knife handles' (Norman).  
Franke (1982) points out that  
the sandlewood tree does  
not grow in Manchuria,  
and here the term tanshu  
must refer to some other  
kind of tree
- 392 [A] 蒿芭菜·納莫素吉  
[C] woju cai 'lettuce'  
[T] na-mo-su-gi \*namo sugi  
[M] namu  
[N] 392-353
- 393 [A] 小米·者伯勒  
[C] xiao mi 'millet'  
[T] je-be-le \*je bele  
[M] je  
[S] jee bele  
[N] 393-359
- 394 [A] 莧菜·非冷素吉  
[C] xian cai 'spinach'  
[T] fi-leng-su-gi \*filen sugi  
[M] fiyelen  
[N] 394-353

- 395 [A] 鹹菜·納撒素吉  
[C] xian cai 'pickled  
vegetables'  
[T] na-sa-su-gi \*nasa sugi  
[M] nasan  
[N] 395-353
- 396 [A] 王瓜·素羊恨克  
[C] wang gua [= huang gua]  
'cucumber'  
[T] su-yang-hen-ke \*suyan hengke  
[N] 1101-356
- 397 [A] 苦瓜·力瓦恨克  
[C] ku gua 'bitter melon'  
(a small, yellow gourd)  
[T] li-wa-hen-ke \*liwa hengke  
[M] lugiya hengke 'bitter  
melon (Momordica  
charantia)' (Norman)  
[N] 397-356
- 398 [A] 黃米·黃蛇伯勒  
[C] huang mi 'yellow rice;  
coarse rice'  
[T] fi-se-be-le \*fise bele  
[M] fisihe  
[N] 398-359
- 399 [A] 糜給米·挂你伯勒  
[C] lin ji mi 'rice kept  
in a granary'  
[T] gua-ni-be-le \*guan-i bele  
[N] guan < Chinese. The  
J. expression means  
'the official's rice'

- 400 [A] 梨花・矢魯办刺  
 [C] li hua 'pear blossom'  
 [T] §i-lu-i-la \*§il[h]u il[h]a  
 [N] 348-346
- 401 [A] 松花・忽力办刺  
 [C] song hua 'pine blossoms'  
 [T] hu-li-i-la \*huri il[h]a  
 [N] 368-346
- 402 [A] 樹根・莫答  
 [C] shu gen 'root of a tree'  
 [T] mo-da \*mo da  
 [N] 352-361
- 403 [A] 海菜・墨得素吉  
 [C] hai cai 'edible seaweed'  
 [T] me-de-su-gi \*mede sugi  
 [N] 138-353
- 404 [A] 黄豆・素羊壳力  
 [C] huang dou 'soya bean'  
 [T] su-yang-tu-ri \*suyan turi  
 [N] 1101-358
- 405 [A] 糠・阿刺  
 [C] kang 'chaff'  
 [T] a-la \*ara  
 [M] ara

## SECTION FIVE - BIRDS AND ANIMALS

- 406 [A] 龍・木都力  
 [C] long 'dragon'  
 [T] mu-du-li \*muduri  
 [G] muh-tu-rh (135)  
 [K] mudur  
 [M] muduri  
 [S] muduri
- 407 [A] 虎・塔思哈  
 [C] hu 'tiger'  
 [T] ta-s-ha \*tasha  
 [G] t'ah-si-hah (136)  
 [K] tasha  
 [M] tasha  
 [S] tasəhə
- 408 [A] 象・速發  
 [C] xiang 'elephant'  
 [T] su-fa \*sufa  
 [G] su-fah (140)  
 [M] sufan  
 [S] suvaN, sufaN
- 409 [A] 駝・忒木革  
 [C] tuo 'camel'  
 [T] te-mu-ge \*temuge  
 [G] t'eh-'oh (137)  
 [K] temge  
 [M] temen  
 [S] teməN  
 [N] cf. Mongol temegen

- 410 [A] 馬·木力  
 [C] ma 'horse'  
 [T] mu-li \*muri  
 [G] mu-lin (138)  
 [K] morin  
 [S] moriN
- 411 [A] 牛·办哈  
 [C] niu 'ox'  
 [T] i-ha \*iha  
 [G] wei-han (143)  
 [K] ihan  
 [M] ihan  
 [S] 'ihaN
- 412 [A] 羊·賀泥  
 [C] yang 'sheep'  
 [T] ho-ni \*honi  
 [G] huo-ni (144)  
 [K] honi  
 [M] honin  
 [S] honiN
- 413 [A] 犬·因答忽  
 [C] quan 'dog'  
 [T] in-da-hu \*indahu  
 [G] yin-tah-hung (147)  
 [K] indahun  
 [M] indahûn  
 [S] yoněhuN, 'iněhuN
- 414 [A] 猪·兀甲  
 [C] zhu 'pig'  
 [T] u-gia \*u[ll]gia  
 [G] wuh-li-yen (162)  
 [K] uliyan  
 [M] ulgiyan  
 [S] vëlēgiaN  
 [N] in G. 162, 黑 -hei-  
 has been amended  
 to 里 -li-.

- 415 [A] 猫·哈出  
 [C] mao 'cat'  
 [T] ha-ču \*haču?/kaču?  
 [M] cf. kesike  
 [S] cf. kešěkee, kešikee
- 416 [A] 鼠·勝革力  
 [C] shu 'rat'  
 [T] šing-ge-li \*šinggeri  
 [G] šen-koh (149)  
 [K] šinge  
 [M] singgeri  
 [S] šiněřě, šiněři
- 417 [A] 鹿·布兀  
 [C] lu 'deer'  
 [T] bu-u \*bu'u  
 [G] puh-ku (146)  
 [K] bugu  
 [M] buhû  
 [S] bohě  
 [N] cf. Mongol buyu
- 418 [A] 獐·矢兒哈  
 [C] zhang 'roe buck'  
 [T] ši-r-ha \*širga  
 [G] ši-rh-hah (154)  
 [K] širha  
 [M] sirga
- 419 [A] 狍·舊  
 [C] pao 'species of roe'  
 [T] giu \*giu  
 [M] gio 'roe deer'

- 420 [A] 兔·姑麻洪  
 [C] tu 'hare'  
 [T] gu-ma-hung \*gu[l]mahun  
 [G] ku-lu-ma-hai (150)  
 [K] gulmahai  
 [M] gŭlmahun  
 [S] GuləmahuN  
 [N] the G. and K. forms  
 may be in the  
 genitive.
- 421 [A] 鷄·替課  
 [C] ji 'chicken, cock'  
 [T] ti-ko \*tiko  
 [G] t'i-huo (161)  
 [K] tiko  
 [M] coko  
 [S] coqoo
- 422 [A] 鵞·牛捏哈  
 [C] e 'goose'  
 [T] niu-nie-ha \*niunieha  
 [G] nen[nun]-nieh-hah (159)  
 [K] niyonniyaha  
 [M] niongniyaaha  
 [S] niuŋəniahə
- 423 [A] 鴨·捏黑  
 [C] ya 'duck'  
 [T] nie-he \*niehe  
 [G] mieh-hei (160)  
 [K] miyehe  
 [M] niyehe  
 [S] 'iixe
- 424 [A] 猴·莫虐  
 [C] hou 'monkey'  
 [T] monio \*monio  
 [G] moh-nen[nun] (152)  
 [M] monio  
 [S] moni

- 425 [A] 蛇·妹黑  
 [C] she 'snake'  
 [T] mei-he \*meihe  
 [G] mei-hei (165)  
 [K] meihe  
 [M] meihe  
 [S] me'ixə
- 426 [A] 豹·矢魯兀  
 [C] bao 'leopard'  
 [T] ši-lu-u \*šilu'u  
 [M] silun 'lynx'  
 [N] cf. Mongol  
 silüğüsün
- 427 [A] 虫·亦迷哈  
 [C] chong 'insect'  
 [T] i-mi-ha \*imiha  
 [G] wuh-mieh-hah (166)  
 [K] umiyaha  
 [M] imiyaha, umiyaha  
 [S] imahə; nimahə 'worm'
- 428 [A] 燕·矢别忽  
 [C] yan 'swallow'  
 [T] ši-bie-hu \*šibiehu  
 [G] ši-pieh-hung (183)  
 [K] šibihun  
 [M] sibirgan 'speckled  
 swallow'  
 cibin 'swallow'  
 [S] cf. civaqəN 'swallow'

- 429 [A] 雀·舍徹  
 [C] que 'small bird'  
 [T] se-če-[hei] \*seče(he)  
 [G] ših-č'i-hei (158)  
 [K] šičihei  
 [M] cecike  
 [S] cicikee  
 [N] the G and K forms  
 are perhaps in the  
 genitive.  
 The transcription  
 seems to be missing  
 a -he; cf. 469
- 430 [A] 鷲·加忽  
 [C] ying 'hawk'  
 [T] gia-hu \*gياهو  
 [M] giyahûn  
 [S] gياهوN
- 431 [A] 魚·泥木哈  
 [C] yu 'fish'  
 [T] ni-mu-ha \*nimuha  
 [G] li-wah-hah (163)  
 [K] liwaha (limaha?)  
 [M] nimaha  
 [S] niměhaa  
 [N] the character read  
-wah- by Grube can  
 also be read -mo-  
 or -ma-, which is  
 the basis of Kiyose's  
 reconstruction.

- 432 [A] 獅子·阿非阿  
 [C] shizi 'lion'  
 [T] a-fi-a \*afi'a  
 [G] 'a-fei (139)  
 [K] afi  
 [M] no cognate  
 [N] W. Fuchs (1976) suggested  
 that this word  
 might be connected  
 with some form of  
 the name "Africa";  
 its derivation, and  
 possible cognates  
 in other languages,  
 however, remains  
 obscure.
- 433 [A] 鹿其鹿·阿才散郎  
 [C] qilin 'unicorn'  
 [T] a-sa-lang \*a[r]salan  
 [M] cf. arsalan 'lion'  
 [N] it is possible that  
 there is some confusion  
 between this and the  
 previous entry; the  
 fact remains, however,  
 that in the Bureau of  
 Translators' vocabulary,  
 the word for 'lion' is  
 also given as \*afi
- 434 [A] 貂鼠·塞克  
 [C] diaoshu 'sable'  
 [T] se-ke \*seke  
 [G] seh-koh (191)  
 [K] seke  
 [M] seke
- 435 [A] 黃鼠·鎖羅希  
 [C] huangshu 'weasel'  
 [T] so-lo-hi \*solohi  
 [M] solohi



- 436 [A] 馬廬·額黑  
 [C] lü 'donkey'  
 [T] e-he \*ehe  
 [G] 'oh-hen (141)  
 [K] eihen  
 [M] eihen  
 [S] 'e'ixɛN
- 437 [A] 黑馬·撒哈良木力  
 [C] hei ma 'black horse'  
 [T] sa-ha-liang-mu-li \*sahalian muri  
 [N] 1103-410
- 438 [A] 銀鼠·兀捏  
 [C] yinshu 'ermine'  
 [T] u-nie \*unie  
 [N] cf. Mongol üne 'polecat'
- 439 [A] 糞鼠·木壳勝革力  
 [C] fenshu 'mole'  
 [T] mu-tu-sing-ge-li \*mu[k]tu singgeri  
 [M] muktun  
 [N] 439-416
- 440 [A] 騾子·老撒  
 [C] luozi 'mule'  
 [T] lao-sa \*laosa  
 [G] lao-sah (142)  
 [K] losa  
 [M] losa  
 [S] losɛ  
 [N] Hauer gives loose as an old form of lose, and lose as an old form of losa

- 441 [A] 青鼠·兀魯忽  
 [C] qingshu 'squirrel'  
 [T] u-lu-hu \*uluhu  
 [M] ulhu
- 442 [A] 狐狸·多必  
 [C] huli 'fox'  
 [T] do-bi \*dobi  
 [G] to-li-pih/to-pih-li (153)  
 [K] doribi  
 [M] dobi  
 [S] diovi  
 [N] Grube suggested that the order of -li- and -pih- may have been inverted, and suggested the cognate M. dobiri 'an animal that resembles a fox that can climb trees'
- 443 [A] 熊·勒伙  
 [C] xiong 'bear'  
 [T] le-fu \*lefu  
 [G] leh-fu (145)  
 [K] lefu  
 [M] lefu  
 [S] lefɛ
- 444 [A] 扇馬·阿塔木力  
 [C] shan ma 'gelding'  
 [T] a-ta-mu-li \*a[k]ta muri  
 [G] 'a-tah mu-lin (168)  
 [K] akda morin  
 [M] akta morin  
 [S] 'aqɛtɛ moriN  
 [N] 444-410

- 445 [A] 馬果馬 · 溝木力  
 [C] luo ma 'mule'  
 [T] geu-mu-li \*geu mori  
 [M] geo (morin) 'mare'  
 [N] note the difference  
 in meaning between  
 the C. and J. words
- 446 [A] 兒馬 · 阿答刺木力  
 [C] er ma 'stallion'  
 [T] a-ja-la-mu-li \*ajara muri  
 [G] 'a-či-rh mu-lin (170)  
 [K] ajir morin  
 [M] ajirgan/ajirhan 'a male  
 horse, donkey, camel  
 or dog' (Norman)  
 [S] 'ajērēhaN, 'ajirēhaN  
 [N] on the basis of the  
 M/S forms, perhaps  
 one could reconstruct  
 \*ajar[h]a
- 447 [A] 野豬 · 艾荅  
 [C] ye zhu 'wild boar'  
 [T] ai-da \*aida  
 [M] aidahan
- 448 [A] 赤馬 · 者兒得木力  
 [C] chi ma 'reddish horse'  
 [T] je-r-de-mu-li \*jerde muri  
 [M] jerde 'sorrel horse'  
 [N] 448-410
- 449 [A] 馬駒 · 兀兒哈  
 [C] ma ju 'foal'  
 [T] u-r-ha \*urha/ulha  
 [M] cf. unahan 'colt, foal'  
 Franke (1982) suggests  
 ulha' livestock, domestic  
 animal'

- 450 [A] 獐猪 · 塔麻兀(甲)  
 [C] zong zhu 'boar'  
 [T] ta-ma-u-[gia] \*tama u[l]gia  
 [M] taman 'castrated swine,  
 hog' (Norman)  
 [N] the Chinese term is  
 a rare one, now a  
 dialect term meaning  
 'boar'. The -gia is  
 missing from the  
 Awanokuni text, but  
 is in the Seikadō text  
 450-414
- 451 [A] 白馬 · 尚加木力  
 [C] bai ma 'white horse'  
 [T] šang-gia-mu-li \*šanggia muri  
 [N] 1102-410
- 452 [A] 天鵝 · 哈魯  
 [C] tian e 'swan'  
 [T] ha-lu \*garu  
 [G] hah-rh-wen (185)  
 [K] garun  
 [M] garu
- 453 [A] 黃牛 · 素羊办哈  
 [C] huang niu 'yellow ox'  
 [T] su-yang-i-ha \*suyan iha  
 [N] 1101-411
- 454 [A] 鷺鳥 · 廈  
 [C] lusi 'egret'  
 [T] ša \*ša  
 [G] su-'an (181)  
 [K] suwan  
 [M] suwan

- 455 [A] 豚猪·墨黑兀甲  
 [C] tun zhu 'small pig'  
 [T] me-he-u-gia \*mehe u[l]gia  
 [M] mehe 'a spayed sow'  
 mehejen 'a sow'  
 mehele jui 'piglet'  
 mehen 'a sow that has  
 not yet farrowed'  
 (Norman). mehe is  
 glossed 'a spayed  
 cow', an obvious  
 misprint  
 455-414
- 456 [A] 鷓鴣·哈撒哈  
 [C] luci 'cormorant'  
 [T] ha-sa-ha \*gasaha  
 [M] gŭwasihya 'eastern  
 egret'
- 457 [A] 仙鶴·不勒黑  
 [C] xianhao 'crane'  
 [T] bu-le-he \*bulehe  
 [G] puh-leh-hei (182)  
 [K] bulehei  
 [M] bulehen  
 [S] buluxu  
 [N] the G. and K. forms  
 may be in the  
 genitive
- 458 [A] 雞啼·替課忽藍必  
 [C] ji ti 'the cock crows'  
 [T] ti-ko-hu-lan-bi \*tiko hula-mbi  
 [M] hula- 'to cry out loud'  
 [S] hulamē  
 [N] 458-421-mbi

- 459 [A] 海青·矢木課  
 [C] haiqing 'gerfalcon'  
 [T] ši-mu-ko \*šimuko  
 [G] šen-k'o-'an (187)  
 [K] šinkoan  
 [M] cf. šongkon
- 460 [A] 青庄·襪廈  
 [C] qingzhuang 'heron'  
 [T] wa-ša \*waša  
 [M] cf. wakan 'night heron'  
 wasiha 'claw, talon'  
 [N] perhaps -ša is a mistake
- 461 [A] 喜鵲·撒此哈  
 [C] xiqiao 'magpie'  
 [T] sa-tse-ha \*satseha  
 [M] saksaha  
 [N] perhaps the -tse-  
 represents a form  
 -ks-
- 462 [A] 班鳩九鳥·阿林忽帖  
 [C] banjiu 'dove'  
 [T] a-lin-hu-tie \*alin hutie  
 [N] 130-484
- 463 [A] 志鸛·未住  
 [C] zhiguan 'stork'  
 [T] wei-ju \*wei ju  
 [M] weijun

- 464 [A] 鴉鵲·回活羅  
 [C] yagu 'turtle-dove'  
 [T] hui-ho-lo \*huiholo  
 [G] hoei-huo-lo (184)  
 [K] guwiholo  
 [M] no cognate. Franke (1982)  
 suggests kokoli  
 'the name of a small  
 bird that resembles  
 the woodstock'  
 (Norman)
- 465 [A] 鵲鵲·木迷  
 [C] anchun 'quail'  
 [T] mu-su \*mušu  
 [M] mušu
- 466 [A] 龜·艾兀麻  
 [C] gui 'tortoise'  
 [T] ai-u-ma \*ai'uma  
 [G] 'a-yu-ma (164)  
 [K] aihuma  
 [M] aihuma  
 [S] 'a'ihumě
- 467 [A] 烏鴉·哈哈  
 [C] wuya 'crow'  
 [T] ha-ha \*gaha  
 [G] hah-hah (157)  
 [K] gaha  
 [M] gaha  
 [S] Gahě
- 468 [A] 鴿鷹·費勒  
 [C] yaoying 'kite'  
 [T] fi-le \*file  
 [M] hiyebele 'black-eared  
 kite';  
 fiyelen 'yellow-beaked  
 young birds'

- 469 [A] 黃雀·鬼里舍徹黑  
 [C] huang que 'golden oriole'  
 [T] gui-li-se-če-he \*guili sečehe  
 [M] gulin cecike  
 [N] 469-429
- 470 [A] 螃蟹·办出黑  
 [C] pangxie 'crab'  
 [T] i-ču-he \*ičuhe  
 [M] no cognate
- 471 [A] 虫蟻·办兒或  
 [C] luoyi 'ant'  
 [T] i-r-hue \*irhue  
 [M] yerhuwe  
 [S] yurě'imahě
- 472 [A] 蜘蛛·黑名  
 [C] zhizhu 'spider'  
 [T] he-ming \*he[l]min  
 [M] helmehen  
 [S] xeměxěn  
 [N] the Seikadō text  
 has 各 -go for the  
 second syllable,  
 but this is an  
 obviously mis-  
 written character;  
 the Awanokuni text  
 is correct
- 473 [A] 虱·替黑  
 [C] shi 'louse'  
 [T] ti-he \*tihe  
 [M] cihe  
 [S] cixee

- 474 [A] 虫胡虫葉・革迫  
 [C] hudie 'butterfly'  
 [T] ge-po \*gepo  
 [M] cf. gefehe  
 [N] another example of  
 a possible remnant  
 of [p] in Jin  
 Jurchen, if the  
 transcription is  
 correct
- 475 [A] 蚊虫・哈兒麻  
 [C] wenchong 'mosquito'  
 [T] ha-r-ma \*galma  
 [M] galman  
 [S] Galēmēn
- 476 [A] 螻蛄・得兒或  
 [C] cangying 'fly'  
 [T] de-r-hue \*derhue  
 [M] derhuwe  
 [S] durēvee, duruvuu
- 477 [A] 角・未黑,  
 [C] jiao 'horn'  
 [T] wei-he \*weihe  
 [G] wuh-ye-hei (602)  
 [K] uyehe  
 [M] weihe, uihe  
 [S] viixē
- 478 [A] 蹄・發塔  
 [C] ti 'hoof'  
 [T] fa-ta \*fat[h]a  
 [M] fatha  
 [S] fatēhē, fatēqē

- 479 [A] 鬃・得力  
 [C] zong 'mane'  
 [T] de-li \*deli  
 [M] delun  
 [S] delēN, dulun
- 480 [A] 尾・兀徹  
 [C] wei 'tail'  
 [T] u-če \*u[n]če  
 [M] uncehen  
 [S] 'uNcixēN, 'uNciuxiuN, 'iuNciuxiuN
- 481 [A] 毛・分黑,  
 [C] mao 'hair'  
 [T] fun-he \*funhe  
 [G] fen-yih-li-hei (493, 515)  
 [K] funirhei  
 [M] funiyehe  
 [S] fenixē  
 [N] the G. and K. forms may  
 be in the genitive
- 482 [A] 蜻蜓・佛羅古  
 [C] qingting 'dragonfly'  
 [T] fo-lo-gu \*fologu  
 [M] no cognate
- 483 [A] 蟋蟀・谷魯只  
 [C] cuzhi 'cricket'  
 [T] gu-lu-ji \*guruji  
 [M] gurjen
- 484 [A] 鴿子・忽帖  
 [C] gezi 'pigeon'  
 [T] hu-tie \*hutie  
 [M] kuwecihe  
 [S] gucixee

- 485 [A] 龍掛·木都力刺其哈  
 [C] long gua 'whirlwind'  
 [T] mu-du-ri-la-ki-ha \*muduri laki-ha  
 [N] the Chinese expression literally means 'dragon hangs [down]', 'the dragon has descended' etc. For J. \*laki, cf. M. lakiya- 'to hang'. Franke (1982) points out that long gua is a literary allusion to an atmospheric phenomenon which describes thunderstorm cloud formations or a whirlwind. The source is the Bishu lühua by Ye Mengde of the Song.
- 486 [A] 母象·額迷勒速發  
 [C] muxiang 'female elephant'  
 [T] e-mi-le-su-fa \*emile sufa  
 [M] cf. emile 'the female of birds'  
 [N] 486-408
- 487 [A] 虎嘯·塔思哈忽藍必  
 [C] hu xiao 'the tiger roars'  
 [T] ta-s-ha-hu-lan-bi \*tasha hula-mbi  
 [N] 407-458
- 488 [A] 龍戲水·木都力木克過提必  
 [C] long xi shui 'watersprout'  
 [T] mu-du-ri-mu-ke-go-ti-bi \*muduri muke goti-bi  
 [N] the Chinese lit. means 'the dragon plays with water'. Franke (1982) also points out that this must be another type of atmospheric phenomenon, such as a watersprout. Cf. M. goci- (def. 7) 'to appear, to come out (of a rainbow)' (Norman)

- 489 [A] 公象·阿迷刺速發  
 [C] gongxiang 'male elephant'  
 [T] a-mi-la-su-fa \*amila sufa  
 [M] amila 'the male of fowl'  
 [N] as in the case of \*emile (486), in Manchu this word seems to be restricted to birds. Either in Jurchen its use was broader, or this is a mistaken usage
- 490 [A] 戰馬·鎖力刺木力  
 [C] zhan ma 'warhorse'  
 [T] so-li-la-mu-ri \*sori-ra muri  
 [G] cf. so-li-tu-man (455,484) 'to fight'  
 [M] cf. sori- 'to kick (of horses); to paw the ground, to jump around'; cf. also sorin den 'running with the chest high (of horses)'  
 [N] 490-ra-410
- 491 [A] 虎咬·塔思哈翁必  
 [C] hu yao 'tiger bites'  
 [T] ta-s-ha-ung-bi \*tasha u-mbi  
 [N] 407-1055-mbi
- 492 [A] 耕牛·兀矢塔力勒亦哈  
 [C] gengniu 'ploughing ox'  
 [T] u-ši-ta-li-le-i-ha \*uši tari-re iha  
 [M] tari- 'to till, to plough'  
 [S] tiarimē  
 [N] 141-re-411

- 493 [A] 銀鷄·孔國力木力  
 [C] yinhe ma 'horse with  
 silver coloured hair'  
 [T] kung-go-li-mu-li \*kunggori muri  
 [M] konggoro morin 'Isabella  
 coloured; an Isabella  
 horse'  
 [N] the character transcribed  
 here -go- should have been  
 read -gue-, in which case  
 we would have \*konggueri  
 for this word.
- 494 [A] 紅沙馬·伏良博羅木力  
 [C] hongsha ma 'horse with red  
 and sand-coloured hair'  
 [T] fu-liang-bo-lo-mu-li \*ful[gl]ian boro  
mori  
 [M] boro 'grey'  
 burulu 'a horse having  
 mixed red and white hair'  
 [N] 1100-494-410
- 495 [A] 風狗·額都勒黑因答忽  
 [C] feng gou 'mad dog'  
 [T] e-du-le-he-in-da-hu \*edule-he indahu  
 [N] cf. comments under 710  
 710-413
- 496 [A] 馬嘶·木力忽藍必  
 [C] ma si 'the horse neighs'  
 [T] mu-li-hu-lan-bi \*muri hula-mbi  
 [N] 410-458-mbi
- 497 [A] 小狗·捏哈  
 [C] xiao gou 'small dog'  
 [T] nie-ha \*nieha  
 [M] niyahan

- 498 [A] 小豬·阿沙迷活  
 [C] xiao zhu 'small pig'  
 [T] a-sa-mi-ho \*aš[h]a miho  
 [M] mihan  
 [S] mihaN  
 [N] 1154-498
- 499 [A] 螢火虫·珠深迫  
 [C] yinghuochong 'glow-worm'  
 [T] ju-šin-po(?) \*jušimpo?  
 [M] juciba 'firefly'
- 500 [A] 羯羊·阿塔刺賀泥  
 [C] jieyang 'wether'  
 [T] a-ta-la-ho-ni \*a[k]tala honi  
 [M] aktala- 'to castrate'  
 [N] 500-412
- 501 [A] 黃羊·者力  
 [C] huang yang 'Mongolian  
 gazelle'  
 [T] je-li \*jeri  
 [M] jeren  
 [N] cf. Mongol jegere
- 502 [A] 玳瑁猫·素羊办刺哈出  
 [C] daimei mao 'tortoise-  
 shell [colour] cat'  
 [T] su-yang-i-la-ha-ču \*suyan il[h]a  
haču/kaču  
 [N] 1101-346-415
- 503 [A] 金錢豹·牙兒哈  
 [C] jinqian bao 'leopard'  
 [T] ya-r-ha \*yarha  
 [G] ya-lah (148)  
 [M] yarha  
 [S] yarēhě

- 504 [A] 綠毛龜·念加分黑艾兀麻  
 [C] lúmao gui 'green-haired  
 tortoise'  
 [T] nien-gia-fun-he-ai-u-ma \*niengia funhe  
ai'uma  
 [N] 1099-481-466
- 505 [A] 黃鶯·素羊加忽  
 [C] huang ying 'yellow hawk'  
 [T] su-yan-gia-hu \*suyan giahu  
 [N] 1101-340
- 506 [A] 野貓·兀徹希  
 [C] ye mao 'wild cat'  
 [T] u-če-hi \*učehi  
 [M] ujirhi
- 507 [A] 年魚·刺哈泥木哈  
 [C] nian yu 'catfish'  
 [T] la-ha-ni-mu-ha \*laha nimuha  
 [M] laha  
 [N] 507-431
- 508 [A] 鵟鷂·顧的  
 [C] diao ying 'falcon'  
 [T] gu-di \*gudi  
 [M] no cognate. Franke  
 (1982) suggests  
huksen 'a type of  
 falcon kept in the  
 house'
- 509 [A] 麋鹿·卓羅布兀  
 [C] milu 'the tailed deer'  
 [T] jo-lo-bu-u \*jolo bu'u  
 [M] jolo buhû 'doe,  
 female deer'  
 [N] 509-417

- 510 [A] 蝙蝠·額主墨  
 [C] bianfu 'bat'  
 [T] e-ju-me \*eǰume  
 [M] no cognate
- 511 [A] 野鷄·兀魯麻  
 [C] ye ji 'pheasant'  
 [T] u-lu-ma \*ul[h]uma  
 [G] wuh-lu-wuh-ma (188)  
 [K] ulguma  
 [M] ulhûma  
 [S] 'olëhëmë, 'olëhumë
- 512 [A] 蛤蜊·塔忽答  
 [C] hali 'clam'  
 [T] ta-hu-da \*tahuda  
 [M] tahura  
 [N] in the light of the  
 M. form, perhaps  
 -da is a mistake for  
 -la
- 513 [A] 鯉魚·壳舍泥木哈  
 [C] liyu 'carp'  
 [T] tu-še-ni-mu-ha \*tuše nimuha  
 [M] no cognate
- 514 [A] 蝟鼠·僧革  
 [C] weishu 'hedgehog'  
 [T] sengge \*sengge  
 [M] sengge  
 [S] senǰe
- 515 [A] 蝦·希忒  
 [C] xia 'shrimp'  
 [T] hi-te \*hite  
 [M] no cognate



- 516 [A] 蜜蜂·歲郎  
 [C] mifeng 'bee'  
 [T] sui-lang \*suilan  
 [M] suilan  
 [S] siuliala
- 517 [A] 鴛鴦·各牙洪  
 [C] yuanyang 'mandarin duck'  
 [T] gu-ya-hung \*guyahun  
 [G] gu-ya-huh (180)  
 [K] guyahu  
 [M] guyahu
- 518 [A] 象牙·速發未黑  
 [C] xiangya 'ivory'  
 [T] su-fa-wei-he \*sufa weihe  
 [G] su-fah wei-hei (582)  
 [K] sufa weihe  
 [N] 408-477
- 519 [A] 肥馬·塔魯木力  
 [C] fei ma 'fat horse'  
 [T] ta-lu-mu-li \*tal[h]u muri  
 [N] in entry 719, 'fat'  
 is given as \*taru'u  
 719-410
- 520 [A] 瘦馬·禿兒哈木力  
 [C] shou ma 'thin horse'  
 [T] tu-r-ha-mu-li \*turha muri  
 [N] 709-410
- 521 [A] 狗咬·因答忽翁必  
 [C] gou yao 'the dog bites'  
 [T] in-da-hu-ung-bi \*indahu u-mbi  
 [N] 413-1045-mbi

- 522 [A] 獅子猫·阿非阿哈出  
 [C] shizi mao 'lion-cat'  
 (a type of cat of the  
 Angora or Persian  
 variety)  
 [T] a-fi-ha-ču \*afi haču/kaču  
 [N] 432-415
- 523 [A] 公雞·阿迷刺替課  
 [C] gong ji 'cock'  
 [T] a-mi-la-ti-ko \*amila tiko  
 [N] 489-421
- 524 [A] 母雞·額迷勒替課  
 [C] mu ji 'hen'  
 [T] e-mi-le-ti-ko \*emile tiko  
 [N] 486-421

## SECTION SIX - BUILDINGS

- 525 [A] 房·博  
 [C] fang 'house'  
 [T] bo \*bo  
 [M] boo  
 [S] boo
- 526 [A] 門·兀尺  
 [C] men 'door'  
 [T] u-či \*uči  
 [M] uce  
 [S] 'ucii
- 527 [A] 房簷·博矢希木哈  
 [C] fang yang 'eaves'  
 [T] bo-ši-hi-mu-ha \*bo šihi muha  
 [M] sihin 'eaves (of a house)  
 mohon 'end'
- 528 [A] 瓦房·瓦子博  
 [C] wa fang 'tiled house'  
 [T] wa-ze-bo \*waze bo  
 [M] wase 'tile'  
 wase boo 'house with  
 a tiled roof'  
 [N] \*waze < Chinese  
 528-525
- 529 [A] 草房·幹兒火博  
 [C] cao fang 'thatched house'  
 [T] o-r-ho-bo \*orho bo  
 [N] 376-525

- 530 [A] 馬房·木力博  
 [C] ma fang 'stable'  
 [T] mu-li-bo \*muri bo  
 [N] 410-525
- 531 [A] 猪圈·兀甲火羅  
 [C] zhu juan 'pigsty'  
 [T] u-gia-ho-lo \*u[l]gia hor[h]o  
 [M] horho 'stable'  
 [S] horəhəN  
 [N] 414-531
- 532 [A] 牛欄·亦哈火羅  
 [C] niu lan 'cattle-shed'  
 [T] i-ha-ho-ro \*iha hor[h]o  
 [N] 412-532
- 533 [A] 隣舍·汗尺博  
 [C] lin she 'nearby hut'  
 [T] han-či-bo \*hanči bo  
 [M] hansı 'near'  
 [T] 533-525
- 534 [A] 羊欄·賀泥火羅  
 [C] yanglan 'sheep-pen'  
 [T] ho-ni-ho-lo \*honi hor[h]o  
 [N] 412-531
- 535 [A] 木托·太兀  
 [C] tuo 'large tie beams'  
 [T] tai-u \*tai'u  
 [N] cf. 536 below

- 536 [A] 梁·太伏  
 [C] liang 'beam [of a house]'  
 [T] tai-fu \*taifu  
 [G] t'ai-pen (207)  
 [K] taibun  
 [M] taibu  
 [N] the Seikadō text, here and in the previous five entries, is corrupt, and the present entries are based on the Awanokuni text. Particularly in 535 and 536, however, there still seems to be some corruption or confusion. Perhaps the -fu in this entry should be -wu, which is what we would expect, given the relationship M. intervocalic -b- = J. -w-
- 537 [A] 椽·梭  
 [C] chuan 'beam, rafter'  
 [T] so \*so  
 [M] son
- 538 [A] 盖房·博阿藍必  
 [C] gai fang 'to build a house'  
 [T] bo-a-lan-bi \*bo ara-mbi  
 [M] ara- 'to make, to do'  
 [S] 'arēmē  
 [N] 525-538-mbi
- 539 [A] 塔·速不累  
 [C] ta 'pagoda'  
 [T] su-bu-an \*subu'an  
 (\*subu[r][h]an?)  
 [M] subarhan  
 [S] suvarēhēn

- 540 [A] 拆房·博額峯必  
 [C] zhe fang 'demolish a house'  
 [T] bo-e-feng-bi \*bo efe-mbi  
 [M] efule- 'to destroy'  
 [N] 525-540-mbi
- 541 [A] 新房·亦車博  
 [C] xin fang 'new house'  
 [T] i-če-bo \*iče bo  
 [N] 192-525
- 542 [A] 竈火·住兀  
 [C] zao huo 'stove, furnace'  
 [T] ju-u \*ju'u  
 [M] jun  
 [S] juN
- 543 [A] 煙煖·忽朗  
 [C] yantong 'chimney'  
 [T] hu-lang \*hulan  
 [M] hulan  
 [S] hulaN
- 544 [A] 薄子·放察  
 [C] baozi 'screen'  
 [T] fang-ča \*fanča  
 [N] perhaps this is the same word as entry 608 'flag', \*fanča
- 545 [A] 窓·發  
 [C] chuang 'window'  
 [T] fa \*fa  
 [G] fah-'a (209)  
 [K] faa  
 [M] fa  
 [S] faa

- 546 [A] 板·兀忒  
[C] ban 'board'  
[T] u-te  
[M] undeheh \*u[n]te
- 547 [A] 皇殿·斡兒多哈安博  
[C] huang dian 'imperial palace'  
[T] o-r-do-ha-an-bo  
[M] ordo 'palace, court'  
[N] 547-653-525 \*ordo ha'an bo
- 548 [A] 修房·博答撒必  
[C] xiu fang 'repair a house'  
[T] bo-da-sa-bi  
[M] dasa- \*bo dasa-bi  
[S] dasəmə  
[N] 525-548-bi
- 549 [A] 官房不許作踐·掛你博兀墨哈撒刺  
[C] guanfang buxu zuojian  
'it is not permitted to run around in official residences'  
[T] gua-ni-bo-u-me-ha-sa-la \*guan-i bo ume hasa-ra  
[M] hasa- 'to hurry, to be in a rush'  
[N] guan < Chinese  
549-i-(gen.)-525-neg.-ra
- 550 [A] 門窓不許燒毀·兀尺發兀墨得的勒  
[C] men chuang buxu shaohui  
'it is not permitted to burn doors and windows'  
[T] u-či-fa-u-me-de-di-le \*uči fa ume dedi-re  
[N] 526-545-neg.-1042-re

- 551 [A] 幾間房·木姜博  
[C] jijian fang 'a house with several rooms' or 'how many rooms?'  
[T] mu-gian-bo \*mu gian bo  
[M] giyan 'measure word for rooms and buildings' < Chinese  
[N] Chinese ji can mean 'several' or 'how many'. In entries 311 and 312, ji is translated as \*uhiahu in Jurchen. 'How much' in Manchu is udu; I cannot find a Manchu cognate for either \*mu or \*uhiahu
- 552 [A] 禮部衙門·利布哈發  
[C] libu yamen 'Board of Rites'  
[T] li-bu-ha-fa \*li bu hafa  
[M] hafan 'official, officer'  
[S] havəN  
[N] li bu < Chinese
- 553 [A] 兵部衙門·並布哈發  
[C] bingbu yamen 'Board of War'  
[T] bing-bu-ha-fa \*bing bu hafa  
[N] bing bu < Chinese  
553-552
- 554 [A] 鷄籠·替課灼羅  
[C] jilong 'chicken cage'  
[T] ti-ko-šo-lo \*tiko šoro  
[M] šoro  
[N] 421-554
- 555 [A] 炕·納哈  
[C] kang 'brick-bed, kang'  
[T] na-ha \*naha  
[M] nahan  
[S] nahəN 'underfloor heating flue'

- 556 [A] 館驛·官办  
 [C] guan yi 'post-house'  
 [T] guan-i  
 [N] < Chinese \*guan i
- 557 [A] 大門·昂八都哈  
 [C] da men 'main gate'  
 [T] ang-ba-du-ha  
 [G] tu-hah[ka] (201) \*amba duka  
 [K] duka  
 [M] duka  
 [S] duqaa  
 [N] 1153-557
- 558 [A] 儀門·矢得其都哈  
 [C] yimen 'the middle gate  
 of a yamen'  
 [T] ši-de-ki-du-ha \*šideki duka  
 [M] cf. siden 'space,  
 interval, interstice'  
 [N] 558-557
- 559 [A] 脚門·答八其都哈  
 [C] jiaomen 'side gate'  
 [T] da-ba-ki-du-ka \*da[l]baki duka  
 [M] dalbaki 'on the side'
- 560 [A] 柱·秃刺  
 [C] zhu 'pillar'  
 [T] tu-la \*tura  
 [G] t'uh-lah (208)  
 [K] tura  
 [M] tura  
 [S] turaa 'post'

## SECTION SEVEN - TOOLS AND UTENSILS

- 561 [A] 鐘·中  
 [C] zhong 'bell'  
 [T] jung  
 [S] juně \*jung
- 562 [A] 鼓·痛克  
 [C] gu 'drum'  
 [T] tung-ke  
 [G] t'ung-k'en (256) \*tungke  
 [K] tunken  
 [M] tungken  
 [S] tuNkěN
- 563 [A] 紙·好沙  
 [C] zhi 'paper'  
 [T] hao-ša  
 [G] hao-ša (222) \*haoša  
 [K] hauša  
 [M] hoošan  
 [S] hošiN, ha'ušan 'paper  
 offerings used in  
 ancestor worship  
 ritual'
- 564 [A] 墨·伯黑  
 [C] mo 'ink'  
 [T] be-he  
 [G] poh-hei (223) \*behe  
 [M] behe  
 [S] bexee

- 565 [A] 筆 · 非  
 [C] bi 'pen, writing instrument'  
 [T] fi \*fi  
 [G] fei (224)  
 [K] fi  
 [M] fii  
 [S] fii  
 [N] J. \*fi < Jin. \*pi  
 < Chinese 筆 bi
- 566 [A] 硯 · 塞  
 [C] yan 'ink-slab'  
 [T] se \*se  
 [G] seh[sai] (225)  
 [K] se  
 [N] the Manchu word for 'ink-slab' is yuwan,  
 < Ch. yan. Franke (1982) suggests J.  
\*se < Ch. 石 shi 'stone'
- 567 [A] 桌 · 得勒  
 [C] zhuo 'table'  
 [T] de-le \*dere  
 [G] t'eh-'oh (238)  
 [K] tere  
 [M] dere  
 [S] derě
- 568 [A] 橙 · 木郎  
 [C] deng 'bench'  
 [T] mu-lang \*mulan  
 [G] muh-lah (239)  
 [K] mulan  
 [M] mulan  
 [N] the second char. in G. 239 is -lah, which Kiyose has amended to -lan on the basis of the Jurchen characters used

- 569 [A] 碗 · 莫羅  
 [C] wan 'bowl'  
 [T] mo-lo \*moro  
 [G] moh-lo (246)  
 [K] moro  
 [M] moro  
 [S] morě
- 570 [A] 碟 · 非刺  
 [C] die 'plate'  
 [T] fi-la \*fila  
 [G] fei-lah (243)  
 [K] fila  
 [M] fila  
 [S] filaa
- 571 [A] 盆子 · 忿子  
 [C] penzi 'basin'  
 [T] fun-ze \*funze  
 [M] fengse  
 [N] both J and M forms  
 < Chinese penzi  
 In the Seikadō text, this word is written pen instead of penzi
- 572 [A] 筋 · 撒  
 [C] zhu 'chopsticks'  
 [T] sa-ba \*sab[k]a  
 [M] sabka  
 [S] safěqě  
 [N] -ba could also be read -pa, but I have opted for -ba on the basis of the M. form
- 573 [A] 鍋 · 木徹  
 [C] guo 'cooking pot'  
 [T] mu-če \*muče  
 [G] muh-sien (244)  
 [K] mušen  
 [M] mucen  
 [S] mecěN

- 574 [A] 壺·湯平  
 [C] hu 'pot, jug'  
 [T] tang-ping \*tampin  
 [M] tampin  
 [N] both J and M forms  
 < Ch. 罈瓶 tanping
- 575 [A] 鎗·吉荅  
 [C] qiang 'spear'  
 [T] gi-da \*gida  
 [G] kih-tah (234)  
 [K] gida  
 [M] gida  
 [S] gidaa
- 576 [A] 刀·或矢  
 [C] dao 'knife'  
 [T] hue-ši \*hueši  
 [M] huwesi  
 [S] kušii
- 577 [A] 盔·撒叉  
 [C] kui 'helmet'  
 [T] sa-ča \*sača  
 [G] sah-č'a (232)  
 [K] sača  
 [M] saca
- 578 [A] 甲·兀矢  
 [C] jia 'armour'  
 [T] u-ši \*u[k]ši  
 [G] wuh-č'eng-yin (233)  
 [K] ukč'in  
 [M] uksin  
 [S] 'uxěš'in

- 579 [A] 弓·伯力  
 [C] gong 'bow' (n)  
 [T] be-li \*beri  
 [G] poh-li (236)  
 [K] beri  
 [M] beri  
 [S] berii
- 580 [A] 箭·捏魯  
 [C] jian 'arrow'  
 [T] nie-lu \*niru  
 [G] ni-lu (237)  
 [K] niru  
 [M] niru  
 [S] niurě, yurě  
 [N] it would also be possible to reconstruct \*nieru, but I have opted for \*niru on the basis of the G and M forms
- 581 [A] 鏡·墨勒苦  
 [C] jing 'mirror'  
 [T] me-le-ku \*meleku?  
 [G] puh-lung[nung]-k'u (251)  
 [K] bulunku  
 [M] buleku  
 [S] buluNku, bulěku  
 [N] note the similarity of the Sibe to those found in G and K. The character me- might be a mistake
- 582 [A] 剪·哈雜  
 [C] jian 'scissors'  
 [T] ha-dza \*hadza?  
 [G] hah-tsi-hah (252)  
 [K] haʃiha  
 [M] hasaha  
 [S] hasěhě  
 [N] perhaps a form \*haʃ[h]a is possible

- 583 [A] 盤 · 阿力古  
 [C] pan 'dish'  
 [T] a-li-gu \*aligu  
 [G] 'a-li-k'u (242)  
 [K] aliku  
 [M] aliku
- 584 [A] 瓶 · 化平  
 [C] ping 'bottle, vase'  
 [T] hua-ping \*huaping  
 [N] < Ch. 花瓶 huaping
- 585 [A] 斧 · 速黑  
 [C] fu 'axe'  
 [T] su-he \*suhe  
 [M] suhe  
 [S] suxee, suxuu
- 586 [A] 鋸 · 伙黑  
 [C] ju 'saw' (n)  
 [T] fu-fung \*fufun  
 [M] fufun
- 587 [A] 鍬 · 兀壳  
 [C] qiao 'shovel'  
 [T] u-tu \*u[l]tu  
 [M] cf. uldefun 'a large  
 hoe made of wood'
- 588 [A] 鎖 · 牙失古  
 [C] suo 'lock'  
 [T] ya-si-gu \*ya[k]šigu  
 [M] yaksikû 'bolt of  
 a door'

- 589 [A] 鑰 · 笋課  
 [C] yao 'key'  
 [T] son-ko \*sonko  
 [M] no cognate  
 Franke (1982) suggests  
 M. su- 'to untie,  
 to unhitch'
- 590 [A] 線 · 同谷  
 [C] xian 'thread'  
 [T] tung-gu \*tunggu  
 [G] t'oh-kuo (250)  
 [K] togo/tongo  
 [M] tonggo  
 [S] toŋě
- 591 [A] 針 · 兀墨  
 [C] zhen 'needle'  
 [T] u-me \*u[l]me  
 [G] wuh-lu-meh (249)  
 [K] ulme  
 [M] ulme  
 [S] 'unuu
- 592 [A] 篦子 · 墨兒黑  
 [C] bizi 'fine-toothed  
 comb'  
 [T] me-r-he \*merhe  
 [M] merhe  
 [S] merěxě
- 593 [A] 梳子 · 办的伙  
 [C] shuzi 'comb'  
 [T] i-di-fu \*idifu  
 [G] yih-rh-tih-hung (549)  
 [K] irdihun  
 [M] ijifun



- 594 [A] 蓆子·得兒希  
 [C] xizi 'mat'  
 [T] de-r-hi \*derhi  
 [M] derhi  
 [S] dirixi
- 595 [A] 枕頭·替兒古  
 [C] zhentou 'pillow'  
 [T] ti-r-gu \*tirgu  
 [G] t'i-leh-k'u (550)  
 [K] tireku  
 [M] cirku  
 [S] cunuku, cunuku
- 596 [A] 桶·忽兒女  
 [C] tong 'bucket'  
 [T] hu-niu \*huniu  
 [M] hunio  
 [S] xuni
- 597 [A] 扇·伏塞古  
 [C] shan 'fan'  
 [T] fu-se-gu \*fus[h]egu  
 [G] fuh-seh-gu  
 [K] fushegu  
 [M] fusheku
- 598 [A] 犁鏵·兀浦哈郎  
 [C] lihua 'plough'  
 [T] u-pu[fu]-ha-lang \*ufu hal[h]lan  
 [M] ofoho 'ploughshare'  
 halhan 'ploughshare'  
 [N] the character -fu-  
 could be read -pu-,  
 but I have opted for  
-fu- on the basis of  
 the Manchu form

- 599 [A] 馬韁繩·木力牙兒伏  
 [C] majiangsheng 'bridle'  
 [T] mu-li-ya-r-fu \*muri yarfu  
 [M] yarfun 'a long leather  
 cord attached to the  
 headstall or bridle,  
 tether' (Norman)  
 [N] 410-599
- 600 [A] 匙·撒非  
 [C] chi 'spoon'  
 [T] sa-fi \*safi  
 [M] saifi
- 601 [A] 帚·額兒古  
 [C] zhou 'broom'  
 [T] e-r-gu \*ergu  
 [M] eriku  
 [S] 'irěkě
- 602 [A] 簸·非兀  
 [C] bo 'winnowing fan'  
 [T] fi-u \*fi'u  
 [M] fiyoo
- 603 [A] 車·塞者  
 [C] che 'vehicle'  
 [T] se-je \*seje  
 [G] seh-če (253)  
 [K] seje  
 [M] sejen  
 [S] sejēN
- 604 [A] 網·亦革勒  
 [C] wang 'net'  
 [T] i-le \*ile  
 [M] ile

- 605 [A] 鈴·洪過  
 [C] ling 'small bell'  
 [T] hung-go \*hunggo  
 [M] honggon  
 [S] hongN
- 606 [A] 繩·伏塔  
 [C] sheng 'string, rope'  
 [T] fu-ta \*futa  
 [M] futa  
 [S] fětaa
- 607 [A] 登·壳伏  
 [C] deng 'stirrup'  
 [T] tu-fu \*tufu  
 [G] t'uh-fu (231)  
 [K] tufu  
 [M] tufun
- 608 [A] 旗·凡察  
 [C] qi 'flag'  
 [T] fan-ča \*fanča  
 [G] fan-nah-rh (220)  
 [K] fannar  
 [M] no cognate. cf.  
 fangse 'pennant'  
 < Ch. 幡子 fanzi  
 Cf also 544
- 609 [A] 韃·黑兀忒  
 [C] chan 'saddle-flap'  
 [T] he-u-te \*he'ute  
 [G] hei-puh-t'eh (227)  
 [K] hebte  
 [M] habta 'the wing of a  
 saddle'

- 610 [A] 革秋·忽荅刺  
 [C] qiu 'crupper'  
 [T] hu-da-la \*hudar[gl]a  
 [G] huh-tih-lah (228)  
 [K] hudila  
 [M] kûdargan
- 611 [A] 梯子·汪  
 [C] tizi 'ladder'  
 [T] wang \*wan  
 [M] wan  
 [S] vaN
- 612 [A] 屜·納木其  
 [C] ti 'drawer'  
 [T] na-mu-ki \*namuki  
 [M] namki
- 613 [A] 酒鍾·奴勒忽塔  
 [C] jiuzhong 'wine-cup'  
 [T] nu-le-hu-ta \*nure hu[n]ta  
 [M] huntahan 'cup, mug,  
 glass'  
 [N] 1007-613
- 614 [A] 船·的哈  
 [C] chuan 'boat'  
 [T] di-ha \*diha  
 [G] tih-hai (254)  
 [K] dihai  
 [M] jaha  
 [N] G. and J. are in  
 the gen. form

- 615 [A] 板箱·兀忒相子  
 [C] banxiang 'a chest  
 made of boards'  
 [T] u-te-siang-ze \*u[n]te siangze  
 [M] undeheh 'board'  
 [N] J. \*siangze < Ch.  
xiangzi
- 616 [A] 腰刀·羅火  
 [C] yaodao 'dagger'  
 [T] lo-ho \*loho  
 [G] lo-huo (235)  
 [K] loho  
 [M] loho  
 [S] lohě
- 617 [A] 連刀·哈禿  
 [C] lian dao 'sickle'  
 [T] ha-tu \*hatu  
 [M] hadufun 'sickle';  
 hadu- 'to cut with  
 a sickle'
- 618 [A] 牛車·亦哈塞者  
 [C] niuche 'ox-cart'  
 [T] i-ha-se-je \*iha seje  
 [N] 411-603
- 619 [A] 鞍坐·掃伏  
 [C] anzuo 'saddle-cushion'  
 [T] saofu \*šaufu  
 [M] soforo
- 620 [A] 帳房·察察星  
 [C] zhangfang 'tent'  
 [T] ča-ča-li \*čačari  
 [G] čah-č'ah-li (214)  
 [K] jačili  
 [M] cacari

- 621 [A] 轡頭·哈荅刺  
 [C] liantou 'bridle'  
 [T] ha-da-la \*hadala  
 [G] t'a-ta (229) (?)  
 [K] tada (?)  
 [M] hadala  
 [S] hadələ, qadələ 'bit  
 'of harness)'
- 622 [A] 馬鞍子·木力索革木  
 [C] ma'anzi 'saddle (for  
 horses)'  
 [T] mu-li-an-ge-mu \*muri anggemu  
 [G] 'en-koh-mai (226)  
 [K] engemer  
 [M] anggemu  
 [S] 'eməŋə  
 [N] 410-622
- 623 [A] 肚帶·窩羅  
 [C] dudai 'girth'  
 [T] o-lo \*olo  
 [M] olon
- 624 [A] 馬槽·木力忽日  
 [C] macao 'trough (for  
 horses)'  
 [T] mu-li-hu-ži \*muri huži  
 [M] huju  
 [S] xujuN  
 [N] 410-624
- 625 [A] 鞭子·速失哈  
 [C] bianzi 'whip'  
 [T] su-ši-ha \*sušiha  
 [G] su-ših-kai (230)  
 [K] sušigai  
 [M] susiha  
 [S] šusihaa, šiušihaa, susihaa  
 the G. and K. forms may  
 be in the genitive.

- 626 [A] 鈎·過活  
[C] gou 'hook'  
[T] go-ho \*goho  
[M] gohon  
[S] Gohě
- 627 [A] 兔毫筆·姑麻洪分黑,非  
[C] tuhaobi 'rabbit's  
hair brush: a  
fine writing  
brush'  
[T] gu-ma-hung-fun-he-fi \*gu[l]mahun  
funhe fi  
[N] 420-481-565
- 628 [A] 金盔·安出撒叉  
[C] jin kui 'golden helmet'  
[T] an-č'u-sa-ča \*anču sača  
[N] 1064-577
- 629 [A] 朝鐘·幹兒多中  
[C] chao zhong 'palace bell'  
[T] o-r-do-žung \*ordo žung  
[N] 547-561
- 630 [A] 更鼓·經都勒痛克  
[C] genggu 'drum for marking  
each two hour period'  
[T] ging-du-le-tung-ke \*ging du-re  
tungke  
[N] 315-810-re-561
- 631 [A] 酒罈·奴勒麻魯  
[C] jiutan 'jug for wine'  
[T] nu-le-ma-lu \*nure malu  
[M] malu  
[S] malě  
[N] 1007-631

- 632 [A] 石碗·瓦忽魯  
[C] ciwan 'porcelain bowl'  
[T] tu-hu-lu \*tuhuru  
[M] cf. tomoro  
[N] -hu- is possibly a  
mistake for a char.  
read -mo-
- 633 [A] 燈臺·非兀東刺額  
[C] dengtai 'lampstand'  
[T] fi-u-la-gu \*fi'ulagu  
[G] cf. fei-pen (247)  
'lamp'  
[K] fibun  
[M] cf. hiyabun 'lantern'  
hiyabulaku 'a lantern  
rack'
- 634 [A] 割羊盤·賀泥非塔阿力古  
[C] geyang pan 'dish for  
cutting sheep(meat)'  
[T] ho-ni-fi-ta-a-li-gu \*honi fita aligu  
[M] faita- 'to cut,  
to slice'  
[N] 412-634-583
- 635 [A] 紡車·佛羅古  
[C] fangche 'spinning wheel'  
[T] fo-lo-gu \*forogu  
[M] forko  
[S] forequ 'well pulley'
- 636 [A] 蝗拂·得兒或博多  
[C] yingfu 'chowry, fly whisk'  
[T] de-r-hue-bo-do \*derhue bodo  
[M] cf. derhuwe bašakû  
[N] Franke (1982) suggests  
bodo- 'to drive  
animals to a pre-  
destined place'  
476-636

- 637 [A] 魚網·泥木哈阿速  
 [C] yuwang 'fish net'  
 [T] ni-mu-ha-a-su \*nimuha asu  
 [M] asu  
 [S] 'asě  
 [N] 431-637
- 638 [A] 琵琶·苦魯  
 [C] pipa 'pipa (a musical instrument similar to a lute)'  
 [T] ku-lu \*kuru  
 [M] cf. hūru 'a mouth-harp made of cows horn and bamboo'  
 [N] cf. Mongol quyur, quur 'balalaika, guitar'  
 cf. Ligeti, "Anciens éléments", p. 235.
- 639 [A] 打圍網·撒哈答亦勒  
 [C] da wei wang  
 [T] sa-ha-da-i-le \*sahada ile  
 [M] cf. sahada- 'to hunt in autumn'  
 [N] 639-604
- 640 [A] 胡琴·其答力  
 [C] huqin 'huqin (a Chinese stringed instrument)'  
 [T] ki-ja-li \*kiĵari/kiĵali?  
 [M] no cognate. Manchu for huqin is onggocon < Mongol ongyoca 'boat'

- 641 [A] 唢囉·布魯撒必  
 [C] beiluo 'beiluo (a military musical instrument)'  
 [T] bu-lu-dun-bi \*burudu-mbi  
 [M] burde- 'to blow on a conch, to sound advance or retreat on a conch'
- 642 [A] 鎖呐·牙兒希  
 [C] suona 'suona (a trumpet-like wind instrument)'  
 [T] ya-r-hi \*yarhi-  
 [M] no cognate  
 [N] in the Seikadō text, this word is written ya-hu-hi
- 643 [A] 熨斗·忽失古  
 [C] yundou 'flat iron'  
 [T] hu-ši-gu \*hušigu  
 [M] huwešeku
- 644 [A] 鐵盔·塞勒撒叉  
 [C] tie kui 'iron helmet'  
 [T] se-le-sa-ča \*sele sača  
 [N] 1077-577
- 645 [A] 皮甲·速古兀失  
 [C] pi jia 'hide armour'  
 [T] su-gu-u-ši \*sugu u[k]ši  
 [N] 894-578
- 646 [A] 鐵甲·塞勒兀失  
 [C] tie jia 'iron armour'  
 [T] se-le-u-ši \*sele u[k]ši  
 [N] 1077-578

- 647 [A] 火箭·他捏魯  
[C] huo jian 'iron arrow'  
[T] ta-nie-lu \*ta niru  
[N] 1012-580
- 648 [A] 鐵鎖·塞勒牙失古  
[C] tie suo 'iron lock'  
[T] se-le-ya-si-gu \*sele ya[k]šigu  
[N] 1077-588
- 649 [A] 銅鎖·矢力牙失古  
[C] tong suo 'bronze lock'  
[T] ši-li-ya-si-gu \*širi ya[k]šigu  
[N] 1066-588
- 650 [A] 拄杖·退伙  
[C] zhuzhang 'walking stick,  
crutch'  
[T] tui-fu \*tuifu  
[M] teifun  
[S] te'ifuN
- 651 [A] 銅鼓·矢力痛克  
[C] tong gu 'bronze drum'  
[T] ši-li-tung-ke \*širi tungke  
[N] 1066-562
- 652 [A] 雨傘·阿古散  
[C] yusan 'umbrella'  
[T] a-gu-san \*agu san  
[N] J. san < Chinese  
3-652

## SECTION EIGHT - PEOPLE

- 653 [A] 皇帝·哈安  
[C] huangdi 'emperor'  
[T] ha-an \*ha'an  
[G] han-'an-ni (272)  
[K] haganni  
[M] han  
[S] haaN  
[N] cf. Mongol qayan  
the G. and K. forms  
are in the genitive
- 654 [A] 官·背勒  
[C] guan 'official'  
[T] bei-le \*beile  
[G] pei-leh (277)  
[K] beile  
[M] beilə
- 655 [A] 大人·昂八捏麻  
[C] da ren 'important man'  
[T] ang-ba-nie-ma \*amba nie[l]ma  
[G] nieh-rh-ma (331)  
[K] niyarma  
[M] niyalma  
[S] naŋə  
[N] it is difficult to  
determine whether an  
-[r]- or an -[l]-  
(or neither) should  
be inserted here.  
1153-655

- 656 [A] 民·办忒  
 [C] min 'people'  
 [T] i-te \*i[l]te  
 [G] yih-t'eh-'oh (288,297)  
 [K] itege  
 [M] cf. irgen  
 [S] cf. 'irěxěN  
 [N] Ligeti ("Note préliminaire",  
 p. 222) reconstructs ilde  
 for the Grube form, on the  
 basis of Nanai elda
- 657 [A] 頭目·答哈刺裡麻  
 [C] toumu 'chief, leader'  
 [T] da-ha-la-nie-ma \*dahala nie[l]ma  
 [M] cf. da 'head, chief,  
 master, sovereign. This  
 word may be related to  
 M. dahala- 'to escort'  
 [N] 657-655
- 658 [A] 吏·必忒失  
 [C] li 'clerk'  
 [T] bi-te-ši \*bit[h]e ši  
 [N] J. \*ši < Ch. 師 shi  
 1094-658
- 659 [A] 軍·朝哈  
 [C] jun 'army'  
 [T] čao-ha \*čauha  
 [G] č'ao-hah (296)  
 [K] čauha  
 [M] cooha 'soldier'  
 [S] cuahě  
 [N] perhaps the Chinese  
 entry should read  
 軍人 junren 'soldier',  
 which would more  
 suit the context and  
 the M. equivalent

- 660 [A] 公·阿木哈  
 [C] gong 'father-in-law'  
 [T] a-mu-ha \*amuha  
 [M] amha  
 [S] 'aměhě
- 661 [A] 婆·額木黑  
 [C] po 'mother-in-law'  
 [T] e-mu-he \*emuhe  
 [M] emhe  
 [S] 'eměxě
- 662 [A] 父·阿麻  
 [C] fu 'father'  
 [T] a-ma \*ama  
 [G] 'a-min (282)  
 [K] amin  
 [M] ama  
 [S] 'amě
- 663 [A] 母·額墨  
 [C] mu 'mother'  
 [T] e-me \*eme  
 [M] cf. eniye  
 [S] cf. 'eni, 'eni'ee
- 664 [A] 兄·阿洪  
 [C] xiong 'elder brother'  
 [T] a-hung \*ahun  
 [G] 'a-hun-wen (286)  
 [K] ahun  
 [M] ahûn  
 [S] cf. 'ahuNduu 'brother'

- 665 [A] 弟·豆  
[C] di 'younger brother'  
[T] deu \*deu  
[G] teu-wuh-wen (287)  
[K] degun  
[M] deo  
[S] duu
- 666 [A] 姐·革革  
[C] jie 'elder sister'  
[T] ge-ge \*gege  
[M] gege  
[S] gexee
- 667 [A] 妹·轉元  
[C] mei 'younger sister'  
[T] neu-u \*neu'u  
[G] nieh-hun-wen (291)  
[K] niyohun  
[M] non  
[S] nuN
- 668 [A] 孫·幹莫羅  
[C] sun 'grandchild'  
[T] o-mo-lo \*omolo  
[G] woh-moh-lo (285)  
[K] omolo  
[M] omolo  
[S] 'oməle
- 669 [A] 女·撒藍追  
[C] nü 'girl'  
[T] sa-lan-juí \*sar[glan]juí  
[M] sargan juí  
[S] sahəNji  
[N] 669-671

- 670 [A] 窮·牙荅洪  
[C] qiong 'poor'  
[T] ya-da-hung \*yadahun  
[M] yadahun  
[S] yadəhəN
- 671 [A] 兒·哈哈追  
[C] er 'son'  
[T] ha-ha-juí \*haha juí  
[G] hah-hah-ai (298)  
čui-yih (294)  
[K] hahai  
juwii  
[M] haha 'man, male'  
juí 'child'  
[S] hahe  
jii  
[N] the G. and K. forms  
are in the genitive
- 672 [A] 西鬼·歐松  
[C] chou 'ugly'  
[T] eu-sung \*eusun  
[G] 'oh-wu (716)  
[K] eru  
[M] cf. ersun  
[S] cf. 'erəsuN
- 673 [A] 俊·活著  
[C] jun 'handsome'  
[T] ho-jo \*hojo  
[M] hojo 'healthy, fine'  
[S] hojə
- 674 [A] 等·阿力速  
[C] deng 'wait'  
[T] a-li-su \*ali-su  
[M] aliya-  
[S] 'ialime  
[N] -su is an imperative  
suffix



- 675 [A] 你·失  
[C] ni 'you'  
[T] ši \*ši  
[M] si  
[S] šii
- 676 [A] 我·必  
[C] wo 'I, me'  
[T] bi \*bi  
[G] cf. mih-ni (853)  
[K] mini  
[M] bi 'I'  
mini 'mine'  
[S] bii, mini  
[N] the G. and K. forms  
are in the genitive
- 677 [A] 伯父·撒答  
[C] bofu 'uncle' (father's  
elder brother)  
[T] sa-da \*sa[k]da  
[M] cf. sakda 'old'
- 678 [A] 伯母·黑黑撒答  
[C] bomu 'aunt' (wife of  
father's elder  
brother)  
[T] he-he-sa-da \*hehe sa[k]da  
[M] hehe 'woman, female'  
[S] xexě  
[N] 678-677
- 679 [A] 祖母·兀黑墨  
[C] shenmu 'aunt' (wife of  
father's younger  
brother)  
[T] u-he-me \*uheme  
[M] uhume

- 680 [A] 女嫂·阿熱  
[C] sao 'sister-in-law'  
[T] a-že \*aže  
[M] aša 'elder brother's  
wife'  
[S] 'ašě, 'asě
- 681 [A] 叔父·額舍黑  
[C] shufu 'uncle' (father's  
younger brother)  
[T] e-se-he \*esehe  
[M] ecike
- 682 [A] 女婿·活的  
[C] nūxu 'son-in-law'  
[T] ho-di \*hodi  
[G] huo-tih-woh (289)  
[K] hodiyo  
[M] hojihon  
[S] hocěhuN, hocuhuN
- 683 [A] 舅母·納哈出額木黑  
[C] jiumu 'aunt' (wife of  
mother's brother)  
[T] na-ha-ču-e-mu-le \*nakaču emule  
[N] 684-661
- 684 [A] 母舅·納哈出  
[C] mujiu 'uncle' (maternal  
uncle)  
[T] na-ha-ču \*nakaču  
[M] nakcu  
[N] cf. Ligeti, "Anciens  
éléments" p. 235

- 685 [A] 親家·撒都  
 [C] qinjia 'a relation by marriage'  
 [T] sa-du \*sadu  
 [G] sah-tu-kai (683)  
 [K] sadugai  
 [M] sadun
- 686 [A] 家人·博办捏麻  
 [C] jia ren 'one of the family; a domestic'  
 [T] bo-i-nie-ma \*bo-i nie[l]ma  
 [N] 525-i(gen)-655
- 687 [A] 小舅·墨葉  
 [C] xiaojiu 'brother-in-law' (wife's elder brother)  
 [T] meye \*meye  
 [M] meye
- 688 [A] 卑幼·阿沙  
 [C] beiyou 'young, small'  
 [T] a-ša \*aš[h]a  
 [M] asihan  
 [N] cf. 1154
- 689 [A] 家長·客額熱  
 [C] jiazhang 'head of the family'  
 [T] e-že \*eže  
 [G] 'oh-žan-ni (792)  
 [K] eʃenni  
 [M] ejen  
 [S] 'ejēN  
 [N] the G. and K. forms are in the genitive.

- 690 [A] 奴婢·阿哈  
 [C] nubei 'slave'  
 [T] a-ha \*aha  
 [G] 'a-hah-'ai (338)  
 [K] ahai  
 [M] aha  
 [S] 'ahē 'servant'  
 [N] the G. and K. forms are in the genitive
- 691 [A] 老實·團多  
 [C] laoshi 'honest'  
 [T] ton-do \*tondo  
 [G] t'uan-to (407)  
 [K] tondo  
 [M] tondo  
 [S] toNdē 'straight, honest'
- 692 [A] 老人·撒答捏麻  
 [C] laoren 'old man'  
 [T] sa-da-nie-ma \*sa[k]da nie[l]ma  
 [M] sakda 'old'  
 [S] sahēdē  
 [N] 692-655  
 cf. 677
- 693 [A] 少人·阿沙捏麻  
 [C] shaoren 'young man'  
 [T] a-ša-nie-ma \*aš[h]a nie[l]ma  
 [N] 1154(688)-655
- 694 [A] 好人·賽因捏麻  
 [C] haoren 'good man'  
 [T] sai-in-nie-ma \*sa'in nie[l]ma  
 [G] sai-yin (696)  
 [K] sain  
 [M] sain  
 [S] 694-655

- 695 [A] 富人·拜牙捏麻  
 [C] fu ren 'rich man'  
 [T] bai-ya-nie-ma \*baya nie[l]ma  
 [G] poh-yang (pai-yang) (346)  
 [K] bayan  
 [M] bayan  
 [S] ba'iN  
 [N] 695-655
- 696 [A] 反人·伙答速捏麻  
 [C] fanren 'opponent, rebel'  
 [T] fu-da-su-nie-ma \*fudasu nie[l]ma  
 [M] fudasi 'recalcitrant, rebellious, obstinate'  
 [N] 696-655
- 697 [A] 歹人·额黑捏麻  
 [C] dai ren 'evil man'  
 [T] e-he-nie-ma \*ehe nie[l]ma  
 [G] 'oh-hei-poh nieh-rh-ma (337)  
 [K] ehebe niyarma  
 [M] ehe niyalma  
 [S] 'exə 'evil, wicked'  
 [N] G. -poh and K. -be are accusative suffixes  
 697-655
- 698 [A] 商人·忽答厦捏麻  
 [C] shangren 'merchant'  
 [T] hu-da-ša-nie-ma \*hudaša nie[l]ma  
 [M] hudaša- 'to trade'  
 [N] 698-655
- 699 [A] 贼人·忽鲁哈捏麻  
 [C] zei ren 'thief'  
 [T] hu-lu-ha-nie-ma \*huluha nie[l]ma  
 [G] hu-lah-hai-nieh-rh-ma (336)  
 [K] hulahai niyarma  
 [M] hulha 'thief'  
 [S] huləhaa  
 [N] the G. and K. forms might be in the genitive  
 699-655

- 700 [A] 銀匠·猛古發失  
 [C] yinjiang 'silversmith'  
 [T] meng-gu-fa-ši \*menggu fa[k]ši  
 [N] 1065-747
- 701 [A] 恩人·拜力捏麻  
 [C] en ren 'benefactor'  
 [T] bai-li-nie-ma \*baili nie[l]ma  
 [M] baili 'grace, favour, charm'  
 [N] 701-655
- 702 [A] 染匠·亦徹發失  
 [C] ranjiang 'dyer'  
 [T] i-če-fa-ši \*iče fa[k]ši  
 [M] ice- 'to dye'  
 [S] 'icimə  
 [N] 702-747
- 703 [A] 銅匠·失力發失  
 [C] tongjiang 'bronzesmith'  
 [T] ši-li-fa-ši \*širi fa[k]ši  
 [N] 1066-747
- 704 [A] 麻子·别秃  
 [C] mazi 'pockmarked person'  
 [T] bie-tu \*bietu  
 [M] cf. biyataha 'a scar on the head, a spot on the head where the hair is sparse; cf. also fiyatun 'scar, blemish, spot'
- 705 [A] 長子·背夜得捏麻  
 [C] changzi 'a tall man'  
 [T] bei-ye-de-nie-ma \*beye de nie[l]ma  
 [N] 887-31-655

- 706 [A] 帽匠·麻希刺阿刺發失  
 [C] maojiang 'hat-maker'  
 [T] ma-hi-la-a-la-fa-ši \*mahila ara fa[k]ši  
 [M] ara- 'to make, to do'  
 [N] 972-706-747
- 707 [A] 錫匠·托活羅發失  
 [C] xijiang 'tinsmith'  
 [T] to-ho-lo-fa-ši \*toholo fa[k]ši  
 [N] 1068-747
- 708 [A] 聋子·都秃  
 [C] longzi 'deaf person'  
 [T] du-tu \*dutu  
 [M] dutu  
 [S] dutu
- 709 [A] 瘦子·秃兒哈  
 [C] shouzi 'thin person'  
 [T] tu-r-ha \*turha  
 [G] t'uh-hah (519)  
 [K] turha  
 [M] turga, (old form: turha)
- 710 [A] 瘋子·額都勒黑  
 [C] fengzi 'mad person'  
 [T] e-du-le-he \*edule-he  
 [M] cf. edule- 'to catch cold' < edu 'wind'  
 [N] cf. 495 'mad dog'  
 J. \*edule-he indahu.  
 It seems that in  
 Jurchen \*edule- had  
 the connotation 'to  
 go mad'. The Chinese  
 entry is written with  
 the character 風  
 feng, without rad.  
 104; perhaps this is  
 some kind of a calque,  
 or perhaps a mistake.

- 711 [A] 瞎子·多  
 [C] xiazi 'blind person'  
 [T] do \*do  
 [M] dogo  
 [S] dohe  
 [N] is -go missing?
- 712 [A] 啞子·黑革勒  
 [C] yazi 'dumb person'  
 [T] he-le \*hele  
 [M] hele  
 [S] xelě
- 713 [A] 痴子·玉秃  
 [C] chizi 'fool, idiot'  
 [T] yu-tu \*yutu  
 [M] yoto
- 714 [A] 二哥·答替阿洪  
 [C] er ge 'second [eldest]  
 brother'  
 [T] ja-ti-a-hung \*jati ahun  
 [M] jacin  
 [S] jiaci  
 [N] 714-664
- 715 [A] 大哥·昂八阿洪  
 [C] da ge 'eldest brother'  
 [T] ang-ba-a-hung \*amba ahun  
 [N] 1153-664
- 716 [A] 二姐·答替革革  
 [C] er jie 'second [eldest]  
 sister'  
 [T] ja-ti-ge-ge \*jati gege  
 [N] 714-666

- 717 [A] 輕薄・未忽苦  
 [C] qingbao 'thoughtless, frivolous'  
 [T] wei-hu-ku \*weihuku  
 [M] weihukun 'light; not serious, frivolous'  
 [S] cf. ve'ixukəN 'light; mild (of flavour)'
- 718 [A] 謹慎・遲遲  
 [C] jinshen 'careful'  
 [T] ya-či \*yači  
 [M] no cognate
- 719 [A] 肥・塔魯兀  
 [C] fei 'fat'  
 [T] ta-lu-u \*taru'u  
 [G] t'ah-wen (518)  
 [K] tagun  
 [M] tarhun  
 [S] tarəhuN
- 720 [A] 綽子匠・兀木素都勒發失  
 [C] taozijiang 'maker of belts'  
 [T] u-mu-su-du-le-fa-ši \*umusu du-re fa[k]ši  
 [M] umiyesun 'belt, girdle, sash'  
 du- 'to beat'  
 [N] 720-810-re-747
- 721 [A] 愁・矢網必  
 [C] chou 'to be sad'  
 [T] ši-na-bi \*šina-bi  
 [G] šen-nah-lah (375)  
 [K] šinnala  
 [M] sinagala- 'to mourn'  
 [S] cf. šinəhaN 'mourning'

- 722 [A] 是・亦奴  
 [C] shi 'yes'  
 [T] i-nu \*inu  
 [G] yih-na (706)  
 [K] ina  
 [M] inu  
 [S] 'iN 'too, also'
- 723 [A] 而安・客願非必  
 [C] shua 'to play'  
 [T] e-fi-bi \*efi-bi  
 [M] efi-  
 [S] 'ifimə
- 724 [A] 起・亦立  
 [C] qi 'rise'  
 [T] i-li \*ili  
 [G] yih-lih-pen (424)  
 [K] ilibun  
 [M] ili-  
 [S] 'iimə, 'ilamə
- 725 [A] 遲・貴答哈  
 [C] chi 'late'  
 [T] gui-da-ha \*guida-ha  
 [M] goida- 'to last for a long time, to endure  
 [S] Go'idamə 'to take a long time'
- 726 [A] 子・追  
 [C] zi 'child'  
 [T] jui \*jui  
 [G] čui-yih (294)  
 [K] juwii  
 [M] jui  
 [S] jii  
 [N] the G. and K. forms may be in the genitive

- 727 [A] 逃·兀哈哈  
 [C] tao 'escape'  
 [T] u-ha-ha \*uka-ha  
 [M] uka-  
 [S] 'uNqamě, 'uqamě
- 728 [A] 家奴·博办速古  
 [C] jia nu 'a family  
 servant'  
 [T] bo-i-su-gu \*bo-i sugu  
 [M] no cognate for \*sugu  
 [N] 525-728
- 729 [A] 夫妻·額亦額撒刺  
 [C] fu qi 'husband [and]  
 wife'  
 [T] e-i-e-sa-la \*ei'e sar[glə]  
 [G] cf. sah-li-'an (293)  
 [K] sarigan  
 [M] eigen 'husband'  
 sargan 'wife'  
 [S] iixěN  
 sarěhěN
- 730 [A] 爺·馬發  
 [C] ye 'grandfather'  
 [T] ma-fa \*mafa  
 [M] [t'eh-koh] ma-fah (284)  
 [K] [tege] mafa  
 [M] mafa  
 [S] mafě
- 731 [A] 木匠·莫發失  
 [C] mujiang 'carpenter'  
 [T] mo-fa-ši \*mo fa[k]ši  
 [N] 352-747

- 732 [A] 夷人·猛過捏麻  
 [C] yiren 'barbarian'  
 [T] meng-go-nie-ma \*menggo nie[l]ma  
 [G] meng-ku-lu (318)  
 [K] mongul 'Mongolian'  
 [M] monggo 'Mongol'  
 [S] moŋě  
 [N] 732-655
- 733 [A] 通事·痛塞  
 [C] tongshi 'interpreter'  
 [T] tung-se \*tungse  
 [N] J \*tungse < Chinese
- 734 [A] 胖子·禿魯者黑  
 [C] pangzi 'fat person'  
 [T] tu-lu-je-he \*tuluje-he  
 [M] tuleje- 'to put on  
 weight, to become  
 portly'
- 735 [A] 漢人·泥哈捏麻  
 [C] Hanren 'Chinese'  
 [T] ni-ha-nie-ma \*nika nie[l]ma  
 [M] nikan  
 [S] 'iqaN  
 [N] 735-655

- 736 [A] 頑耍·歲必客額非必  
 [C] wanshua 'to play'  
 [T] sui-bi-e-fi-bi \*sui-bi efi-bi  
 [M] efi- 'to play'  
 [N] this entry is curious.  
 the expression wanshua  
 is normally written  
 玩耍 and means 'to  
 play, to sport with,  
 to romp' (Mt.7010.a);  
 in this expression,  
 玩 is interchangeable  
 with 頑 . 頑 wan  
 usually means 'obstinate,  
 wayward, stupid, corrupt,  
 greedy, covetous' (Mt);  
 in Manchu there is a  
 series of words beginning  
 with sui- with this  
 general meaning (cf.  
 Norman pp. 250-251)  
 The usual meaning of M.  
sui-mbi is 'to mix'  
 which does not seem to  
 be appropriate here
- 737 [A] 急性·哈塔的力  
 [C] jixing 'quick-tempered'  
 [T] ha-ta-di-li \*hata dili  
 [M] hatan 'furious, violent,  
 impetuous'  
 jili 'anger'
- 738 [A] 慈善·那木活  
 [C] cishan 'kind, charitable,  
 benevolent, good'  
 [T] no-mu-ho \*nomuho  
 [G] nen[nun]-muh-huo (340)  
 [K] nonmuho  
 [M] nomhon  
 [S] noměhuN 'well-mannered'

- 739 [A] 皇帝萬歲·哈安禿墨塞  
 [C] huangdi wansui 'may the  
 Emperor live for ten  
 thousand years'  
 [T] ha-an-tu-me-se \*ha'an tume se  
 [G] cf. t'u-man seh-koh (866)  
 [K] tuman sege  
 [N] 653-1129-269
- 740 [A] 皇帝洪福·哈安說迷忽禿力  
 [C] huangdi hongfu 'Emperor's  
 great happiness'  
 [T] ha-an-šo-mi-hu-tu-li \*ha'an šomi huturi  
 [G] cf. ['an-pan-lah]  
 huh-t'uh-rh (803)  
 [K] [amban(la)] hutur  
 [M] huturi 'good luck,  
 good fortune'  
 [N] 653-153-740
- 741 [A] 愁喜·失納必兀魯珠必  
 [C] chou, xi 'sad, happy'  
 [T] ši-na-bi \*šina-bi  
 u-lu-ju-bi \*ur[glu]u-bi  
 [G] šen-nah-lah (375)  
 woh-wen-če-leh (372, 374)  
 [K] šinnala  
 urgunjere  
 [M] sinagan 'mourning'  
 urgunje- 'to be happy'  
 [N] 721-741
- 742 [A] 慷慨·金鎮都勒  
 [C] kangkai 'generous'  
 [T] jen-du-le \*jendule  
 [M] no cognate
- 743 [A] 善人·那木活捏麻  
 [C] shan ren 'good man'  
 [T] no-mu-ho-nie-ma \*nomuho nie[l]ma  
 [N] 738-655

- 744 [A] 奸詐·額徹答力  
 [C] jianzha 'crafty, cunning'  
 [T] e-če-ja-li \*eče ǰali  
 [M] cf. eitere- 'to deceive,  
 to defraud'  
 jalingga 'cunning'
- 745 [A] 醫人·大夫捏麻  
 [C] yi ren 'doctor'  
 [T] dai-fu-nie-ma \*daifu nie[l]ma  
 [M] daifu  
 [N] daifu < Chinese 大夫 daifu
- 746 [A] 不是·幹哈  
 [C] bu shi 'no, not'  
 [T] o-ha \*oka  
 [M] cf. akû 'particle of  
 negation; there is not,  
 there are not'; cf. also  
 waka 'sentence particle  
 that negates nominal  
 predicates: is not, are  
 not'
- 747 [A] 匠人·發矢捏麻  
 [C] jiangren 'artisan'  
 [T] fa-ši-nie-ma \*fa[k]ši nie[l]ma  
 [M] faksi  
 [S] fahěši, faqěši  
 [N] 747-655
- 748 [A] 惡人·過速捏麻  
 [C] eren 'evil man' (?)  
 [T] go-su-nie-ma \*gosu nie[l]ma  
 [M] cf. gosi- 'to love,  
 to feel compassion  
 for'  
 [N] perhaps Chinese 惡 e is  
 a mistake for 愛 ai  
 748-655

- 749 [A] 裁縫·才風  
 [C] caifeng 'tailor'  
 [T] tsai-fung \*tsaifung  
 [N] < Chinese
- 750 [A] 軟弱·兀魯忽  
 [C] ruanruo 'weak'  
 [T] u-[bu]-lu-hu \*uluhu/buluku?  
 [N] The Awanokuni text  
 has 兀 u- for the  
 first character;  
 the Seikadō text  
 has 不 bu-. There  
 does not seem to be  
 any cognate in Manchu  
 for either form
- 751 [A] 陀子·橫都  
 [C] tuozi 'hunchback'  
 [T] heng-du \*hendu  
 [M] hundu
- 752 [A] 皮匠·速古發矢  
 [C] pijiang 'tanner'  
 [T] su-gu-fa-ši \*sugu fa[k]ši  
 [N] 894-747
- 753 [A] 甲匠·兀矢都勒發矢  
 [C] jiajiang 'armourer'  
 [T] u-ši-du-le-fa-ši \*u[k]ši du-re  
 [N] 578-810-re-747 fa[k]ši



- 754 [A] 缺唇兒・富木客額測  
 [C] quechuner 'a person  
 with a harelip'  
 [T] fu-mu-e-tse \*fumu etse  
 [M] Manchu for 'harelip'  
 is omcoko.  
 For J. \*etse,  
 cf. esen 'slanting,  
 oblique  
 [N] 906-754
- 755 [A] 洗白匠・阿都敖勒發失  
 [C] xibaijiang 'laundrer'  
 [T] a-du-ao-le-fa-ši \*adu ao-re fa[k]ši  
 [N] 962-931-re-747
- 756 [A] 泥水匠・伯和發失  
 [C] nishuijiang 'plasterer'  
 [T] be-ho-fa-ši \*beho fa[k]ši  
 [N] 213-747
- 757 [A] 禿子・賀宅  
 [C] tuzi 'bald person'  
 [T] ho-to \*hoto  
 [M] hoto  
 [S] hotě

## SECTION NINE - ACTIONS OF PEOPLE

- 758 [A] 來・去  
 [C] lai 'come'  
 [T] diu \*diu  
 [G] tih-wen (712)  
 [K] digun  
 [M] ji-  
 [S] jime  
 [N] this is the imperative  
 form; cf. M. jio (an  
 irregular imperative)
- 759 [A] 去・革捏  
 [C] qu 'go'  
 [T] ge-nie \*genie  
 [G] koh-nieh-hei (713)  
 [K] genehei  
 [M] gene-  
 [S] geněmě
- 760 [A] 跪・捏苦魯  
 [C] gui 'kneel'  
 [T] nie-ku-lu \*niekuru  
 [G] mieh-k'u-lu (466)  
 [K] miyakuru  
 [M] niyakûra-  
 [S] yaqurěmě
- 761 [A] 拜・恨其勒  
 [C] bai 'bow' (v)  
 [T] hen-ki-le \*hengkile  
 [G] k'ang-k'oh-leh-mei (751)  
 [K] kankелеmei  
 [M] hengkile- 'to kowtow'  
 [S] xeNkilěmě

- 762 [A] 鞠躬·忽入  
 [C] jugong 'bow' (v)  
 [T] hu-žu \*hužu  
 [G] huh-žu-lah (750)  
 [K] huʃula  
 [M] hujū-
- 763 [A] 賞賜·尚四  
 [C] shang ci 'reward'  
 [T] šang-si \*šangsi  
 [N] < Chinese
- 764 [A] 進貢·忒得墨  
 [C] jin gong 'offer tribute'  
 [T] te-de-me \*tede-me  
 [G] t'eh-t'eh-puh-ma (482)  
 [K] tetebuma  
 [M] cf. dekdebu- causative  
 of dekde- 'to rise'  
 [N] perhaps this word could  
 be reconstructed \*te[k]de-
- 765 [A] 筵宴·八刺必  
 [C] yan yan 'to feast'  
 [T] ba-la-bi \*bara-bi  
 [M] cf. bara- 'to mix  
 together'; barabu-  
 to mix, to mix among,  
 to mingle together  
 [N] Manchu for 'to feast'  
 is sarila- . Perhaps  
ba- here is a mistake
- 766 [A] 見·阿察  
 [C] jian 'see'  
 [T] a-ča \*ača  
 [G] hah-č'ah-pieh (352)  
 [K] hačabi  
 [M] aca- 'to meet, to join'  
 [S] 'acěmě

- 767 [A] 方物·巴办兀力  
 [C] fang wu 'local products'  
 [T] ba-i-u-li \*ba-i uli  
 [G] wuh-li-yin (580)  
 [K] ulin  
 [M] ba 'place'  
 ulin 'goods, property,  
 possessions, wealth'  
 767-i-767  
 [N]
- 768 [A] 回·木力  
 [C] hui 'return'  
 [T] mu-li \*muri  
 [G] muh-t'ah-pen (378,379)  
 [K] mutabun  
 [M] mari- 'to come back,  
 to go back'  
 [S] marimě
- 769 [A] 睡·得都  
 [C] shui 'sleep'  
 [T] de-du \*dedu  
 [G] t'eh-tu-leh (355)  
 [K] tedure  
 [M] dedu- 'to lie down'  
 [S] dudumě
- 770 [A] 坐·忒  
 [C] zuo 'sit'  
 [T] te \*te  
 [G] t'eh-pieh (423)  
 [K] tebi  
 [M] te-  
 [S] temě
- 771 [A] 笑·因者必  
 [C] xiao 'laugh'  
 [T] in-je-bi \*inje-bi  
 [G] yin-če (461)  
 [K] inje  
 [M] inje-  
 [S] 'injimě, 'injemě

- 772 [A] 哭·宋谷必  
 [C] ku 'cry, weep'  
 [T] sung-gu-bi \*sunggu-bi  
 [G] sang-kuo-lu (460)  
 [K] sangoru  
 [M] songgo-  
 [S] sonǝmǝ
- 773 [A] 說·恨都  
 [C] shuo 'speak, talk'  
 [T] hen-du \*hendu  
 [G] hen-tu-lu (467)  
 [K] henduru  
 [M] hendu-
- 774 [A] 問·佛你  
 [C] wen 'ask'  
 [T] fo-ni \*foni  
 [G] mai-fan-ču =  
 fan-ču-mai (444)  
 [K] fanʃumai  
 [M] fonji-  
 [SD] fioNjimǝ
- 775 [A] 怕·革勒必  
 [C] pa 'fear'  
 [T] ge-le-bi \*gele-bi  
 [G] koh-leh-leh (370, 371)  
 [K] gelere  
 [M] gele-  
 [S] gelǝmǝ
- 776 [A] 聽·聽的  
 [C] ting 'listen'  
 [T] don-di \*dondi  
 [G] tuan-di-sun (351, 354)  
 [K] dondisun  
 [M] donji-  
 [S] dioNjimǝ  
 [N] Ligeti "Note préliminaire"  
 suggests \*doldi- for the  
 G. form

- 777 [A] 敬·禿其  
 [C] jing 'respect'  
 [T] tu-ki \*tuki  
 [M] tukiye-  
 [S] cf. tiukimǝ gisurǝmǝ  
 'to speak respectfully  
 toward'
- 778 [A] 和·奴失  
 [C] he 'harmony'  
 [T] nu-ši \*nuši  
 [G] nu-ših-yin (432)  
 [K] nušin  
 [M] necin 'peaceful, quiet'
- 779 [A] 到·办失哈  
 [C] dao 'arrive'  
 [T] i-ši-ha \*iši-ha  
 [G] yih-ših-mai (380, 381)  
 [K] išimai  
 [M] isi-
- 780 [A] 羞·吉力出克  
 [C] xiu 'shame'  
 [T] gi-li-ču-ke \*giričuke  
 [G] kih-lu-č'uh (345)  
 [K] giruču  
 [M] girucun 'shame'  
 giruke 'shameful'  
 [S] giricuN, gicikǝ,  
 gicuku
- 781 [A] 忙·區欠深必  
 [C] mang 'busy'  
 [T] eu-šin-bi \*euši-mbi  
 [G] 'oh-wuh-lu (362, 363)  
 [K] egur  
 [M] ebse- 'to hurry, to  
 hasten, to be busy'

- 782 [A] 愛·背因必  
[C] ai 'love'  
[T] bei-yin-bi \*beyi-mbi  
[G] pei-ye-mei (385)  
[K] beyemei  
[M] buye-  
[S] buyěmě, beyěmě
- 783 [A] 睡醒·革志黑  
[C] shuixing 'wake up,  
awake'  
[T] ge-te-he \*gete-he  
[M] gete-  
[S] getěmě
- 784 [A] 惱·伏欣必  
[C] nao 'angry, offended'  
[T] fu-hin-bi \*fuhi-mbi  
[G] fei-hi-lah (373, 386)  
[K] feshila  
[M] fuhiye- 'to get angry'
- 785 [A] 討·拜失  
[C] tao 'ask for'  
[T] bai-ši \*baiši  
[G] poh-šen (415)  
[K] baišin  
[M] bai-  
[S] biamě
- 786 [A] 醉·索托活  
[C] zui 'drunk, intoxicated'  
[T] su-to-ho \*su[k]to-ho  
[G] so-t'o-huo (445)  
[K] soktoho  
[M] sokto  
[S] soqětěmě, sohětěmě,  
soqětumě

- 787 [A] 退·木力  
[C] tui 'return'  
[T] mu-li \*muri  
[N] same as 768
- 788 [A] 走·伋力速  
[C] zou 'walk'  
[T] fu-li-su \*fuli-su  
[M] feliye-  
[N] -su: imperative  
form
- 789 [A] 要·盖速  
[C] yao 'want'  
[T] gai-su \*gai-su  
[G] hah-čah-lu (440)  
[K] gaĵaru  
[M] gai- 'to take'  
[S] Giamě  
[N] -su: imperative  
form
- 790 [A] 進·朵深去  
[C] jin 'enter'  
[T] do-šin-diu \*došindiu  
[G] to-šen (413)  
[K] došin  
[M] dosi- 'to enter'  
[S] diošimě  
[M] -diu is an irr.  
imper. form of  
di- 'to come';  
cf. M. jio
- 791 [A] 動·阿成加  
[C] dong 'move'  
[T] a-čing-gia \*ačinggia  
[G] 'a-č'ih-tu-lu (447)  
[K] ačiduru  
[M] acinggiya

- 792 [A] 住·塔哈速  
[C] zhu 'live at, reside'  
[T] ta-ha-su \*tahasu  
[M] cf. te- 'to live'  
[S] teme
- 793 [A] 使·塔苦哈  
[C] shi 'send'  
[T] ta-ku-ha \*taku[ra]-ha  
[G] t'ah-k'u-lah-hai (376,377)  
[K] takurahai  
[M] takura-  
[S] taqurume, taqurume  
[N] on the basis of the G,  
K, M and S forms, perhaps  
-[ra]- should be inserted  
into this word
- 794 [A] 扯·過提  
[C] che 'pull, drag, haul'  
[T] go-ti \*goti  
[M] goci-
- 795 [A] 舞·麻矢必  
[C] wu 'dance'  
[T] ma-ši-bi \*ma[k]ši-bi  
[M] makši-  
[S] mahësimë, maqësimë
- 796 [A] 成·墨忒黑  
[C] cheng 'to complete'  
[T] me-te-he \*mete-he  
[M] mute-
- 797 [A] 偷·忽魯哈  
[C] tou 'steal'  
[T] hu-lu-ha \*hulaha  
[M] hulha-  
[N] cf. 699

- 798 [A] 得·八哈  
[C] de 'get, obtain'  
[T] ba-ha \*baha  
[M] baha-  
[S] bahëmë
- 799 [A] 買·兀答  
[C] mai 'buy'  
[T] u-da \*uda  
[G] 'ai-wan-tu-mei (417)  
[K] aiwandumei  
[M] uda-  
[S] 'uncamë Giamë
- 800 [A] 跳·伏出  
[C] tiao 'jump'  
[T] fu-ču \*fu[k]ču  
[M] fekce-  
[S] fekumë
- 801 [A] 分·鄧得徹  
[C] fen 'divide'  
[T] deng-de-če \*dendeče  
[M] dendece-  
[S] deNdëmë  
[N] cf. 877
- 802 [A] 搶·都力勒  
[C] qiang 'snatch'  
[T] du-li-le \*dure-re  
[G] tao-li-mei (457)  
[K] daulimei  
[M] duri-  
[S] diuimë 'to rob'
- 803 [A] 借·拙兀  
[C] jie 'lend'  
[T] jue-u \*jue'u  
[M] juwen bu-  
[S] juN bumë

- 804 [A] 賣·公察  
[C] mai 'sell'  
[T] ung-ča \*unča  
[M] unca-  
[S] 'uNcamě bumě
- 805 [A] 與·布  
[C] yu 'give'  
[T] bu \*bu  
[M] bu-  
[S] bumě
- 806 [A] 還·套答  
[C] huan 'return,  
give back'  
[T] tao-da \*taoda  
[M] tooda-  
[S] toděmě, todumě
- 807 [A] 看·托哈  
[C] kan 'look at'  
[T] to-ha \*to-ha  
[M] tuwa-  
[S] taamě
- 808 [A] 不要·蓋刺誇  
[C] buyao 'do'nt want'  
[T] gai-la-kua \*gai-rakua  
[N] J. \*-rakua cf.  
M. -rakû
- 809 [A] 生·伴的哈  
[C] sheng 'be born'  
[T] ban-di-ha \*bandi-ha  
[G] pan-tih-hai (388)  
[K] bandihai  
[M] banji-  
[S] baNjimě, banjěmě

- 810 [A] 打·度  
[C] da 'beat, hit'  
[T] du \*du  
[G] tu-ku-mei (464)  
[K] dugumei  
[M] du- (now written  
tû-)
- 811 [A] 捉拿·劄發哈  
[C] zhuona 'sieve'  
[T] ja-fa-ha \*jafa-ha  
[G] čah-fah-pieh (365)  
[K] jafabi  
[M] jafa-  
[S] jafěmě
- 812 [A] 死·不尺黑  
[C] si 'die'  
[T] bu-či-he \*buči-he  
[G] puh-č'e-hei (389)  
[M] buce-  
[S] becěmě
- 813 [A] 情愿·亦你替哈  
[C] qingyuan 'willing'  
[T] i-ni-ti-ha \*ini tiha  
[M] ciha 'willing'  
ini cihai 'under his  
own strength'  
[S] ciha'i 'at will, freely,  
as one wishes'
- 814 [A] 懶惰·伴忽  
[C] landuo 'lazy'  
[T] ban-hu \*banhu  
[M] banuhûn  
[S] baněhuN

- 815 [A] 酒醒·奴勒速不哈  
 [C] jiuxing 'become sober'  
 [T] nu-le-su-bu-ha \*nure subu-ha  
 [M] subu-  
 [S] suvumě  
 [N] 1007-815
- 816 [A] 和藺·奴失  
 [C] he quan 'make  
 harmonious'  
 [T] nu-ši \*nuši  
 [N] cf. 778
- 817 [A] 跑馬·木力仗失勒  
 [C] pao ma 'race horses'  
 [T] mu-li-fu-ši-le \*muri fu[k]ši-re  
 [M] feksi- 'gallop'  
 [N] 410-817-re
- 818 [A] 廐殺·素力必  
 [C] sisha 'slaughter one  
 another, in battle;  
 a melee'  
 [T] su-li-bi \*suri-bi  
 [G] so-li-tu-man (455, 484)  
 [K] soriduman  
 [M] cf. sori- 'to be in  
 disorder, to be  
 confused'; sorindu-  
 'to be in total dis-  
 array, to be criss-  
 crossed'

- 819 [A] 打圍·撒哈答必  
 [C] dawei 'hunt' (v)  
 [T] sa-ha-da-bi \*sahada-bi  
 [G] sah-tah-mei (481)  
 [K] sahadamei  
 [M] sahada-  
 [N] Kiyose points out  
 that the first char.  
 in the J. script  
 version of this word  
 should be read \*saha,  
 even though the Ch.  
 transcription is the  
 single char. sa, and  
 has reconstructed the  
 word accordingly
- 820 [A] 商議·黑兀得  
 [C] shangyi 'discuss'  
 [T] he-u-de \*he'ude  
 [M] hebte-
- 821 [A] 搶擄·道力哈  
 [C] qiang lu 'to  
 capture'  
 [T] dao-li-ha \*dauri-ha  
 [M] duri- 'steal, snatch  
 away from'  
 [S] diurimě  
 [N] cf. 802 \*duri-
- 822 [A] 辭·革提黑  
 [C] ci 'take leave'  
 [T] ge-nie-he \*gene-he  
 [N] cf. 759
- 823 [A] 嗔怪·仗欣必  
 [C] chenguai 'rebuke'  
 [T] fu-hin-bi \*fuhi-mbi  
 [N] cf. 784

- 824 [A] 不賢良·通墨阿誇  
 [C] bu xianliang 'not  
 virtuous'  
 [T] tung-me-a-kua \*tungme akua  
 [N] no cognate  
 M. for Ch. xianliang  
 is mergen  
 J. \*akua = M. akû  
 (negative: there is  
 not, there is none)
- 825 [A] 接·我多  
 [C] jie 'meet'  
 [T] o-do \*o[k]do  
 [M] okdo-  
 [S] ohëdëmë, ohëdumë,  
 o'udume
- 826 [A] 怒·的力禿提  
 [C] nu 'anger, angry'  
 [T] di-li-tu-ti \*dili tuti  
 [M] jili  
 [S] jili  
 [N] \*tuti cf. 50
- 827 [A] 驚·過羅活  
 [C] jing 'frightened'  
 [T] go-lo-ho \*golo-ho  
 [M] golo-  
 [S] gelëmë Golëmë 'to be  
 palpitating with fear'
- 828 [A] 尋·伯因必  
 [C] xun 'search, look for'  
 [T] be-in-bi \*be'i-mbi  
 [M] bai-

- 829 [A] 送·伴的黑  
 [C] song 'send'  
 [T] ban-di-he \*bandi-he  
 [M] benji-
- 830 [A] 迎·我多火  
 [C] ying 'welcome'  
 [T] o-do-ho \*o[k]do-ho  
 [N] same as 825
- 831 [A] 無用·拜塔誇  
 [C] wu yong 'useless'  
 [T] bai-ta-kua \*baita-kua  
 [M] baitakû
- 832 [A] 催·哈體必  
 [C] cui 'urge'  
 [M] ha-ti-bi \*hati-bi  
 [M] hachihiya-
- 833 [A] 喚·素力墨哈的哈  
 [C] huan 'call, summon'  
 [T] su-li-me-ha-di-ha \*suri-me gadi-ha  
 [M] suri' 'to cry, shout,  
 scream'  
 gaji- 'to bring hither'
- 834 [A] 爭·恨者必  
 [C] zheng 'struggle'  
 [T] hen-je-bi \*henje/helje-bi  
 [M] Franke (1982) suggests  
 cf. M. elje- 'to  
 oppose, to resist,  
 defy'



- 835 [A] 勸解·塔伏刺哈  
 [C] quan jie 'mediate,  
 exhort to peace'  
 [T] ta-fu-la-ha \*tafula-ha  
 [M] tafula- 'warn,  
 dissuade from,  
 advise against'
- 836 [A] 不成<sup>uo</sup>·化<sup>uo</sup>厦刺誇  
 [C] bu cheng qi 'will not  
 become a useful  
 person'  
 [T] hua-ša-la-kua \*huaša-rakua  
 [M] hūwaša- 'increase,  
 develop, grow,  
 thrive, flourish,  
 get on well,  
 prosper, succeed'
- 837 [A] 作揖·常如刺  
 [C] zuo yi 'bow, salute'  
 [T] čang-žu-la \*čanzura  
 [M] canjura- 'to greet by  
 holding joined hands  
 up at face level and  
 bowing slightly'
- 838 [A] 答應·大納刺  
 [C] daying 'agree'  
 [T] da-na-la \*dana-ra  
 [M] no cognate
- 839 [A] 思量·伏捏占必  
 [C] siliang 'consider'  
 [T] fu-nie-šan-bi \*funieša-mbi  
 [M] funiyagan 'judgement,  
 reasoning faculty,  
 discernment'

- 840 [A] 不來·的勒誇  
 [C] bu lai 'don't come'  
 [T] di-le-kua \*di-rekua  
 [N] 758-rekua 'neg. imper.'
- 841 [A] 肚飢·後力兀倫必  
 [C] du ji '[stomach] hungry'  
 [T] heu-li-u-lun-bi \*heuli uru-mbi  
 [M] uru- 'hungry'  
 [S] 'urunēmě, 'urunumě  
 [N] 893-841
- 842 [A] 曉得·兀二希黑  
 [C] xiaode 'know, understand'  
 [T] u-r-hi-he \*ulhi-he  
 [M] ulhi 'understand'  
 [S] 'uliximě
- 843 [A] 仔細問·答忽答忽佛你速  
 [C] zixi wen 'ask in detail'  
 [T] da-hu-da-hu-fo-ni-su \*dahu dahu  
 [M] dahu- 'to do once more,  
 over and over'  
 [N] 843-774-su (imper.)  
 foni-su
- 844 [A] 拿來了·哥的哈  
 [C] nalai-le 'brought'  
 [T] go-di-ha \*godi-ha  
 [M] gaji- 'bring'  
 [N] cf. 833 \*gadi-  
 844-ha
- 845 [A] 不知道·撒刺誇  
 [C] bu zhidao 'don't know'  
 [T] sa-la-kua \*sa-rakua  
 [N] 42-rakua

- 846 [A] 不要這等·兀墨兀塔刺  
 [C] buyao zhe deng 'do not  
 act like this'  
 [T] u-me-u-ta-la \*ume utala  
 [M] ume 'verb used for  
 negating imperatives  
 (stands before the  
 imperfect participle)'  
 utala 'so much (many) as  
 this'  
 uttu 'thus, like this, so'  
 [S] 'utu 'in this way'
- 847 [A] 一起走·額本得伏力速  
 [C] yiqi zou 'go together'  
 [T] e-mu-de-fu-li-su \*emu-de fuli-su  
 [M] emu 'one'  
 de 'locative particle'  
 J. \*emu-de 'at one =  
 altogether'(?)  
 fuli-su cf. 201  
 [N] In both Awanokuni and  
Seikadō texts, the Ch.  
 version reads 'yiqi  
 deng' - 起等 ('wait  
 together'), a scribal  
 error probably  
 influenced by 846
- 848 [A] 教導·塔提  
 [C] jiaodao 'teach'  
 [T] ta-ti \*tati  
 [G] t'ah-t'i-puh-lu (805)  
 [T] tatiburu  
 [M] taci- 'learn'  
 [S] tacimě

- 849 [A] 早起·額兒得夜  
 [C] zao qi 'get up early'  
 [T] e-r-de-ye \*erde ye  
 [M] erde 'early'  
 cf. ili- 'to get up'  
 [S] cf. iimě 'to get up'  
 [N] S. ilamě = M. ili-
- 850 [A] 夢·托力希  
 [C] meng 'dream'  
 [T] to-li-hi \*tolihi  
 [G] t'oh-hing (356)  
 [K] tolgin  
 [M] tolgi- 'to dream'  
 tolgin 'dream'  
 (old form: tolhi-)  
 [S] tioloxiN, tioloxiněmě
- 851 [A] 請酒·奴勒蓋其  
 [C] qing jiu 'ask for wine'  
 [T] nu-le-gai-ki \*nure gai-ki  
 [N] -ki = optative form  
 1007-789
- 852 [A] 進馬·木力忒忒  
 [C] jin ma 'bring in horses'  
 [T] mu-li-te-te \*muri tete  
 [N] 410-764  
 cf. form J. \*tete-/  
 \*te[k]te- as distinct  
 from \*tede-/\*te[k]de-  
 in 764, but similar to  
 the G./ K. form (cf. K.  
 \*tetebuma)

- 853 [A] 放心 · 妹勒欣答  
 [C] fang xin 'do not worry'  
 [T] mei-le-hin-da \*meile hinda  
 [N] the M. equivalent is mujilen sinda-; a lit. translation of the Ch. fang xin (lit.) 'put down your heart'. The J. word for 'heart' is given in 942 as \*mužile, but in 941 (Ch. zhi xin 'to know one's heart' as \*meile sa-bi. Perhaps \*meile is a contracted form of \*mužile? M. meiren means 'shoulder' and does not seem to be related.
- 854 [A] 準備 · 塔眼非阿力速  
 [C] zhunbei 'prepare, make preparations'  
 [T] ta-hia-fi-a-li-su \*tahia-fi ali-su  
 [M] dagila- 'to prepare, to get ready'  
 -fi is the past participial suffix  
 ali- 'receive, take'  
 -su is an irr. imper. suffix
- 855 [A] 慢慢走 · 奴哈伙力速  
 [C] manman zou 'go slowly'  
 [T] nu-ha-fu-li-su \*nuha fuli-su  
 [G] nu-han (454)  
 [K] nuhan  
 [M] nuhan 'at ease, easygoing'  
 [N] 855-201-su (cf. 847)

- 856 [A] 朝廷重賞 · 哈安兀者尚四  
 [C] chaoting zhong shang  
 'the court will reward you well'  
 [T] ha-an-u-je-sang-si \*ha'an uje šangsi  
 [N] 653-67-763
- 857 [A] 回去不許作歹 · 木力兀墨額黑, 答發刺  
 [C] huiqu buxu zuo dai  
 'when you return you must not do anything bad'  
 [T] mu-li-u-me-e-he \*muri ume ehe  
 ja-fa-la jafa-ra  
 [M] jafa- 'assume, enter on, apply oneself to, take up'  
 ehe 'evil, wicked' (697)  
 [N] 768-846-697-857
- 858 [A] 年年進貢 · 阿捏阿捏得志得墨去  
 [C] niannian jin gong 'bring in tribute every year'  
 [T] a-nie-a-nie-de-te-me-diu \*anie anie de  
 tede-me diu  
 [N] 284-284-de[loc.part.]  
 764-me[gerund]-758[imper.]

- 859 [A] 今後進好馬來·額吉阿木失賽本力忒得墨去
- [C] jin hou jin hao ma lai  
'from now on bring in  
good horses'
- [T] e-gi-a-mu-ši-sai \*e[r]gi amuši sai  
mu-li-te-de-me-diu muri tede-me diu
- [M] J. \*e[r]gi amusi  
= M. ereci amasi  
'from here on'
- [N] in the Chinese text,  
  
馬 ma 'horse' is  
written 高 gao 'high';  
a scribal error  
859-694-410-764-me-758

- 860 [A] 不許犯邊·兀墨者尺巴得道力刺
- [C] bu xu fanbian 'you must  
not violate the  
border'
- [T] u-me-je-či-ba-de \*ume ječi ba-de  
dao-li-la dauri-ra
- [N] \*ječi ba-de is lit.  
'in the area of the  
border'; ba = place;  
-de 'loc. suffix'  
The Seikadō text here  
(according to Ishida)  
has bianfan; the Awo-  
nokuni fanbian, which  
is correct.

- 861 [A] 好生排着·賽哈者兒墨亦立
- [C] haosheng paizhe 'line  
up well'
- [T] sai-ha-je-r-me-i-li \*saika jerme ili  
[M] saikan 'nicely'  
jergile- 'to be in order,  
to be arranged according  
to rank'
- [N] perhaps the transcription  
is at fault here  
861-724
- 862 [A] 不許說話·兀墨吉速勒
- [C] bu xu shuo hua 'you are  
not allowed to talk'
- [T] u-me-gi-su-le \*ume gisure  
[M] gisure-  
[S] gisureme  
[M] 846-862
- 863 [A] 不要動身·兀墨背夜阿成加刺
- [C] bu yao dong shen 'you  
must not move your  
body'
- [T] u-me-bei-ye-a-čing-gia-la \*ume beye  
[M] ačinggia-ra
- [N] 846-887-791-ra
- 864 [A] 好生行禮·賽哈朵羅答哈
- [C] haosheng xing li 'perform  
the ceremony well'
- [T] sai-ha-do-lo-da-ha \*saika doro daha  
[M] doro 'rite, ritual'  
daha- 'obey, follow'
- [N] 861-864-864

- 865 [A] 不要奪人財物·兀墨捏麻亦兀力都力革力
- [C] bu yao duo ren caiwu  
'do not steal other  
people's property'  
u-me-nie-ma-i \*ume nie[l]ma-i  
u-li-du-li-le duri-re
- [N] 846-655-i[gen.]-767-802-re

- 866 [A] 不許多要酒肉·兀墨仗測奴勒牙力蓋刺
- [C] bu xu duo yao jiu rou  
'do not want too much  
wine and meat'  
[T] u-me-fu-tse-nu-le \*ume futse nure  
ya-li-gai-la yali gai-ra
- [M] no cognate for \*futse;  
M. for 'too much' is  
dabali. Franke (1982)  
suggests M. fusen,  
glossed in Hauer as  
'Fortpflanzung, Zuchtung,  
Vermehrung' and in Norman  
as 'propagation'
- [N] 846-866-1007-917-789-ra

- 867 [A] 法度利害·朵羅提塔忙哈
- [C] fadu lihai 'the laws are  
severe'  
[T] do-lo-ti-ta-mang-ha \*doro ti[k]ta  
mangga
- [M] doro 'right way, moral'  
ciktan 'relationship,  
natural law, principle'
- [N] 867-227

- 868 [A] 不要往上看·兀墨兀順托刺
- [C] bu yao wang shang kan  
'do not look upwards'  
[T] u-me-u-sun-to-la \*ume us[h]un to-ra  
[M] wesihun 'upwards'  
[N] 846-868-807-ra

- 869 [A] 不要擡頭·兀住兀墨禿苦失
- [C] bu yao tai tou  
do not lift your head'  
[T] u-ju-u-me-tu-ku-si \*uju ume tuku-si  
[M] tukiye- 'to lift up'  
[N] perhaps -si is a mistake,  
one might expect -la;  
cf. however Manchu  
tukiyeshun 'looking up,  
facing upwards'  
880-846-869

- 870 [A] 不要咳嗽·兀墨仗察刺
- [C] buyao kesou 'do not cough'  
[T] u-me-fu-ča-la \*ume fuča-ra  
[N] 846-957-ra

- 871 [A] 好生歸順朝廷·賽香哈安答哈
- [C] haosheng guishun chaoting  
'submit properly to  
the throne'  
[T] sai-kan-ha-an-da-ha \*saikan ha'an daha  
[N] In the Seikadō text,  
-kan- is omitted  
861-653-864 (cf. 14)

- 872 [A] 照舊做買賣·佛办華塞忽答厦  
 [C] zhaojiu zuo maimai  
       'do business as before'  
 [T] fo-i-ge-se-hu-da-ša \*fo-i gese hudaša  
 [N] 195-i[gen.]-26-698

- 873 [A] 今日進番字·客頭能吉必忒朵深必  
 [C] jinri jin fan zi 'today  
       offer barbarian  
       [native] writing'  
 [T] e-neng-gi-bi-te \*enenggi bit[h]le  
       do-šin-bi doši-mbi  
 [N] 281-1094-790-mbi

- 874 [A] 叩頭時叩頭·恨其勒矢恨其勒  
 [C] koutou shi koutou 'when  
       it is time to kowtow,  
       kowtow'  
 [T] hen-ki-le-ši-hen-ki-le \*hengikle-ši  
       hengkile  
 [N] this construction is  
       presumably based on  
       Chinese. Franke (1982)  
       suggests that -ši might  
       be the same as Manchu  
       -cī, the conditional  
       gerund suffix  
       761-874

- 875 [A] 起來時起來·亦立矢亦立  
 [C] qilai shi qilai 'when it  
       is time to rise, rise'  
 [T] i-li-ši-i-li \*ili-ši ili  
 [N] cf. comments 874  
       724-874

- 876 [A] 鞠躬時鞠躬·忽入矢忽入  
 [C] jugong shi jugong 'when  
       it is time to bow, bow'  
 [T] hu-žu-ši-hu-žu \*hužu-ši hužu  
 [N] 762-874

- 877 [A] 分散下程·厦承鄧得徹  
 [C] fen san xia cheng  
       'disperse according  
       to the set procedure'  
 [T] hia-čeng-deng-de-če \*hia čeng dendeče  
 [N] J. \*hia čeng < Ch. xia  
       cheng 'in accordance  
       with a set procedure'  
       877-801

- 878 [A] 今日領賞·客頭能吉尚四阿林必  
 [C] jinri lingshang 'today  
       you will be rewarded'  
 [T] e-neng-gi-šang-si \*enenggi šangsi  
       a-lin-bi ali-mbi  
 [M] ali- to accept, receive  
 [N] 281-763-878

- 879 [A] 明日謝恩·替麻哈能吉恨其勒  
 [C] mingri xie en 'tomorrow  
       you will give thanks  
       [for the kindnesses  
       bestowed on you]'  
 [T] ti-me-ha-neng-gi \*timaha nenggi  
       hen-ki-le hengkile  
 [N] the J. expression is  
       lit. 'tomorrow you  
       will kowtow'

## SECTION TEN - PARTS OF THE BODY

880 [A] 頭 · 兀佳

[C] tou 'head'  
 [T] u-ju  
 [G] wuh-č'u (492)  
 [K] uju  
 [M] uju  
 [S] 'uju

\*uŋu

881 [A] 目 · 牙散

[C] mu 'eye'  
 [T] ya-sa  
 [G] ya-ši (496)  
 [K] yaši  
 [M] yasa  
 [S] yasě

\*yasa

882 [A] 耳 · 尚

[C] er 'ear'  
 [T] šang  
 [G] ša-hah (497)  
 [K] šaa  
 [M] šan  
 [S] šaN, saN

\*šan

883 [A] 鼻 · 宋吉

[C] bi 'nose'  
 [T] sung-gi  
 [G] suang-kih (501)  
 [K] songi  
 [M] songgiha 'tip of  
 the nose'

\*sunggi

884 [A] 口 · 昂哈

[C] kou 'mouth'  
 [T] ang-ha  
 [G] 'an-hah[ka] (494)  
 [K] amga  
 [M] angga  
 [S] 'aŋě

\*angga

885 [A] 舌 · 亦冷吉

[C] she 'tongue'  
 [T] i-leng-gi  
 [G] yih-leng-ku (499)  
 [K] ilengu  
 [M] ilenggu  
 [S] 'ileně, 'ilŋi

\*ilenggi

886 [A] 齒 · 未黑

[C] chi 'teeth'  
 [T] wei-he  
 [G] we-hei (495)  
 [K] weihe  
 [M] weihe  
 [S] viixě

\*weihe

887 [A] 身 · 背夜

[C] shen 'body'  
 [T] bei-ye  
 [G] pei-ye (490)  
 [K] beye  
 [M] beye  
 [S] be'i

\*beye

888 [A] 手 · 哈刺

[C] shou 'hand'  
 [T] ha-la  
 [G] hah[ka]-lah (504)  
 [M] gala  
 [S] Galě

\*gala

- 889 [A] 脚·伯帖  
 [C] jiao 'foot'  
 [T] be-tie \*betie  
 [G] puh-tih-hei (505)  
 [K] budihe  
 [M] bethe  
 [S] betɛxɛ, betɛkɛ  
 [N] in view of the G. and  
 M. forms, perhaps a  
 reconstruction \*bet[h]ie  
 or \*bet[h]e is  
 possible
- 890 [A] 髮·分黑  
 [C] fa 'hair'  
 [T] fun-he \*funhe  
 [N] cf. 481
- 891 [A] 面·得勒  
 [C] mian 'face'  
 [T] de-le \*dere  
 [G] t'eh-'oh (491)  
 [K] tee  
 [M] dere  
 [S] derɛ
- 892 [A] 心·捏麻  
 [C] xin 'heart'  
 [T] nie-ma \*niema  
 [M] niyaman  
 [S] niamɛN
- 893 [A] 腹·後力  
 [C] fu 'stomach'  
 [T] heu-li \*heuli  
 [M] hefeli, hefeliye  
 [S] kevɛlɛ, xevɛlɛ

- 894 [A] 皮·速古  
 [C] pi 'skin'  
 [T] su-gi [=gu] \*sugu  
 [G] su-ku (514)  
 [K] sugu  
 [M] suku  
 [S] soqɛ  
 [N] the transcription  
 char. 古 -gi  
 must be a mistake  
 for 古 -gu;  
 c.f. 645, 752 as  
 well as the G. and  
 M. forms
- 895 [A] 骨·吉郎吉  
 [C] gu 'bone'  
 [T] gi-lang-gi \*giranggi  
 [G] kih-po-kih =  
 kih-lang-kih (510)  
 [K] girangi  
 [M] giranggi  
 [S] giranɛ  
 [N] the char. 波 po  
 in G. 510 should be  
 浪 lang
- 896 [A] 腦後·忽荅  
 [C] naohou 'back part of  
 the head'  
 [T] hu-da \*huda  
 [M] hoto 'cranium'  
 [S] hotɛ



- 897 [A] 眼珠·牙撒發哈  
 [C] yanzhu 'pupil [of  
 the eye]'  
 [T] ya-sa-fa-ha \*yasa faha  
 [M] yasa faha  
 [S] yasəfahə
- 898 [A] 眉毛·發塔  
 [C] meimao 'eyebrow'  
 [T] fa-ta \*fata  
 [G] fei-t'ah (500)  
 [M] faitan  
 [S] yasəfa'idəN
- 899 [A] 喉·必刺  
 [C] hou 'throat'  
 [T] bi-la \*bil[h]a  
 [M] bilha  
 [S] biləhaa
- 900 [A] 腮·分尺  
 [C] sai 'cheek'  
 [T] fun-či \*funči  
 [M] fulcin  
 [S] filiciN  
 [N] as in similar cases,  
 it is difficult to  
 decide between  
 \*funči and \*fulči
- 901 [A] 乳·姑谷  
 [C] ru 'breast'  
 [T] gu-gu \*gugu  
 [G] huh-hun (541)  
 [K] huhun  
 [M] huhun  
 [S] xuxuN

- 902 [A] 鬚·撒  
 [C] xu 'whiskers'  
 [T] sa-[ ] \*sa[ ]?  
 [M] salu  
 [S] salə  
 [N] perhaps -lu is  
 missing from the  
 transcription
- 903 [A] 背·費徹  
 [C] bei 'back'  
 [T] fi-če[=sa] \*fisa  
 [G] fei-sah (503)  
 [K] fisa  
 [M] fisa  
 [S] fisaa
- [N] 徹 -če is a scribal  
 error for 撒 -sa
- 904 [A] 胸·痛革  
 [C] xiong 'chest'  
 [T] tung-ge \*tungge  
 [G] t'ung-'oh (502)  
 [K] tunge  
 [M] tunggun  
 [S] tunəN
- 905 [A] 臍·額冷古  
 [C] qi 'navel'  
 [T] e-leng-gu \*elenggu  
 [M] ulenggu  
 [S] 'uluŋu
- 906 [A] 口唇·昂哈富莫  
 [C] kouchun 'lips'  
 [T] ang-ha-fu-mo \*angga fumo  
 [G] fuh-muh (498)  
 [K] fumu  
 [M] femen  
 [S] feməN

- 907 [A] 脇·額元尺  
[C] xie 'ribs'  
[T] e-u-či \*e'uči  
[M] ebcī  
[S] 'efěci
- 908 [A] 腰·朵額  
[C] yao 'waist'  
[T] do-e \*do'e  
[M] darama, dara  
[S] darēmē
- 909 [A] 膝·布希  
[C] xi 'knee'  
[T] bu-hi \*bui  
[M] buhi
- 910 [A] 肩·妹勒  
[C] jian 'shoulder'  
[T] mei-re \*meire  
[M] meiren  
[S] miriN
- 911 [A] 手節·哈刺答刺  
[C] shoujie 'knuckles'  
[T] ha-la-ja-la \*gala jala  
[M] jalan  
[S] jaləN  
[N] 888-911
- 912 [A] 手指·哈刺深木洪  
[C] shouzhi 'finger'  
[T] ha-la-šin-mu-hun \*gala šinmuhun  
[M] simhun  
[S] šiumuxuN  
[N] 888-912

- 913 [A] 腿肚·素恩哈後力  
[C] tuidu 'calf [of the  
leg]'  
[T] su-s -ha-heu-li \*susha heuli  
[N] 916-893
- 914 [A] 指甲·希塔洪  
[C] zhijia 'fingernail'  
[T] hi-ta-hung \*hitahun  
[M] hitahūn  
[S] kiatěhuN
- 915 [A] 脚拐·伯帖賽哈答  
[C] jiaoguai 'shin'  
[T] be-tie-sai-ha-da \*betie saihada  
[M] saihada  
[N] 889-915
- 916 [A] 腿·素恩哈  
[C] tui 'leg'  
[T] su-s -ha \*susha  
[M] suksaha 'thigh'
- 917 [A] 肉·牙力  
[C] rou 'flesh, meat'  
[T] ya-li \*yali  
[G] ya-li (511, 521)  
[K] yali  
[M] yali  
[S] yali
- 918 [A] 脚跟·伯帖貴  
[C] jiaogen 'heel'  
[T] be-tie-gui \*betie gui  
[M] guye  
[N] 889-918

- 919 [A] 肝·發洪  
 [C] gan 'liver'  
 [T] fa-hung \*fahun  
 [M] fahûn  
 [S] fahuN
- 920 [A] 血·生吉  
 [C] xue 'blood'  
 [T] šeng-gi \*šenggi  
 [G] seh-kih (512)  
 [K] segi  
 [M] senggi  
 [S] šingē
- 921 [A] 腸·肚哈  
 [C] chang 'intestines'  
 [T] du-ha \*duha  
 [G] tu-hah (507)  
 [K] duha  
 [M] duha  
 [S] duhaa
- 922 [A] 肺·兀浦  
 [C] fei 'lung'  
 [T] u-pu[?] \*upu  
 [M] ufuhu  
 [S] 'ufux  
 [N] the char. 浦 has  
 the reading pu, but  
 in view of the M.  
 and S. equivalents,  
 it would seem to  
 be read here fu
- 923 [A] 膽·矢力希  
 [C] dan 'gall-bladder'  
 [T] šī-li-hi \*šilihi  
 [G] ših-li-hi (516)  
 [K] šilihi  
 [M] silhi  
 [S] šilixi

- 924 [A] 汗·内  
 [C] han 'sweet'  
 [T] nei \*nei  
 [M] nei  
 [S] lii
- 925 [A] 骨髓·兀木哈  
 [C] sui 'marrow [of  
 bone]'  
 [T] u-mu-ha \*umuha  
 [M] umgan (old form:  
 umhan)  
 [S] 'umēhaN
- 926 [A] 力·忽速  
 [C] li 'strength'  
 [T] hu-su \*husu  
 [G] huh-sun (513)  
 [M] hūsun  
 [S] husuN
- 927 [A] 梳頭·兀住亦的  
 [C] shu tou 'comb the hair'  
 [T] u-ju-i-di \*uju idi  
 [M] iji-  
 [N] 880-927
- 928 [A] 光頭·兀住吉塔洪  
 [C] guangtou 'bald head'  
 [T] u-ju-gi-ta-hung \*uju gitahun  
 [M] gincihiyan 'smooth,  
 even, glazed'  
 [N] 880-928
- 929 [A] 留頭·兀住分黑素老  
 [C] liu tou 'to let one's  
 hair grow long'  
 [T] u-ju-fun-he-su-lao \*uju funhe sulau  
 [M] sulabu- 'to let free  
 [as of hair]'  
 [N] 880-481-929

- 930 [A] 開眼·牙撒內  
[C] kai yan 'open the eyes'  
[T] ya-sa-nei \*yasa nei  
[N] 881-46
- 931 [A] 洗臉·得勒教  
[C] xi lian 'wash the face'  
[T] de-le-au \*dere au  
[M] obo- 'to wash'  
[S] 'ovēmě, 'ovumě  
[N] 891-931
- 932 [A] 開口·昂哈內  
[C] kai kou 'open the mouth'  
[T] ang-ha-nei \*angga nei  
[N] 884-46
- 933 [A] 閉眼·牙撒倪出  
[C] bi yan 'close the eyes'  
[T] ya-sa-ni-ču \*yasa niču  
[M] nicu- 'to close the eyes'  
[N] 881-993
- 934 [A] 漱口·昂哈矢力夏  
[C] shu kou 'wash the mouth'  
[T] ang-ha-ši-li-hia \*angga šilihia  
[M] silgiya- 'to rinse out [the mouth with water]'  
[N] 884-934
- 935 [A] 剃頭·兀住仗'日  
[C] ti tou 'shave the head'  
[T] u-ju-fu-ži \*uju fuži  
[M] fusi- 'to shave'  
[N] 880-935

- 936 [A] 嘆氣·塞牒勒深必  
[C] tan qi 'sigh' (v)  
[T] se-die-le-šin-bi \*sedieleši-mbi  
[M] sejile-  
[S] sejilēmě
- 937 [A] 涕噴·牙尺墨  
[C] tifen 'sneeze' (v)  
[T] ya-či-me \*yači-me  
[M] yacihiya-  
[S] yacixiamě
- 938 [A] 出淚·的刺墨壳提黑  
[C] chu lei 'weep'  
[T] di-la-me-tu-ti-he \*dila-me tuti-he  
[M] jila- 'to feel pity for'  
[N] 938-me-50-he
- 939 [A] 眼跳·牙撒仗'春必  
[C] yan tiao 'eye twitches'  
[T] ya-sa-fu-čun-bi \*yasa fu[k]ču-mbi  
[M] fekce- 'to jump'  
[S] fekumě  
[N] 881-939
- 940 [A] 費心·歲刺出哈  
[C] fei xin 'worry, be distressed'  
[T] sui-la-ču-ha \*suilačuka  
[M] suilacuka 'painful, distressing'
- 941 [A] 知心·妹勒撒必  
[C] zhi xin 'to know one's heart [mind]'  
[T] mei-le-sa-bi \*meile sa-bi  
[N] 852-42-bi

- 942 [A] 心寬·木日勒我撮  
 [C] xin kuan 'magnanimous'  
 [T] mu-ži-le-o-tso \*mužile o[n]tso  
 [G] meh[mai]-žih-lan-[poh] (506)  
 [K] mežilenbe  
 [M] mujilen 'heart, mind'  
 onco 'magnanimous'  
 [N] cf. 852 and 941 above  
 the G. and K. forms are  
 in the accusative
- 943 [A] 心直·木日勒團多  
 [C] xin zhi 'heart is upright'  
 [T] mu-ži-le-ton-do \*mužile tondo  
 [N] 942-691
- 944 [A] 擡手·哈刺答發  
 [C] qian shou 'hold the hand'  
 [T] ha-la-ja-fa \*gala ĵafa  
 [M] jafa- 'to catch hold of'  
 [S] jafěmě  
 [N] 888-944
- 945 [A] 叉手·哈刺照刺  
 [C] cha shou 'join the hands  
 [in greeting]'  
 [T] ha-la-jao-la \*gala ĵaula  
 [M] joola-  
 [N] 888-945
- 946 [A] 拍手·發郎哈都  
 [C] pai shou 'clap the hands'  
 [T] fa-lang-ha-du \*falangga du  
 [M] [galai] falangga  
 [S] [Gale'i] faleŋě  
 [N] 946-810

- 947 [A] 搔痒·兀廈必  
 [C] saoyang 'scratch'  
 [T] u-ša-bi \*uša-bi  
 [M] waša-  
 [S] vašěmě, vašěmě
- 948 [A] 洗澡·歐塞  
 [C] xizao 'wash, bathe'  
 [T] eu-se \*euse  
 [M] ebiše-  
 [S] 'efěšěmě, 'efěšěmě  
 'to swim'
- 949 [A] 頭疼·兀佳虎們必  
 [C] tou teng 'head ache'  
 [T] u-ju-ni-men-bi \*uju nime-mbi  
 [N] 880-952
- 950 [A] 指節·深木洪答刺  
 [C] zhijie 'knuckles'  
 [T] šin-mu-hung-ja-la \*šinmuhun ĵala  
 [N] 912-911
- 951 [A] 聲·的魯阿  
 [C] sheng 'voice'  
 [T] di-lu-a \*dilu'a  
 [G] tih-leh-'an (780)  
 [K] dilgan  
 [M] jilgan  
 [S] jilěhaN
- 952 [A] 疼·倪們必  
 [C] teng 'painful'  
 [T] ni-men-bi \*nime-mbi  
 [M] nime-  
 [S] niměmě

- 953 [A] 鼻梁·宋吉禿刺  
 [C] biliang 'bridge of  
 the nose'  
 [T] sung-gi-tu-la \*sunggi tura  
 [M] tura 'pillow, post,  
 support' (cf. 560)  
 [S] turaa 'post'  
 [N] 883-953
- 954 [A] 鼻孔·宋吉桑哈  
 [C] bikong 'nostril'  
 [T] sung-gi-sang-ha \*sunggi sangga  
 [M] sangga 'cave'  
 [S] sanĕ
- 955 [A] 心焦·本日勒着我心  
 [C] xinjiao 'distressed'  
 [T] mu-ži-le-jo-o-bi \*mužile jo'o-bi  
 [G] čoh-puh-wen (844)  
 [K] jobogun  
 [M] jobo-  
 [S] jověmē, jovumē 'to  
 suffer'
- 956 [A] 頭暈·兀住墨禿  
 [C] tou yun 'dizzy, giddy'  
 [T] u-ju-me-tu \*uĵu me[n]tu  
 [M] mentuhun 'stupid, silly'  
 [S] meNtuxuN
- 957 [A] 咳嗽·伙察必  
 [C] kesou 'cough' (v)  
 [T] fu-ča-bi \*fuča-bi  
 [M] fucihiya-  
 [S] fěqēsamē

- 958 [A] 低頭·兀住的答  
 [C] di tou 'lower the head'  
 [T] u-ju-di-da \*uĵu dida  
 [M] uju gida- 'to let the  
 head hang'  
 [N] 880-958
- 959 [A] 脚指·伯帖深木洪  
 [C] jiaozhi 'toe'  
 [T] be-tie-sin-mu-hung \*betie sinmuhun  
 [N] 889-912
- 960 [A] 大膽·朱力希昂八  
 [C] da dan 'courageous,  
 cheeky'  
 [T] ši-li-hi-ang-ba \*šilihi amba  
 [N] both Ch. and J.  
 expressions lit.  
 mean 'big gall-  
 bladder'  
 923-1153
- 961 [A] 肚疼·後力倪們必  
 [C] du teng 'stomach ache'  
 [T] heu-li-ni-men-bi \*heuli nime-mbi  
 [N] 893-952-mbi

## SECTION ELEVEN - CLOTHING

- 962 [A] 衣·阿都  
 [C] yi 'clothes'  
 [T] a-du \*adu  
 [G] hah-tu (554)  
 [K] hadu  
 [M] adu
- 963 [A] 布衫·大古  
 [C] bushan 'shirt'  
 [T] da-gu \*dagu  
 [N] cf. 980
- 964 [A] 襖子·托羅幹  
 [C] aozi 'jacket'  
 [T] to-lo-gan \*tologan  
 [M] no cognate
- 965 [A] 帶子·兀切  
 [C] daizi 'belt'  
 [T] u-čie \*učie  
 [M] uše
- 966 [A] 裙·忽失哈  
 [C] qun 'skirt'  
 [T] hu-ši-ha \*hušiha  
 [G] huh-ših-'an (552)  
 [K] husigan  
 [M] husihan

- 967 [A] 褲·哈刺古  
 [C] ku 'trousers'  
 [T] ha-la-gu \*halagu  
 [G] hah-lah-k'u (553)  
 [K] halaku  
 [M] halakû
- 968 [A] 靴·谷魯哈  
 [C] xue 'boot'  
 [T] gu-lu-ha \*guluha  
 [G] ku-lah-hah (546)  
 [K] gulaha  
 [M] gûlha  
 [S] Gulëhaa
- 969 [A] 襪子·伏莫尺  
 [C] wazi 'socks'  
 [T] fu-mo-či \*fumoči  
 [G] fuh-č'i (556)  
 [K] foci  
 [M] fomoci
- 970 [A] 鞋·掃  
 [C] xie 'shoe'  
 [T] sao \*sau  
 [G] sa-pu (555)  
 [K] sabu  
 [M] sabu  
 [S] savë
- 971 [A] 大帽·博羅  
 [C] da mao 'big hat'  
 [T] bo-lo \*boro  
 [M] boro 'hat worn during summer'

- 972 [A] 小帽·麻希刺  
 [C] xiao mao 'small hat'  
 [T] ma-hi-la \*mahila  
 [G] ma-hi-lah (547)  
 [K] mahila  
 [M] mahala  
 [S] mahēlē
- 973 [A] 綿衣·若不阿都  
 [C] mian yi 'wadded  
 clothes'  
 [T] ku-bu-a-du \*kubu adu  
 [N] 381-962
- 974 [A] 段·素者  
 [C] duan 'satin'  
 [T] su-je \*suje  
 [G] su-čē (563)  
 [K] suje  
 [M] suje  
 [S] sujii
- 975 [A] 布·博素  
 [C] bu 'cloth'  
 [T] bo-su \*bosu  
 [G] puh-su (559)  
 [K] bosu  
 [M] boso  
 [S] bosē
- 976 [A] 夾衣·佳勒素阿都  
 [C] jia yi 'lined  
 clothes'  
 [T] ju-le-su-a-du \*juresu adu  
 [M] jursu (etuku)  
 'padded clothing,  
 clothing made of  
 two layers'  
 [N] 976-962

- 977 [A] 穿·額秃  
 [C] chuan 'wear'  
 [T] e-tu \*etu  
 [G] 'oh-t'uh-hung (846)  
 [K] etuhun  
 [M] etu-  
 [S] 'utumē
- 978 [A] 袷·得黑勒  
 [C] dahu 'type of jacket'  
 [T] de-he-le \*dehele  
 [M] dehele 'short jacket  
 without sleeves'
- 979 [A] 單衣·兀木素阿都  
 [C] dan yi 'unpadded  
 clothes'  
 [T] u-mu-su-a-du \*umu[r]su adu  
 [M] emursu etuku  
 [N] 979-962
- 980 [A] 皮襖·答忽  
 [C] pi'ao 'fur-lined coat'  
 [T] da-hu \*dahu  
 [M] dahû  
 [N] cf. entry 978 above
- 981 [A] 汗衫·伙托  
 [C] hanshan 'shirt'  
 [T] fu-to \*fu[k]to  
 [M] fokto
- 982 [A] 縫衣·阿都阿藍必  
 [C] feng yi 'sew clothes'  
 [T] a-du-a-lan-bi \*adu ara-mbi  
 [N] 962-538



- 983 [A] 衣紐·托活  
 [C] yi niu 'button'  
 [T] to-ho \*toho  
 [M] tohon  
 [S] tohəN
- 984 [A] 脱衣·阿都素  
 [C] tuo yi 'take off  
 clothes'  
 [T] a-du-su \*adu su  
 [M] su-  
 [S] soomə
- 985 [A] 補衣·阿都捏帖必  
 [C] bu yi 'patch clothes'  
 [T] a-du-nie-tie-bi \*adu nietie-bi  
 [M] niyece-  
 [S] 'imecimə  
 [N] 962-985-bi
- 986 [A] 被褥·的伯洪矢塞  
 [C] bei ru 'bed quilt'  
 [T] di-be-hung-ši-se \*dibehun šis[h]e  
 [G] puh-tih-hung =  
 tih-puh-hung (557)  
 ših-ših-hei (558)  
 [K] dibohun  
 šisihe  
 [M] jibehun 'bedding quilt'  
 sishe 'mattress quilt'  
 [S] jifəxuN, jiufuxuN  
 sisəxee, sisəxə
- 987 [A] 手巾·拳苦  
 [C] shou jin 'napkin'  
 [T] fung-ku \*fungku  
 [M] fungku

- 988 [A] 絹·多課  
 [C] juan 'thin silk'  
 [T] do-ko \*doko  
 [M] doko 'lining of a  
 garment'  
 [S] doqu 'id.'
- 989 [A] 草鞋·幹兒火掃  
 [C] zaoxie 'shoes made  
 of grass'  
 [T] o-r-ho-sao \*orho sau  
 [N] 376-970
- 990 [A] 高麗布·素羅幹博素  
 [C] gaoli bu 'Korean cloth'  
 [T] su-lo-o-bo-su \*sulo'o bosu  
 [H] so-kuo (326)  
 [K] sogo/solgo?  
 [M] solho  
 [S] soləhoo
- 991 [A] 蟒龍衣·木都力阿都  
 [C] manglong yi 'dragon  
 clothes'  
 [T] mu-du-li-a-du \*muduri adu  
 [N] 406-962
- 992 [A] 毡衫·捏木兒客  
 [C] zhan shan 'felt shirt'  
 [T] nie-mu-r-e \*niemur'e  
 [M] cf. nemerku 'raincoat,  
 rainjacket';  
 nemerhen/nemergen 'a  
 raincoat made of  
 reeds'

- 993 [A] 網巾·望吉兒  
 [C] wang jin 'netting'  
 [T] wang-gi-r \*wanggir  
 [N] J. \*wanggir < Ch.
- 994 [A] 錦褥·昂出刺失塞  
 [C] jin ru 'brocade quilt'  
 [T] ang-ču-la-si-se \*ančura sis[h]e  
 [N] cf. 1064 \*anču 'gold';  
 cf. also 998 \*ančura  
 998(1064)-986
- 995 [A] 官帽·掛爾麻希刺  
 [C] guan mao 'official's hat'  
 [T] gua-ni-ma-hi-la \*guan-i mahila  
 [N] \*guan < Ch.  
 995-i[gen.]-972
- 996 [A] 束帶·掛爾兀木素  
 [C] shudai 'type of belt worn  
 by officials'  
 [T] gua-ni-u-mu-si \*guan-i umusu  
 [M] umiyesun  
 [S] nimesuN, niumusuN  
 [N] 995-i[gen.]-996
- 997 [A] 細布·納兒洪博素  
 [C] xi bu 'fine cloth'  
 [T] na-r-hung-bo-su \*narhun bosu  
 [N] 187-975

- 998 [A] 織金袍·昂出刺哈革出力  
 [C] zhi jin pao 'a long  
 robe embroidered  
 with gold'  
 [T] ang-ču-la-ha-ge-ču-li \*ančura  
 (ge-ču-ha-li?) gečuhari  
 [G] 'an-č'un-wen-lah-hai (564)  
 [K] ancunlahai  
 [M] gecuhari 'brocade, satin  
 with dragons or flowers  
 depicted on it'  
 [N] the transcription reads  
 ha-ge-ču-li (in that order);  
 Ishida suggested the  
 arrangement ge-ču-ha-li  
 which, in the light of  
 M. gecuhari, has been  
 adopted here  
 994-998
- 999 [A] 毡條·割伙失塞  
 [C] zhan tiao 'felt mattress'  
 [T] ja-fu-si-se \*jafu sis[h]e  
 [M] jafu 'felt'  
 [S] jafě 'homespun carpet'  
 [N] 999-986
- 1000 [A] 粗布·麻博素  
 [C] cu bu 'coarse cloth'  
 [T] ma-bo-su \*ma bosu  
 [G] ma-rh (671)  
 [K] mar  
 [M] muwa  
 [S] maa  
 [N] 1000-975

- 1001 [A] 羅·洛  
 [C] luo 'gauze, gossamer'  
 [T] lo \*lo  
 [G] lo (562)  
 [K] lo  
 [N] \*lo < Chinese
- 1002 [A] 披肩·廈木扒  
 [C] pei jian 'shawl'  
 [T] sa-mu-pa \*samupa  
 [M] no cognate
- 1003 [A] 紗·廈  
 [C] sha 'gauze'  
 [T] ša \*ša  
 [G] ša (561)  
 [K] ša  
 [M] ša  
 [S] ša
- 1004 [A] 綾·零紫  
 [C] ling 'damask'  
 [T] ling-ze \*lingze  
 [N] \*lingze < Chinese
- 1005 [A] 麻布·着多  
 [C] ma bu 'hempen fabric'  
 [T] jo-do \*jodo  
 [M] jodon
- 1006 [A] 胡帽·發土麻希刺  
 [C] hu mao 'barbarian hat'  
 [T] fa-tu-ma-hi-la \*fatu mahila  
 [M] cf. fadu 'bag, pouch'  
 [N] 1006-973

## SECTION TWELVE - FOOD AND DRINK

- 1007 [A] 酒·奴勒  
 [C] jiu 'wine'  
 [T] nu-le \*nure  
 [G] nu-lieh (520)  
 [K] nure  
 [M] nure  
 [S] nure
- 1008 [A] 飯·不答  
 [C] fan '[uncooked]  
 rice'  
 [T] bu-da \*buda  
 [G] puh-tu-kwai (523)  
 [K] budgai  
 [M] buda  
 [S] bēdaa
- 1009 [A] 醬·迷速  
 [C] jiang 'sauce'  
 [T] mi-su \*misu  
 [G] yih-suh-wen (528)  
 [K] isgun  
 [M] misun 'soya sauce'  
 [S] misuN 'fermented  
 bean paste'

- 1010 [A] 鹽·苔粗  
 [C] yan 'salt'  
 [T] da-tsu \*datsu  
 [G] tah-puh-sun (527)  
 [K] dabsun  
 [M] dabsun  
 [S] dafěsuN  
 [N] in light of the  
 G./K. and M. forms,  
 perhaps the under-  
 lying word here  
 is \*dabsun, though  
 one might expect  
 \*dausun in Jurchen
- 1011 [A] 油·莽猛吉  
 [C] you 'oil'  
 [T] i-meng-gi \*imenggi  
 [G] yih-men-kih (526)  
 [K] imengi  
 [M] imenggi, nimenggi  
 [S] niměŋě
- 1012 [A] 火·他  
 [C] huo 'fire'  
 [T] ta \*ta  
 [G] t'oh-wei (21)  
 [K] tuwe  
 [M] tuwa  
 [S] tuaa
- 1013 [A] 柴·莫  
 [C] chai 'firewood'  
 [T] mo \*mo  
 [N] cf. 352
- 1014 [A] 鹹·哈秃  
 [C] xian 'salty'  
 [T] ha-tu \*hatu  
 [M] hatuhûn  
 [S] hatěhuN

- 1015 [A] 煮·不祝  
 [C] zhu 'cook' (v)  
 [T] bu-ju \*buju  
 [M] buju-  
 [S] bujumě
- 1016 [A] 酸·珠書  
 [C] suan 'sour'  
 [T] ju-su \*ju  
 [M] jušuhun  
 [S] jiušixuN
- 1017 [A] 食·者伙  
 [C] shi 'eat'  
 [T] je-fu \*jefu  
 [G] če-fuh (535)  
 [K] jefu  
 [M] je- ; jefu (imper.)  
 [S] jemě  
 [N] \*jefu is in the  
 imperative form
- 1018 [A] 湯·失勒  
 [C] tang 'soup; hot water'  
 [T] ši-le \*šile  
 [M] sile  
 [S] silee
- 1019 [A] 淡·泥塔  
 [C] dan 'weak [in taste]'  
 [T] ni-ta \*nita  
 [G] nih-t'ah-pa (463)  
 [K] nitaba  
 [M] nitan

- 1020 [A] 糖·麻湯  
 [C] tang 'sugar'  
 [T] ma-tang \*matan  
 [M] matan 'a kind of  
 sweet food made from  
 barley; malt candy;  
 < Ch. 麻糖 matang
- 1021 [A] 甜·當出  
 [C] tian 'sweet'  
 [T] dang-ču \*danču  
 [M] jancuhun
- 1022 [A] 中飯·亦能吉不答  
 [C] zhong fan 'noon meal'  
 [T] i-neng-gi-bu-da \*inenggi buda  
 [N] 29-1008
- 1023 [A] 麪·兀發  
 [C] mian 'flour, noodles'  
 [T] u-fa \*ufa  
 [G] wuh-fah (531)  
 [K] ufa  
 [M] ufa  
 [S] 'ufaa
- 1024 [A] 生肉·額速牙力  
 [C] sheng rou 'raw meat'  
 [T] e-su-ya-li \*es[h]u yali  
 [G] wuh-suh-hung (539)  
 [K] ushun  
 [M] eshun  
 [S] 'usəxəN, 'usuxuN  
 [N] 1024-917

- 1025 [A] 蜜·希粗  
 [C] mi 'honey'  
 [T] hi-tsu \*hitsu  
 [M] hibsu  
 [S] kifəsuu  
 [N] the transcription  
 might represent a  
 Jurchen form \*hibsu,  
 but one might expect  
 a form such as \*hiusu
- 1026 [A] 豆腐·奴哈  
 [C] doufu 'bean-curd'  
 [T] nu-ha \*nuha  
 [M] no cognate
- 1027 [A] 晚飯·樣的不答  
 [C] wanfan 'evening meal'  
 [T] yang-di-bu-da \*yamdi buda  
 [N] 275-1008
- 1028 [A] 熟肉·兀勒黑牙力  
 [C] shu rou 'cooked meat'  
 [T] u-le-he-ya-li \*ure-he yali  
 [G] wuh-lu-hei (539)  
 [K] urhe  
 [M] ure- 'to be well-  
 cooked, to be  
 done [of food]'  
 [S] 'uruxə yali  
 [N] 1028-917
- 1029 [A] 燒酒·阿兒其  
 [C] shao jiu 'araki'  
 [T] a-r-ki \*arki  
 [M] arki  
 [S] 'iariki 'distilled  
 liquor or spirits'

- 1030 [A] 米糠·伯勒阿刺  
[C] mikang 'rice-bran,  
paddy-chaff'  
[T] be-le-a-la \*bele ara  
[N] 359-405
- 1031 [A] 把酒·奴勒答發  
[C] ba jiu 'raise one's  
wine-cup [as a  
sign of respect]'  
[T] nu-le-ja-fa \*nure jafa  
[N] 1007-944
- 1032 [A] 貪酒·奴勒温木忽  
[C] tan jiu 'be greedy  
for wine'  
[T] nu-le-un-mu-hu \*nure unmuhu  
[M] no cognate  
[N] 1007-1032
- 1033 [A] 飲酒·奴勒兀迷  
[C] yin jiu 'drink wine'  
[T] nu-le-u-mi \*nure umi  
[N] 1007-1047
- 1034 [A] 熱酒·哈魯奴勒  
[C] re jiu 'hot [=warm]  
wine'  
[T] ha-lu-nu-le \*hal[h]u nure  
[N] 276-1007
- 1035 [A] 冷酒·廈忽魯奴勒  
[C] leng jiu 'cold wine'  
[T] ša-hu-lu-nu-le \*šahuru nure  
[N] 277-1007

- 1036 [A] 燒火·他得的  
[C] shao huo 'light a  
fire'  
[T] ta-de-di \*ta dedi  
[N] 1012-1042
- 1037 [A] 滾水·費塞木克  
[C] gun shui 'boiling water'  
[T] fi-se-mu-ke \*fise muke  
[M] fuye- 'to boil'  
[S] fe'ixě mukee  
[N] perhaps -se- is a  
mistake for -he-  
1037-131
- 1038 [A] 火炭·他牙哈  
[C] huo tan 'charcoal'  
[T] ta-ya-ha \*ta yaha  
[M] yaha  
[N] 1012-1038
- 1039 [A] 腥·泥速  
[C] xing 'offensive smell,  
especially of fish or  
blood'  
[N] ni-su \*ni[n]su  
[M] nincuhun
- 1040 [A] 割肉·牙力非塔  
[C] ge rou 'cut meat'  
[T] ya-li-fi-ta \*yali fita  
[M] faita-  
[S] fiatěme  
[N] 917-cf.634
- 1041 [A] 臭·穢洪  
[C] chou 'stinking'  
[T] wa-hung \*wahun  
[M] wahun  
[S] vahuN

- 1042 [A] 燒·得的黑  
 [C] shao 'burn'  
 [T] de-di-he \*dedi-he  
 [M] dei-ji-  
 [S] dejimě, dijimě
- 1043 [A] 乾靜·博羅課  
 [C] ganjing 'clean'  
 [T] bol-lo-ko \*boloko  
 [M] bolgo  
 [S] bolěhēn, bolěhuN
- 1044 [A] 齒齷·哈塔出哈  
 [C] wochuo 'dirty. good-  
 for-nothing'  
 [T] ha-ta-ču-ha \*hatačuka  
 [M] hatacuka
- 1045 [A] 咬·兀革力  
 [C] yao 'bite'  
 [T] u-le \*u-re  
 [N] cf. 492, 521 \*u-mbi  
 'to bite'
- 1046 [A] 茶·插  
 [C] cha 'tea'  
 [T] ča \*ča  
 [N] < Chinese
- 1047 [A] 飲·兀迷  
 [C] yin 'drink'  
 [T] u-mi \*umi  
 [M] omi-  
 [S] iomimě

- 1048 [A] 煎·費伙  
 [C] jian 'fry'  
 [T] fi-fu \*fifu  
 [M] fuifu- 'cook' (v)
- 1049 [A] 奠酒·奴勒撒兀  
 [C] dian jiu 'pour a  
 libation of wine'  
 [T] nu-le-sa-u \*nure sa'u  
 [M] cf. subu- 'to slake  
 [one's thirst]'
- 1050 [A] 向火·他費革力  
 [C] xiang huo 'move towards  
 the fire'  
 [T] ta-fi-le \*ta file  
 [M] file- 'to warm oneself  
 by the fire'  
 [N] 1012-1050
- 1051 [A] 點火·他泥都  
 [C] dian huo 'light a fire'  
 [T] ta-ni-du \*ta nidu  
 [M] no cognate  
 [N] 1012-1051
- 1052 [A] 放火·他興答必  
 [C] fang huo 'fire off,  
 set fire to'  
 [T] ta-hin-da-bi \*ta hinda-bi  
 [M] sinda- 'to fire  
 [a gun]'  
 [S] seNdamě, siNdamě  
 [N] cf. 853, where J.  
 \*hinda- also  
 corresponds to  
 M. sinda-  
 1012-cf. 853

- 1053 [A] 飯飽·不答額于墨  
 [C] fan bao 'full [of  
       food]; satiated'  
 [T] bu-da-e-yu-me       \*buda eyu-me  
 [G] 'oh-pih-leh (537)  
 [K] ebire  
 [M] ebi- 'to eat one's  
       fill'  
 [S] 'iivemē  
 [N] 1008-1053
- 1054 [A] 香·亨  
 [C] xiang 'incense'  
 [T] hiang               \*hiang  
 [N] < Chinese
- 1055 [A] 口渴·昂哈我羅活必  
 [C] kou ke 'be thirsty'  
 [T] ang-ha-o-lo-ho-bi       \*angga oloho-bi  
 [N] 884-235-bi
- 1056 [A] 麴·忽忽  
 [C] qu 'yeast'  
 [T] hu-hu               \*huhu  
 [M] huhu  
 [S] xuxuu 'leaven'
- 1057 [A] 醋·粗  
 [C] cu 'vinegar'  
 [T] tsu               \*tsu  
 [N] < Chinese
- 1058 [A] 菜蔬·素吉哈尺  
 [C] cai su 'vegetable  
       food (as opposed  
       to meat)  
 [T] su-gi-ha-č'i       \*sugi hač'i  
 [M] hacin 'sort, type'  
 [N] 353-43

- 1059 [A] 早飯·替麻里不答  
 [C] zaofan 'breakfast'  
 [T] ti-ma-li-bu-da       \*timari buda  
 [N] 272-1008
- 1060 [A] 火灰·他仗冷吉  
 [C] huo hui 'fire ashes'  
 [T] ta-fu-leng-gi       \*ta fulenggi  
 [N] 1012-146
- 1061 [A] 羊肉·賀泥牙力  
 [C] yangrou 'mutton'  
 [T] ho-ni-ya-li       \*honi yali  
 [N] 412-917
- 1062 [A] 鹿肉·布兀牙力  
 [C] lurou 'venison'  
 [T] bu-u-ya-li       \*bu'u yali  
 [N] 417-917
- 1063 [A] 馬廬肉·客頁黑牙力  
 [C] lūrou 'donkey meat'  
 [T] e-he-ya-li       \*ehe yali  
 [N] 436-917



## SECTION THIRTEEN - JEWELS AND VALUABLES

- 1064 [A] 金·安出  
 [C] jin 'gold'  
 [T] an-ču \*anču  
 [G] 'an-č'uh-wen (568)  
 [K] ančun  
 [M] cf. aisin  
 [S] cf. 'a'isiN  
 [N] Ligeti, "Note préliminaire"  
 p. 225, reconstructs  
 \*alču for G. 568
- 1065 [A] 銀·猛古  
 [C] yin 'silver'  
 [T] meng-gu \*menggu  
 [G] meng-ku-wen (570)  
 [K] mengun  
 [M] menggun  
 [S] meṅuN, muṅuN
- 1066 [A] 銅·失力  
 [C] tong 'bronze'  
 [T] ši-li \*širi  
 [G] ši-h-li (573)  
 [K] širi  
 [M] sirin
- 1067 [A] 珍珠·泥出  
 [C] zhenzhu 'pearl'  
 [T] ni-ču \*niču  
 [G] ning-ču-hei (572)  
 [K] ninjuhe  
 [M] nicuhe

- 1068 [A] 錫·托活羅  
 [C] xi 'tin'  
 [T] to-ho-lo \*toholo  
 [M] toholon  
 [S] tohělē, tohuluN
- 1069 [A] 銀壺·猛古湯平  
 [C] yin hu 'silver pot'  
 [T] meng-gu-tang-pin \*menggu tampin  
 [N] 1065-574
- 1070 [A] 玉·顧兀  
 [C] yu 'jade'  
 [T] gu-u \*gu'u  
 [G] ku-wen (569)  
 [K] gun  
 [M] gu
- 1071 [A] 銀項圈·猛古塞勒黑,  
 [C] yin xiangquan 'silver  
 necklace'  
 [T] meng-gu-se-le-he \*menggu selehe  
 [M] cf. selhe 'the pendulous  
 fold of skin under a cow's  
 neck; dewlap; cf. selhen  
 'a cangue'

- 1072 [A] 金盞蓋·安出台力  
 [C] jin taizhan 'gold wine-cup  
 with saucer'  
 [T] an-čü-tai-li \*anču taili  
 [M] taili 'a saucer for a  
 wine cup'  
 [S] tiali  
 [N] the Chinese term taizhan  
 does not appear in  
 dictionaries of Modern  
 Chinese. Franke translates  
 it 'Becher mit goldenem  
 (bezw. silbernem) Fuss';  
 the translation above is  
 based on the definition  
 in Ciyuan (1979 revised  
 ed.) Vol. III p. 2590,  
 which gives as a reference  
 a passage in the Liaoshi.
- 1073 [A] 金帽頂·安出麻布刺寧各  
 [C] jin maoding 'golden knob  
 on a skull-cap'  
 [T] an-čü-ma-hi-la-ning-gu \*anču mahila  
 ninggu  
 [M] ninggu 'top of, above,  
 over'  
 [S] nuṅuu, niuṅuu, niṅuu  
 [N] 1064-972-1073
- 1074 [A] 金戒指·安出貴非  
 [C] jin jiezhi 'gold finger-  
 ring'  
 [T] an-čü-gui-fi \*anču guifi  
 [M] guifun  
 [N] 1064-1074

- 1075 [A] 銀耳墜·猛古遂忽  
 [C] yin erzhuì 'silver  
 earrings'  
 [T] menggu sui hu \*menggu sui hu  
 [M] sui hu 'earrings  
 worn by men'  
 [N] 1065-1075
- 1076 [A] 金環兒·安出忽魯  
 [C] jin huanr 'golden ring'  
 [T] an-čü-hu-lu \*anču hulu  
 [G] huh-lu (548)  
 [K] hulu  
 [M] no cognate  
 [N] 1064-1076
- 1077 [A] 鐵·塞勒  
 [C] tie 'iron'  
 [T] se-le \*sele  
 [G] seh-leh (574)  
 [K] sele  
 [M] sele  
 [S] sele
- 1078 [A] 銅錢·只哈  
 [C] tongqian 'money'  
 [T] ĵi-ha \*ĵiha  
 [G] či-hah (262, 575)  
 [K] ĵiha  
 [M] jiha  
 [N] jihaa
- 1079 [A] 金線·安出同各  
 [C] jin xian 'golden thread'  
 [T] an-čü-tung-gu \*anču tunggu  
 [N] 1064-590
- 1080 [A] 銀鐘·猛古忽塔  
 [C] yin zhong 'silver goblet'  
 [T] meng-gu-hu-ta \*menggu hu[n]ta  
 [N] 1065-613

- 1081 [A] 金盆·安出忽子  
 [C] jin pen 'golden dish'  
 [T] an-ču-fun-zi \*anču funzi  
 [N] \*funzi < Ch. penzi  
 1064-1081
- 1082 [A] 金鐘·安出忽塔  
 [C] jin zhong 'golden goblet'  
 [T] an-ču-hu-ta \*anču hu[n]ta  
 [N] 1064-613
- 1083 [A] 銀臺盞·猛古台力  
 [C] yin taizhan 'silver wine-cup with saucer'  
 [T] meng-gu-tai-li \*menggu taili  
 [N] 1065-1072
- 1084 [A] 金耳墜·安出遂出  
 [C] jin erzhuī 'golden earrings'  
 [T] an-ču-sui-hu \*anču sui hu  
 [N] 1064-1075

## SECTION FOURTEEN - WRITING

- 1085 [A] 勅書·阿兒八  
 [C] chi shu 'imperial rescript'  
 [T] a-r-ba \*arba  
 [M] cf. 1086 below
- 1086 [A] 聖旨·阿兒哇  
 [C] sheng zhi 'imperial decree'  
 [T] a-r-wa \*arwa  
 [G] 'a-lah-wa-kih (576)  
 [K] arawagi  
 [M] no cognate  
 [N] the G./K. forms are followed by the instr. suffix -gi; Jin Qicong reconstructs \*alawa. It occurs

fairly often, but does not seem to have a cognate in Manchu. It is quite possible that this is a Khitan word. There is also an interesting parallel in the forms \*arba and \*arwa, and the forms given for 'beam', \*taibu and \*tai'u (535, 536)

- 1087 [A] 印信·朵羅  
 [C] yin xin 'official seal'  
 [T] do-lo  
 [G] do-lo-wen (577) \*doro  
 [K] doron  
 [M] doron
- 1088 [A] 讀書·必忒塔替  
 [C] du shu 'study' (v)  
 [T] bi-te-ta-ti \*bit[h]e tati  
 [M] taci- 'to learn'  
 [S] tacimə  
 [N] 1094-1088
- 1089 [A] 名字·革不  
 [C] mingzi 'name'  
 [T] ge-bu \*gebu  
 [G] koh-puh (742, 780)  
 [K] gebu  
 [M] gebu  
 [S] gevə
- 1090 [A] 文書·必忒額  
 [C] wenshu 'documents'  
 [T] bi-te-e \*bit[h]e'e  
 [G] pih-t'eh-hei (216)  
 [K] bitehe  
 [M] bithe  
 [S] bitəxee  
 [N] this word usually appears as \*bit[h]e, cf. 1094
- 1091 [A] 封記·計得黑  
 [C] feng ji 'seal' (v)  
 [T] gi-de-he \*gide-he  
 [M] gida- 'press down'

- 1092 [A] 寫字·必忒阿刺  
 [C] xie zi 'write'  
 [T] bi-te-a-ra \*bit[h]e ara  
 [M] 1094-538
- 1093 [A] 字錯·必忒恩得黑  
 [C] zi cuo 'mistake in writing'  
 [T] bi-te-en-de-he \*bit[h]e ende-he  
 [M] ende- 'make a mistake'  
 [N] 1094-1093
- 1094 [A] 字·必忒  
 [C] zi 'writing'  
 [T] bi-te \*bit[h]e  
 [N] cf. 1090 above
- 1095 [A] 使印·朵羅的甲必  
 [C] shi yin 'use a seal'  
 [T] do-lo-di-gia-bi \*doro digia-bi  
 [M] cf. gide- (1091)  
 [N] 1089-1095
- 1096 [A] 學字·必忒阿藍必  
 [C] xue zi 'learn writing'  
 [T] bi-te-a-lan-bi \*bit[h]e ara-mbi  
 [N] cf. 1092
- 1097 [A] 勘合·看活必忒  
 [C] kan he 'official check, official identification card, document'  
 [T] kan-ho-bi-te \*kanho bit[h]e  
 [N] Ligeti "Deux tablettes" p. 216 has a long note on this word  
 1097-1094

1098 [A] 唱曲·兀出羅

[C] chang qu 'sing'  
[T] u-č'u-lo  
[M] ucule-  
[S] 'uculēmě, 'uculumě

\*učulo

SECTION FIFTEEN - COLOURS

1099 [A] 青·念加

[C] qing 'green, blue'  
[T] nien-gia  
[G] nen[nun]-kiang (616)  
[K] niyongiyan  
[M] niowanggiyan  
[S] niunjaN, niñeniaN

\*niengia

1100 [A] 紅·伏良

[C] hong 'red'  
[T] fu-liang  
[G] fuh-lah-kiang (624)  
[K] fulagiyan  
[M] fulgiyan  
[S] fělēgiaN, fulēgiaN

\*ful[g]ian

1101 [A] 黃·素羊

[C] huang 'yellow'  
[T] su-yang  
[G] so-kiang (618)  
[K] sogiyan  
[M] suwayan  
[S] suyaN, suayaN

\*suyan

1102 [A] 白·尚加

[C] bai 'white'  
[T] šang-gia  
[G] šang-kiang (619)  
[K] šangiyan  
[M] šanyan, šanggiyan  
[S] šiaŋaN

\*šanggia

- 1103 [A] 黑·撒哈良  
 [C] hei 'black'  
 [T] sa-ha-liang \*sahalian  
 [G] sah-hah-liang (620)  
 [K] sahaliyan  
 [M] sahaliyan  
 [S] sahaliN, sahəliaN
- 1104 [A] 綠·不兒哈博琴  
 [C] lü 'green'  
 [T] bu-r-ha-bo-čo \*burha bočo  
 [M] burga (old form:  
       burha) 'willow  
       tree'  
       boco 'colour'
- 1105 [A] 綵段·哈尺素者  
 [C] cai duan 'varicoloured  
       satin'  
 [T] ha-či-su-je \*hači suje  
 [N] 43-974
- 1106 [A] 紫·霞洪  
 [C] zi 'purple'  
 [T] nio-hung \*niohun  
 [M] cf. niohon 'green'  
       (or 'blue', in 'blue  
       sky'); niohun 'pea-  
       green'  
 [S] nioohuN 'dark green'
- 1107 [A] 表裏·老苦多課  
 [C] biao li 'outside and  
       inside of a garment'  
 [T] tuku doko \*tuku doko  
 [G] t'uh-k'o (544)  
       to-k'o (545)  
 [K] tuko, doko  
 [M] tuku 'the outside of  
       a garment'  
       doko 'inside, the lining  
       of a garment'

- 1108 [A] 丈紅·昂八仗良  
 [C] da hong 'crimson [lit:  
       'big red']  
 [T] ang-ba-fu-liang \*amba ful[g]ian  
 [N] 1153-1100

## SECTION SIXTEEN - NUMERALS

- 1109 [A] 一・額木  
 [C] yi 'one'  
 [T] e-mu \*emu  
 [G] 'oh-muh (636)  
 [K] emu  
 [M] emu  
 [S] 'eme
- 1110 [A] 二・拙  
 [C] er 'two'  
 [T] ĵue \*ĵue  
 [G] čoh (637)  
 [K] ĵuwe  
 [M] juwe  
 [S] juu
- 1111 [A] 三・办郎  
 [C] san 'three'  
 [T] i-lang \*ilan  
 [G] i-lan (638)  
 [K] ilan  
 [M] ilan  
 [S] 'ilaN
- 1112 [A] 四・對因  
 [C] si 'four'  
 [T] dui'in \*du'in  
 [G] tu-yin (639)  
 [K] duin  
 [S] du'iN

- 1113 [A] 五・川頁答  
 [C] wu 'five'  
 [T] šun-ĵa \*šunĵa  
 [G] šun-čah (640)  
 [K] šunĵa  
 [M] sunĵa  
 [S] suNĵaa
- 1114 [A] 六・寔谷  
 [C] liu 'six'  
 [T] ning-gu \*ninggu  
 [G] ning-ču (641)  
 [K] ningū  
 [M] ninggun  
 [S] niŋuN, niuŋuN  
 [N] G. 641 should be ning-ku, as corrected by Kiyose; \*ninĵu means 'sixty' (cf. 1123)
- 1115 [A] 七・細答  
 [C] qi 'seven'  
 [T] na-da \*nada  
 [G] nah-tan (642)  
 [K] nadan  
 [M] nadan  
 [S] nadēN
- 1116 [A] 八・答空  
 [C] ba 'eight'  
 [T] ĵa-kung \*ĵakun  
 [G] čah-k'un (643)  
 [K] ĵakun  
 [M] jakun  
 [S] jaquN

- 1117 [A] 九 · 兀 容  
 [C] jiu 'nine'  
 [T] u-yung  
 [G] wuh-ye-wen (644)  
 [K] uyun  
 [M] uyun  
 [S] 'u'iN, 'uyuN  
\*uyun
- 1118 [A] 十 · 莊  
 [C] shi 'ten'  
 [T] ŋuang  
 [G] čua (645)  
 [K] ŋuwa  
 [M] juwan  
 [S] juaN  
\*ŋuan
- 1119 [A] 二十 · 幹 里  
 [C] ershi 'twenty'  
 [T] o-li  
 [G] wo-lin (655)  
 [K] orin  
 [M] orin  
 [S] 'oriN  
\*ori
- 1120 [A] 三十 · 谷 失  
 [C] sanshi 'thirty'  
 [T] gu-ši  
 [G] ku-šen (656)  
 [K] gušin  
 [M] gûsin  
 [S] gošin  
\*guši
- 1121 [A] 四十 · 得 希  
 [C] sishi 'forty'  
 [T] de-hi  
 [G] t'eh-hi (657)  
 [K] tehi  
 [M] dehi  
 [S] dixi  
\*dehi

- 1122 [A] 五十 · 速 賽  
 [C] wushi 'fifty'  
 [T] su-sai  
 [G] suh-sah-yih (658)  
 [K] susai  
 [M] susai  
 [S] susa'i  
\*susai
- 1123 [A] 六十 · 寧 住  
 [C] liushi 'sixty'  
 [T] ning-ŋu  
 [G] ning-ču (659)  
 [K] ninŋu  
 [M] ninju  
 [S] 'iNju  
\*ninŋu
- 1124 [A] 七十 · 納 答 住  
 [C] qishi 'seventy'  
 [T] na-da-ŋu  
 [G] nah-tan-ču (660)  
 [K] nadanŋu  
 [M] nadanju  
 [S] nadēNju  
\*nadaŋu
- 1125 [A] 八十 · 答 空 住  
 [C] bashi 'eighty'  
 [T] ŋa-kung-ŋu  
 [G] čah-k'un-ču (661)  
 [K] ŋakunŋu  
 [M] jakunju  
 [S] jaquNju  
\*ŋakunŋu
- 1126 [A] 九十 · 兀 容 住  
 [C] jiushi 'ninety'  
 [T] u-yung-ŋu  
 [G] wuh-ye-wen-ču (662)  
 [K] uyunŋu  
 [M] uyunju  
 [S] 'u'iNju, 'uyuNju  
\*uyunŋu



- 1127 [A] 一百·額木倘古  
 [C] yibai 'one hundred'  
 [T] e-mu-tang-gu \*emu tanggu  
 [G] t'ang-ku (663)  
 [K] tangu  
 [M] tanggû  
 [S] taně  
 [N] 1109-1127
- 1128 [A] 一千·額木命古  
 [C] yiqian 'one thousand'  
 [T] e-mu-ming-ha \*emu minggu  
 [G] ming-kan (664)  
 [K] mingan  
 [M] minggan  
 [S] mijaN  
 [N] 1109-1128
- 1129 [A] 一萬·額木禿墨  
 [C] yiwan 'ten thousand'  
 [T] e-mu-tu-me \*emu tume  
 [G] t'u-man (665)  
 [K] tuman  
 [M] tumen  
 [S] tumëN, tumuN
- 1130 [A] 一分·額木分  
 [C] yifen 'one fen [unit  
 of money]  
 [T] e-mu-fun \*emu fun  
 [M] fun  
 [N] < Chinese
- 1131 [A] 一錢·額木只哈  
 [C] yiqian 'one qian [unit  
 of money]  
 [T] e-mu-ji-ha \*emu jiha  
 [N] 1109-1078

- 1132 [A] 一兩·額木樣  
 [C] yiliang 'one tael [unit  
 of weight]  
 [T] e-mu-yang \*emu yan  
 [G] yang (261)  
 [K] yan  
 [M] yan  
 [S] yaN  
 [N] < Chinese liang
- 1133 [A] 一百兩·額木倘古樣  
 [C] yibai liang 'one hundred  
 taels'  
 [T] e-mu-tang-gu-yang \*emu tanggu yan  
 [N] 1109-1127-1132
- 1134 [A] 一千兩·額木命哈樣  
 [C] yiqian liang 'one thousand  
 taels'  
 [T] e-mu-ming-ha-yang \*emu minggu yan  
 [N] 1109-1128-1132
- 1135 [A] 一萬兩·額木禿墨樣  
 [C] yiwan liang 'ten thousand  
 taels'  
 [T] e-mu-tu-me-yang \*emu tume yan  
 [N] 1109-1129-1132
- 1136 [A] 一塊·額木發失  
 [C] yikuai 'one piece'  
 [T] e-mu-fa-ši \*emu fa[r]ši  
 [M] farsi  
 [S] farëši  
 [N] 1109-1136
- 1137 [A] 一片·額木珠忒  
 [C] yipian 'one slice'  
 [T] e-mu-ju-te \*emu yute  
 [M] no cognate  
 [N] 1109-1137

- 1138 [A] 一對·額木珠勒  
 [C] yidui 'one pair'  
 [T] e-mu-ju-le \*emu jure  
 [M] juru  
 [S] juru  
 [N] 1109-1138
- 1139 [A] 五十兩·速賽樣  
 [C] wushi liang 'fifty  
 taels'  
 [T] su-sai-yang \*susai yan  
 [N] 1122-1132
- 1140 [A] 二錢·拙只哈  
 [C] er qian 'two qian'  
 [T] jue-ji-ha \*jue jiha  
 [N] 1110-1078
- 1141 [A] 三兩·办郎樣  
 [C] san liang 'three  
 taels'  
 [T] i-lang-yang \*ilan yan  
 [N] 1111-1132

## SECTION SEVENTEEN - GENERAL

- 1142 [A] 東·受溫禿提勒草  
 [C] dong 'east'  
 [T] seu-un-tu-ti-le-ge \*še'un tutire[r]ge  
 [M] ergi 'side'  
 [N] the J. expression  
 literally means '  
 the side where the  
 sun rises'  
 5-50-re-1142
- 1143 [A] 西·受溫禿黑勒草  
 [C] xi 'west'  
 [T] seu-un-tu-he-le-ge \*še'un tuhere[r]ge  
 [M] sun tuhere ergi  
 [N] lit. 'the side where  
 the sun sets'  
 4-49-1142
- 1144 [A] 南·珠勒草  
 [C] nan 'south'  
 [T] ju-le-ge \*jule[r]ge  
 [M] julerigi  
 [S] julërixi
- 1145 [A] 北·伏希草  
 [C] bei 'north'  
 [T] fu-hi-ge \*fuhi[r]ge  
 [M] no cognate

- 1146 [A] 左・哈速  
 [C] zuo 'left'  
 [T] ha-su \*has[h]u  
 [M] hashu  
 [S] hasəhuu
- 1147 [A] 右・亦替  
 [C] you 'right'  
 [T] i-ti \*iti  
 [M] ici  
 [S] 'iciei
- 1148 [A] 中・都林八  
 [C] zhong 'middle'  
 [T] du-lin-ba \*dulimba  
 [G] tu-li-lah (610)  
 [K] dulila  
 [M] dulimba  
 [S] dioliNbaa
- 1149 [A] 前・往勒草  
 [C] qian 'before, in  
 front of'  
 [T] ju-le-ge \*jule[r]ge  
 [M] julergi 'front, south'  
 [S] julərixixi
- 1150 [A] 後・阿木刺  
 [C] hou 'back, behind'  
 [T] a-mu-la \*amula  
 [G] 'a-muh-lu-kai (599)  
 [K] amurgai  
 [M] amala 'afterwards, later'
- 1151 [A] 内・朵羅  
 [C] nei 'in, inside'  
 [T] do-lo \*dolo  
 [G] to-lo (600)  
 [K] dolo  
 [M] dolo  
 [S] dolə, dolu

- 1152 [A] 外・秃魯草  
 [C] wai 'outside'  
 [T] tu-lu-ge \*tulu[r]ge  
 [G] t'uh-li-leh (601)  
 [K] tulile  
 [M] tulergi  
 [S] tiulərixixi, tulərixixi
- 1153 [A] 大・昂八  
 [C] da 'big'  
 [T] ang-ba \*amba  
 [G] 'an-pan (29)  
 'an-pan-lah (668, 724)  
 [K] amban  
 [M] amba  
 [S] 'amə, 'aNbuu  
 [N] Kiyose points out that  
 the form in G. 668 and  
 724 is a scribal error
- 1154 [A] 小・阿沙  
 [C] xiao 'small'  
 [T] a-ša \*aš[h]a  
 [M] asihan  
 [S] 'ašihəN, 'ašəhəN

\*\*\*

able	207
abominable	1044
accept	878
ache	949, <u>952</u> 961
advise against	835
agree	28
anger	737, <u>826</u>
angry	784
ant	471
antelope	501
apply oneself to	857
apricot	<u>351</u> , 388
araki	1029
armour	<u>578</u> , 645 646, 753
armourer	753
army	659
arrive	779
arrow	26, <u>580</u> 647
artisan	700, 702 703, 706 707, 720 731, <u>747</u>
as before	872
ascend	208
ash(es)	<u>146</u> , 263 1060
ask	774
ask for (1)	785
ask for (2)	851
ask in detail	843
assume	857
at ease	855
atrocious	1044
attend (court)	53
aunt (1)	678
aunt (2)	679
aunt (3)	683
autumn	<u>267</u> , 342 343
awake	783
axe	585
back	903
back (behind)	1150

back part of the head	896
bad (1)	<u>697</u> , 857
bad (evil)	748
bald	757
bald patch	896
bald (guangtou)	928
barbarian	732
barbarian hat	1006
barren	242
basin	<u>571</u> , 1081
bat	510
bathe	948
be (is, have)	27, 37 101
beam	536, 537
bean	<u>358</u> , 404
bean-curd	1026
bear (n)	443
bear fruit	386
beard	902
beat	313, 314 <u>810</u> , 946
be born	809
become useful	836
bed quilt	986, 994
bedding	986
bee	516
before	1149
behind	1150
<u>beiluo</u>	641
bell	313, <u>561</u> 629
bell (small)	605
belt	720, <u>965</u> 996
belt-maker	720
bench	568
bend (in a river)	240
benefactor	701
benevolent	738
big	40, 88 90, 116 181, 186 188, 197 207, 252 383, 557 655, 960 <u>1108</u> , <u>1153</u>
big hat	971
bird	429
bite	401, 521

bitter	<u>1045</u> 231
bitter melon	397
black	437, <u>1103</u>
blind (man)	711
blood	920
blow (wind)	92
blue-green	173, <u>1099</u>
boar	447
boar (castrated)	450
board	191, <u>546</u> 615
Board of Rites	552
Board of War	553
boat	199, <u>614</u>
body	705, <u>887</u> 863
boil (v)	1037
bone	895
boot	968
border	<u>24</u> , 255 860
born (be born)	809
bottle	584
bow (n)	579
bow (v) (1)	<u>762</u> , 876
bow (v) (2)	<u>761</u> , 874
bow (salute)	837
bowl	569
bowl (porcelain)	632
branch	<u>363</u> , 390
breakfast	1059
breast	901
breath	12
brick-bed ( <u>kang</u> )	555
bridge	<u>142</u> , 190 192, 198 226, 227 258, 259 260
bridge of the nose	953
bridle (1)	599
bridle (2)	621
bright	29, <u>71</u> 112, 166
bring	844
bring here	833
bring in	859
brocade	<u>994</u> , 998
broken (1)	189
broken (2)	249
bronze	649, 651

bronzesmith	703, <u>1066</u>
broom	601
brother (elder)	<u>664</u> 714, 715
brother (younger)	665
brother-in-law	687
brush (writing)	565, 627
bucket	596
buckwheat	373
burn	<u>550</u> , <u>1042</u>
business	872
busy	781
butterfly	474
button	983
buy	799
cage	554
calf (of the leg)	913
call	833
camel	409
can (v)	207
capture	821
careful	718
carp	513
carpenter	731
cart	618
castrate	500
castrated boar	450
cat	<u>415</u> , 502 522
catfish	507
catch hold of	944
cattle shed	532
cave	954
cease	86
ceremony	864
chaff	<u>405</u> , 1030
charcoal	1038
charitable	738
charm	701
cheek	900
cheeky	960
<u>chen</u> (time period)	328
clerk	658
chest	904
chest made of boards	615
chestnut tree	385
chicken	333, <u>421</u> 458, 523 524, 554
chief	557

child 669, 671  
 726  
 chimney 543  
 Chinese (man) 735  
 Chinese mile (li) 225  
 Chinese violin 640  
 chopsticks 640  
chou (time period) 325  
 chowry 636  
 city (walls) 136, 176  
 216, 217  
 218, 219  
 220, 221  
 222, 236  
 238  
 clam 512  
 clap 946  
 clean 1043  
 clear (1) 15, 32  
 clear (2) 71, 166  
 clerk 658  
 cliff 230  
 close (1) 196  
 close (2) 148  
 close eyes 933  
 cloth 975, 990  
 997, 1000  
 clothes 755, 962  
 973, 976  
 979, 982  
 984, 985  
 991  
 cloud 2, 37  
 45, 46  
 61, 66  
 67  
 cloudy 169  
 coarse 1000  
 coarse rice 398  
 cock 333, 421  
 458, 523  
 554  
 cold (1) 25, 54  
 95, 277  
 1035  
 cold (2) 274, 338  
 345  
 collect (of fog) 120  
 125  
 colour 1104  
 comb (n) 592  
 comb (n) (2) 596

comb (v) 927  
 come 94, 758  
 840, 859  
 come out 50, 61  
 63, 108  
 171, 222  
 282, 938  
 1142  
 come up 113, 128  
 342  
 complete 796  
 conch 641  
 consider 839  
 cook (v) 1015  
 cooked (meat) 1028  
 cooked (rice) 229, 1008  
 cooking pot 573  
 cool 343  
 cormorant 456  
 cotton 381, 973  
 cough 870, 957  
 courageous 960  
 court 33, 53  
 81, 128  
 238, 244  
 547  
 cover 45, 124  
 crab 470  
 crafty 744  
 crag 230  
 crane 457  
 cranium 896  
 cricket 896  
 crimson 1108  
 cross over (1) 198, 227  
 cross over (2) 199, 228  
 457  
 crow (n) 458  
 crow (v) 610  
 crupper 650  
 crutch 487  
 cry (call out) 458, 496  
 496  
 773  
 cry (weep) 396  
 cucumber 212  
 cultivate 744  
 cunning 1080  
 cup (goblet) 613, 1082  
 1082  
 cushion 619  
 cut (v) 634, 1040  
 620  
 dagger 620  
 damask 1004

dance 795  
 dark (1) 13, 34  
 dark (2) 19, 74  
 date (fruit) 350  
 day 29, 72  
 312, 320  
 321, 322  
 337, 1022  
 day after  
 tomorrow 283  
 day before  
 yesterday 285  
 days on end 337  
 deaf 708  
 decree 1086  
 deep 153, 160  
 164, 252  
 257, 740  
 deer 417, 509  
 1062  
 demolish 540  
 dense (heavy) 67  
 dew 11, 105  
 107  
 die (v) 28, 812  
 difficult 227, 867  
 Dipper (star) 119, 127  
 dirt 213  
 dirty 1044  
 disappear 109  
 discernment 839  
 discuss 820  
 dish (1) 583, 634  
 dish (2) 1081  
 disperse (open) 46, 61  
 102, 122  
 disperse (divide) 877  
 dissuade from 835  
 distressed (1) 940  
 distressed (2) 955  
 distilled liquor 1029  
 divide 202, 801  
 877  
 dizzy 956  
 do 538, 706  
 1096  
 do evil 857  
 do not 224, 549  
 860, 862  
 863, 865  
 866, 868  
 869, 872

doctor 745  
 document 1090  
 doe 509  
 dog 334, 413  
 495, 521  
 dog (small) 497  
 donkey 436, 1063  
 don't want 808  
 door 526, 550  
 558, 559  
 dove 462  
 down (come down) 25  
 49, 53  
 87, 99  
 103, 246  
 drag 794  
 dragon 328, 406  
 485, 488  
 991  
 dragonfly 482  
 drawer 612  
 dream 850  
 drink 1033, 1047  
 drinking vessel 1072  
 1083  
 drive (animals) 636  
 drum 314, 562  
 630, 651  
 drunk 786  
 dry (1) 39  
 dry (2) 235  
 duck 423  
 duck (Mandarin) 517  
 dumb 712  
 dusk (dark) 19  
 dust 40, 145  
 248, 262  
 263  
 dye 702  
 dyer 702  
 ear 882  
 early (1) 272  
 early (2) 849  
 earrings 1075, 1084  
 earth 140, 213  
 260  
 east 1142  
 easygoing 855  
 eat 1017  
 eaves 527  
 eclipse 77, 106

eggplant 357  
 egret 454  
 eight 304, 1116  
 eighth 304  
 eighty 1125  
 elder brother 664, 715  
 elder sister 666  
 eldest brother 715  
 elephant 408, 486  
 489, 515  
 eleven 307  
 elm 372  
 emperor 547, 653  
 739, 740  
 856, 871  
 enter 33, 53  
 81, 128  
 790  
 ermine 438  
 escape 727  
 evening 39, 275  
 1027  
 evil 697  
 evil man 748  
 evil (do evil) 857  
 exhort to peace 835  
 eye 881, 930  
 933, 939  
 eyebrow 898  
 face 891, 931  
 faint 956  
 falcon 508  
 falcon (gerfalcon) 459  
 fall (1) 25, 87  
 99, 246  
 fall (2) 170  
 fall (of water) 237  
 family (cf. house) 686  
 728  
 family servant 728  
 fan 597  
 far 155, 203  
 fat 519, 719  
 734  
 father 662  
 father-in-law 660  
 fear 775  
 feast 765  
 feel pity for 938  
 felt (n) 999  
 follow 222

female 486  
 fen(unit of money) 1130  
 festival 270  
 few 85  
 field 141, 175  
 200, 202  
 206, 212  
 242  
 fifteenth day  
 of the month 321  
 fifth watch 301  
 fifty 1122, 1139  
 fight 490  
 fill (full) 60  
 fine 187, 647  
 997  
 fine hair brush 187  
 finger 912, 950  
 959  
 fingernail 914  
 finger ring 1074  
 fire 301, 319  
 1012, 1036  
 1051, 1060  
 1113  
 fire off 1052  
 firewood 1013  
 first day of month 320  
 first month 297  
 fish 431, 437  
 507  
 fish net 637  
 five 301, 319  
 1113  
 flag 614  
 flat iron 643  
 flesh (cf. meat) 917  
 flood 168  
 flour 1023  
 flourish 836  
 flow 174  
 flower 211, 346  
 377, 388  
 400, 401  
 502  
 fly (v) 248  
 fly (n) 476  
 fly-whisk 636  
 foal 449  
 fog 16, 27  
 102, 120  
 follow 14, 48

110, 864  
 871  
 food (cf. meal) 1027  
 1059  
 fool 713  
 foot 162, 889  
 915, 918  
 959  
 foot(of mountain)(1) 156  
 foot(of mountain)(2) 162  
 forest 232  
 forty 1121  
 four 300, 318  
 1112  
 fourth 300  
 fourth watch 318  
 fowl (cf. chicken)  
 fox 442  
 freeze 126  
 frighten 827  
 frivolous 717  
 from now on 859  
 front(in front of) 1149  
 frost 8  
 frozen 126  
 fruit 209, 347  
 fruit, to bear 386  
 fry 1048  
 full (1) (cf. fill) 65  
 66  
 full (satiated) 1053  
 fungus (wood) 366  
 fur-lined coat 980  
 furious 737  
 furnace 542  
 gall-bladder 923, 960  
 gallop 817  
 gap (in time) 323  
 garden 209, 210  
 211, 250  
 garment 1107  
 gate 236, 557  
 558, 559  
 gauze (1) 1001  
 gauze (2) 1003  
 gelding 444, 500  
 generous 742  
 geng (unit of time) 315  
 316, 317  
 318, 319  
 gerfalcon 459  
 722

get on well 836  
 get up 849  
 giddy 956  
 ginseng 380  
 girdle 720  
 girl 669  
 girth 623  
 give 805  
 give back 806  
 give thanks 879  
 glazed 928  
 glow-worm 499  
 go 759, 822  
 go (walk) 202, 207  
 847  
 go down (1) 223  
 go down (2) 1043  
 goat 331, 501  
 goat (yellow) 501  
 goblet 613, 1080  
 1082  
 gold 628, 998  
 1064, 1072  
 1073, 1074  
 1075, 1076  
 1079, 1081  
 1084  
 golden knob on  
 skullcap 1073  
 golden oriole 469  
 good (1) 97, 98  
 694, 859  
 good (2) 738, 743  
 good for nothing 1044  
 goose 422  
 grace 701  
 grandfather 730  
 grandson 668  
 grape 369  
 grass 376, 380  
 529, 989  
 Great Wall 225  
 greedy 1032  
 green 1104  
 green-blue 173, 504  
 1099  
 grey 494  
 guard (v) 216  
 hai (time period) 335  
 hail 10, 99  
 hair (21, 52)

	627, 890
	929
half (month)	309
hand	888, 911
	912, 944
	945, 946
handsome	673
hang (1)	485
hang (2)	958
happiness	740
happy	741
hare	327, 420
	627
harelip	754
harmonious	816
harmony	778
haste, make	549
hasty	239
hat (big)	972, 995
	1006, 1073
hat (small)	706
hat worn during	
summer	971
hatmaker	706
haul (v)	794
hawk	430, 505
hazel-nut	370
head	869, 880
	927, 928
	929, 935
	949, 958
head (of the	
family)	689
head, back part of	896
heart (1)	892
heart (2)	852, 943
heart (3)	941, 942
	955
heat	344
heaven	1, 14
	21, 23
	25, 27
	28, 30
	31, 32
	34, 35
	37, 38
	39, 41
	42, 44
	47, 48
	54, 59
	60

heavy	67, 856
hedgehog	514
heel	918
helmet	577, 628
	644
hempen fabric	1005
hen	524
heron	460
hide (cf. skin)	645
	752
hideous	1044
high	31, 58
	157, 221
	227, 258
	705
hill haw	387
hit (cf. beat)	75, 89
	313, 810
hold	944, 1031
honest	691, 943
honey	1025
hoof	478
hook	626
horizon	24
horn	477
horrible	1044
horse	410, 437
	448, 451
	490, 493
	494, 496
	519, 520
	530, 622
	624, 817
	852, 859
hot	36, 276
	344, 1034
hot water	1018
house	234, 525
	527, 528
	529, 530
	540, 541
	547, 548
	549, 559
how many	311, 312
howl (of wind)	114
hunchback	751
hundred	294, 1127
	1133
hungry	819
hunt	639
husband	729

ice	111
identification	
document	1097
idiot	713
imperial	238, 244
	547
imperial decree	1086
imperial palace	547
imperial rescript	1085
important man	655
in	1151
in accordance with	14
in front of	1149
in middle of	161, 177
	1148
incense	1054
increase	836
ink	564
ink-slab	566
insect	427
inside	219, 1151
intermediate space	323
interpreter	733
interstice	323
intestines	921
intoxicated	786
iron	644, 646
	648, 1077
iron (flat iron)	643
Isabella horse	493
ivory	518
jacket (1)	964
jacket (2)	978
jade	1070
join hands	945
judgement	839
jug (1)	574
jug (2)	631
jump	800, 939
kang (brick bed)	555
key	589
kick	490
kill	818
kind	738
kite (bird)	468
knee	909
kneel	760
knife	576
know	42, 842
knuckles	911, 950
	920

ladder	611
land	139
last year	291
late	38, 725
laugh	771
launderer	755
laws	867
lazy	814
leader	657
leaf	361, 362
leave	822
leek	355
left	1146
leg	916
lend	803
leopard	426, 503
let free	929
let hair grow	929
lettuce	392
level	204, 259
li (Chinese mile)	225
liang (unit of	
weight: cf. tael)	
libation	1049
lift up	213, 869
light (v)	1036, 1051
lightning	22
like (similar)	26, 29
	872
lime	215
line up	861
lined (clothes)	976
lining (of a garment)	988
lion	432, 522
lip(s)	754, 906
listen	776
live at	792
liver	919
local products	767
lock	588, 648
	649
locust tree	384
long	52, 149
	225, 310
	341
look at	216, 807
	868
look for	828
louse	473
love (1)	751
love (2)	722

lower the head 958  
 loyal (cf. honest) 943  
 lung 922  
 lute 638  
 mad 495, 710  
 magnanimous 942  
 magpie 461  
 main door 557  
 make 538, 706  
           982, 1092  
           1096  
 make harmonious 816  
 male (bird) 523  
 male (elephant) 489  
 man 655, 686  
           692, 693  
           694, 695  
           696, 697  
           698, 699  
           701, 705  
           735, 743  
           745, 747  
           748, 865  
 mandarin duck 517  
 mane 479  
 many 83, 104  
 mao (time period) 327  
 marrow 925  
 master (of a family) 689  
 mat 594  
 match 802  
 mattress 986, 994  
           999  
 me 676  
 meat 866, 917  
           1024, 1028  
           1040, 1061  
           1062, 1063  
 mediate 835  
 medicine (type of) 379  
 meet (1) 766  
 meet (2) 825  
 melon 356, 383  
           396, 397  
 melt 118  
 merchant 698  
 middle (cf. in  
           middle of) 161, 177  
                           309, 1148  
 middle gate of  
           vamen 558

mind (heart) 942, 943  
 mirror 581  
 mist 17, 66  
           104, 108  
           109, 121  
           122, 124  
           125  
 mistake 1093  
 mix 214  
 mole 439  
 money 1078  
 Mongol 732  
 monkey 332, 424  
 month (cf. moon)  
 moon 6, 29  
           53, 64  
           65, 68  
           69, 70  
           71, 74  
           76, 79  
           80, 128  
           297, 298  
           299, 300  
           301, 302  
           303, 304  
           305, 306  
           307, 308  
           309  
 morning 272, 279  
           1059  
 mosquito 475  
 mother 663  
 mother-in-law 661  
 mount (v) 208  
 mountain 66, 130  
           156, 157  
           158, 159  
           160, 161  
           162, 163  
           165, 173  
           232, 233  
           243, 462  
 mourn 721  
 mouth 884, 906  
           932, 934  
           1055  
 move (1) 213  
 move (2) 791, 863  
 much (too much) 866  
 mud 169, 205  
           261, 256

mule 440, 445  
 multicoloured 43, 1105  
 mushroom 365  
 musical instrument:  
           piba 638  
           huqin 640  
           beiluo 641  
           suona 642  
 mustard 378  
 mutton 1061  
 name 1089  
 napkin 987  
 narrow 180, 184  
 narrow-minded 1044  
 navel 905  
 necklace 1071  
 needle 591  
 neigh 496  
 net 604, 639  
 net (for fish) 637  
 net (gauze) 1001  
 netting 993  
 new 192, 320  
           339, 541  
 next (year) 289  
 nicely 861, 320  
           871  
 night 78, 273  
           310, 311  
           336, 1027  
           305, 1117  
 nine 1126  
 ninety 305  
 ninth 746  
 no, not 746  
 noise 73, 114  
 noodles 1023  
 noon (1) 56  
 noon (2) 330  
 noon meal 1022  
 north 1145  
 nose 883, 953  
           954  
 nostril 953  
 obey 48, 864  
           871  
 obtain 798  
 offensive smell 1039  
 offer tribute 764  
 official (1) 549, 995  
 official (2) 399, 654  
 official (3) 552, 553  
 official to house 540

official check 1097  
 official seal 1087  
 oil 1011  
 old 195, 290  
           872  
 old man 692  
 on top of 21, 158  
 once more 843  
 one 226, 292  
           315, 1109  
           1127, 1128  
           1129, 1130  
           1131, 1132  
           1133, 1134  
           1135, 1136  
           1137, 1138  
 one after another 337  
 open 46, 62  
           102, 122  
           200, 930  
           932  
 opponent 696  
 oppose 28  
 oriole 469  
 outside 218, 1152  
 over again 843  
 overflow 175, 176  
           229  
 ox 324, 411  
           453, 492  
           532, 618  
 ox cart 618  
 padded clothing 976  
 paddy chaff 937  
 pagoda 539  
 pain 949, 952  
           961  
 painful 952  
 pair 1138  
 palace 547, 629  
 palace bell 629  
 palm (of hand) 946  
 paper 563  
 pass around 1031  
 pass over (1) 199  
 pass over (2) 227  
 pass through 198  
 patch (v) 985  
 peace 835  
 peaceful 778  
 peak 163  
 pear 240, 400



pearl 1067  
 pen (writing instrument) 565  
 pen (sheep etc.) 531  
 532, 534  
 people 656  
 perish 28  
 pheasant 511  
 pickled vegetables 395  
 pickles 395  
 piece 1136  
 pig 335, 414  
 450, 455  
 531  
 pig (small) 498  
 pigeon 462, 484  
 pig-sty 531  
 pillar 560, 953  
 pillow 595  
 pine (tree) 375  
 pine kernel 368, 401  
 pipa (musical instrument) 638  
 pity (v) 938  
 place 767, 860  
 plant (v) 212  
 plaster 756  
 plate 570  
 play (v) 723, 736  
 plough (n) 492, 598  
 plum 349  
 pockmarked 704  
 poor 670  
 poplar 389  
 porcelain bowl 632  
 post 560, 953  
 post-house 556  
 pot (cooking) 573  
 pot (jug) 574, 1069  
 pour (libation of wine) 1049  
 prepare 854  
 principles 14, 867  
 property 865  
 prosper 48, 836  
 pull 794  
 pupil (eye) 897  
 purple 1106  
 qian (unit of money) 1131, 1140  
 quail 465

quilt 986, 994  
 rabbit 627  
 (cf. hare)  
 race (v) 817  
 radish 374  
 rafter 537  
 rain (n) 3, 33  
 47, 72  
 78, 81  
 82, 90  
 93, 96  
 98, 100  
 101, 652  
 rainbow (1) 18  
 rainbow (2) 488  
 raise 213, 869  
 rare 84  
 rat 324, 416  
 439  
 raw (meat) 1024  
 read (v) 1088  
 reasoning faculty 839  
 rebellious 696  
 rebuke 823  
 recalcitrant 696  
 recede 237  
 receive 878  
 red 377, 494  
 1100, 1108  
 red/white  
 hair (horse) 494  
 reddish (horse) 448  
 regulation 867  
 relationship 867  
 relation-by-marriage 685  
 repair 548  
 reside 792  
 respect 44, 777  
 return 768, 787  
 806, 857  
 reward 763, 856  
 878  
 ribbon 720  
 rib(s) 907  
 rice (uncooked) 359  
 393, 398  
 399, 1030  
 rice (cooked) 279, 1008  
 1053, 1059  
 rice (in the field) 260

rice (in a granary) 399  
 rice bran (chaff) 1030  
 rich 695  
 right 1147  
 ring (finger-ring) 1076  
 rinse out 934  
 ripe 206, 386  
 rise 59, 113  
 121, 128  
 342  
 river (1) 123, 137  
 179, 180  
 185, 240  
 256  
 river (2) 129, 177  
 178, 179  
 180, 181  
 183, 184  
 186, 228  
 road (1) 133, 193  
 196, 197  
 201, 203  
 204, 205  
 235, 241  
 243  
 road (2) 224  
 road leading to imperial court 208, 223  
 224  
 roar (of thunder) 73  
 roar (of animals) 487  
 rob 821, 860  
 865  
 robe (long) 998  
 roe (type of) 419  
 roebuck 418  
 root 361, 380  
 402  
 rope 606  
 round 68  
 rough 182  
 run 788  
 rush (of water) 239  
 sable 434  
 sacrifice to heaven at winter solstice 41

saddle 622  
 saddle cushion 619  
 saddle flap 609  
 salt 1010  
 salty 1014  
 salute (bow) 837  
 sand 144, 182  
 187, 194  
 261, 262  
 sandalwood tree 391  
 sash 720, 996  
 satiated 1053  
 satin 974, 1105  
 sauce 1109  
 saw (n) 586  
 scallion 354  
 scissors 582  
 scratch 947  
 screen 544  
 sea 138, 257  
 403  
 seal (n) 1087  
 seal (v) 1091, 1095  
 search 828  
 season (n) 270  
 seaweed 403  
 second 714, 716  
 second eldest brother 714  
 second eldest sister 716  
 716  
 see 766  
 seize 811  
 sell (1) 251, 698  
 829  
 sell (2) 804  
 send (1) 792  
 send (2) 829  
 servant 728  
 set light to 1052  
 set (go down) 49, 53  
 64  
 seven 119, 303  
 1115  
 seventh 303  
 seventy 1124  
 severe 867  
 sew (clothes) 982  
 shadow 20, 57  
 76  
 shallow 147, 167

shame	780	54, 59
shave	935	66, 110
shawl	1002	123
sheep	331, <u>412</u>	sky (cf. heaven)
	500, 534	slanting <u>55</u> , 70
	634, 1061	slave 690
sheep-pen	534	sleep 769
shen (time period)	332	slice 634, <u>1137</u>
shin	915	slowly 855
shine	<u>62</u> , 79	small 100, 185
shirt	<u>963</u> , 981	498, 688
shirt (felt)	992	<u>1154</u>
shoe	<u>970</u> , 989	small (broken) 189
shop	251	small bell 605
short	51, <u>150</u>	small bird <u>429</u> , 469
	336	small dog 497
shoulder	910	small hat 972
shovel	587	small pig <u>455</u> , 498
shrimp	515	smell (n) 1039
si (time period)	329	smelly 1041
sickle	621	smoke 17
side gate	559	snake 329, <u>425</u>
sigh (v)	936	snatch 802, 865
silk (thin)	988	sneeze 937
silk (damask)	1004	snow <u>9</u> , 25
silver	700, 1065	30, 103
	1069, 1071	115, 116
	1080, 1083	117, 118
silver-coloured		sober 815
hair (horse)	493	socks 969
silversmith	700	soil 213, 214
sing	1098	soldier 659
sister (elder) <u>616</u> , 716		son 671
sister (younger)	667	son-in-law 682
sister-in-law	680	soup (hot water) 1018
sit	224, <u>770</u>	sour 1016
six	302, <u>1114</u>	south 1114
sixth	302	sow (v) 212
sixty	1123	sow (n) 455
skin	645, <u>894</u>	soya bean 404
skirt	966	soya sauce 1009
skull	896	speak 773, 862
sky	<u>1</u> , 14	spear 575
	21, 23	spider 472
	24, 25	spinach 394
	27, 28	spinning wheel 635
	30, 31	spoon 600
	32, 34	spring (water) 143, <u>233</u>
	35, 36	spring (season) 91, <u>265</u>
	37, 38	338, 340
	39, 41	squirrel 441
	42, 47	stable 520, 521

stallion	446	tailor	749
stand	<u>724</u> , 861	take leave	822
	875	take off (clothes)	984
star	<u>7</u> , 60	take up	857
	83, 84	talk	773, 862
	87, 112	tall	705
	119	tanner	752
steal	<u>797</u> , 865	tea	1046
stinking	1041	teach	848
stirrup	607	ten	295, 306
stomach	841, <u>893</u>	<u>1118</u>	
	913, 961	tent	620
stone	<u>132</u> , 188	tenth	306
	189, 190	ten thousand	225, 296
	193, 194	<u>739</u> , <u>1129</u>	
	264	1135	
stop	<u>82</u> , 93	thatched house	529
stork	463	thick	117, <u>151</u>
stove	542	thief	<u>699</u> , 797
strength	926	thin (1)	<u>115</u> , <u>152</u>
strike	75, 313	thin (2)	520, <u>709</u>
	<u>810</u>	thin silk	988
string	606	third watch	299
struggle	834	thirsty	1055
study	1008	thirtieth day	
sty (pig-sty)	531	of the month	323
submerge	<u>175</u> , 176	thirty	1120
	229	this (year)	284
submit	871	thoughtless	717
succeed	836	thousand	293, <u>1128</u>
sugar	1020	1133	
summer	<u>266</u> , 341	thread	<u>590</u> , 1079
	344	three	299, 317
summon	833	1111, 1141	
sun	<u>5</u> , 49	throat	899
	50, 51	thunder	4, 73
	52, 55	75, 89	
	56, 57	tiebeams	535
	58, 61	tiger	326, <u>407</u>
	62, 341	487, 491	
	1142, 1143	tile	528
suona	642	tiled house	528
swallow (n)	428	time (1)	53, <u>271</u>
swan	452	279, 324	
sweet	254, 924	325, 326	
	1021	327, 328	
table	567	329, 330	
tael	<u>1132</u> , 1133	331, 332	
	1134, 1135	333, 334	
	1139, 1141	335	
tail	480	time (when)	56, 315

	318, 319
tin	707, <u>1068</u>
tinsmith	707
today	<u>281</u> , 873
	878
toe	959
tomorrow	<u>278</u> , 879
(day after	
tomorrow)	283
tongue	885
too much	866
tooth	518
top (on top of)	158, 477
	518, 886
tortoise	<u>466</u> , 504
tortoise-shell	
(colour)	502
tree	226, <u>352</u>
	364, 372
	375, 384
	385, 390
	391, 402
	1013
tribute	<u>764</u> , 852
	858, 859
trough	624
trousers	967
turbid	169
turnip	374
turtle dove	464
twelfth	308
twelve	308
twentieth (day	
of month)	322
twenty	1119
twitch	939
two	298, 316
	<u>1110</u> , 1140
ugly	672
umbrella	652
uncle (1)	677
uncle (2)	681
uncle (3)	684
under (1)	23
under (2)	159, 220
understand	842
unicorn	433
unpadded (clothes)	979
upwards	868
urge	832
useful (person)	836

various	43
vase	584
vegetable	210, <u>353</u>
	378, 392
	394, 395
	403, 1058
vegetable food	1058
vehicle	207, <u>604</u>
	618
venison	1062
village	<u>154</u> , 251
vinegar	1057
violate (border)	860
violent	737
violin (Chinese)	640
virtuous (not)	824
voice	951
wadded clothes	973
waist	908
wait	674
walk	<u>201</u> , 788
	855
walking stick	650
wall (1)	135
wall (2)	<u>136</u> , 216
	217, 218
	219, 220
	221, 222
	225, 244
	245, 246
walnut	367
wane (1)	80
wane (2)	69
want	<u>789</u> , 808
	851, 866
warhorse	490
warm	340
warm oneself	1050
wash	755, <u>931</u>
wash (bathe)	948
wash (mouth)	934
watch (of	
the night)	<u>315</u> , 316
	317, 318
	319
water	126, <u>131</u>
	143, 164
	166, 167
	168, 169
	170, 171
	172, 174
	175, 176

	207, 229
	231, 237
	239, 254
	488, 1037
water, boiling	1037
water, hot	1018
way	14
weak	750
weak (in taste)	1019
wear	977
weasel	435
weather (cf. sky)	
weep (1)	772
weep (2)	938
wei (time period)	331
welcome	830
well (n)	<u>134</u> , 252
	253, 254
	264
well (adv)	<u>861</u> , 864
	871
well-cooked	1028
west	1143
wet	<u>107</u> , 241
wether	500
whip	625
whiskers	902
white	451, <u>1102</u>
wide	<u>172</u> , 179
	183
wife	729
wild boar	447
wildcat	506
wild sheep	331
willing	813
willow tree	364, <u>1104</u>
wind	<u>26</u> , 40
	59, 86
	88, 91
	92, 94
	95, 97
	113, 114
	342
window	<u>545</u> , 550
wine	631, 815
	851, 866
	<u>1007</u>
	1031, 1032
	1033, 1035
	1042, 1049
wine-cup	<u>613</u> , 1083
winnowing-fan	602

winter	<u>268</u> , 345
woman	678
wood (cf. tree)	
wood-fungus	366
worried	940
worry	940
write	1092
writing	658, 873
	1090, 1093
	<u>1094</u> , 1096
writing-brush	<u>565</u> , 627
<u>wu</u> (time period)	330
<u>xu</u> (time period)	334
<u>yamen</u>	<u>552</u> , 553
	558
year (1)	<u>284</u> , 286
	289, 290
	291, 292
	293, 294
	295, 296
	339, 858
year (2)	<u>269</u> , 739
year after next	286
year before last	288
years gone by	290
yeast	1061
yellow	396, 404
	453, 502
	<u>505</u> , <u>1101</u>
yellow goat	501
yes	722
yesterday	78, <u>280</u>
<u>yin</u> (time period)	326
you	675
<u>you</u> (time period)	333
young (cf. small)	688
	<u>1154</u>
young man	693
younger brother	665
younger sister	667
<u>zi</u> (time period)	324

## GLOSSARY

Ajia kenkyū	亞細亞研究
Aotun Liangbi	奧屯良弼
Aotun Liangbi jianyin bei	奧屯良弼錢飲碑
Aotun Liangbi shi	奧屯良弼詩
Awanokuni bunko	阿波國文庫
Azuma kagami	吾妻鏡
Ba sui er	八歲兒
Baijiaxing	百家姓
Baishi celin	白氏策林
Bai ta	白塔
Bei da wang muzhi	北大王墓誌
Beiqing	北青
Bianzheng yanjiusuo nianbao	邊政研究所年報
Bing shu	兵書
Bunka	文化
Bu sanshi yiwenzhi	補三史藝文志
Bu Yuanshi yiwenzhi	補元史藝文志
Chōsen gakuho	朝鮮學報
Chounan	仇難
da'an	太安
dading	太定
Da Jin	大金
Da Jin deshengtuo songbei	大金得勝陀頌碑
Da Jin huangdi dutong jinglüe	大金皇弟都統經略郎君行記
langjun xingji	
Diela	迭剌
Dong bang hak chi	東方學志
Dongbei bowuguan	東北博物館
Dongbei congkan	東北叢刊

Du-er-ji	杜爾基
Fangshi mopu	方氏墨譜
Fang Yulu	方于魯
Fengtian Mantie tushuguan congkan	奉天滿鐵圖書館叢刊
Fuyu	扶餘
Gengo	言語
Gengo kenkyū	言語研究
Gengo shūroku	言語集錄
Getianhougong	閣天後宮
Gu taishi mingshi bei	故太師銘石
Guichou	貴愁
Guoli Beiping tushuguan yuekan	國立北平圖書館月刊
Guoxue congkan	國學叢刊
Guoxue jikan	國學季刊
Guoxue shangdui	國學商兌
Guoxue wenku	國學文庫
Ha-da-mie-er-yu	哈答咩兒于
Hailong	海龍
Hailong Nüzhen guoshu moyu	海龍女真國書摩崖
Hailong-xian zhi	海龍縣志
Hamkyōng	咸鏡
Hei bai banyuekan	黑白半月刊
Heilongjiang wenwu congkan	黑龍江文物叢刊
Helong	河龍
Heshenmiao	河神廟
Hetouhulun he	河頭胡論河
Hezhouhaiman	和拙海蠻
Hua-Yi yiyu	華夷譯語
Huangshi nü shu	黃氏女書
Huitong guan	會同館
Jiahunshan	夾渾山
Jiang Taigong shu	姜太公書
Jianguo daxue	建國大學
Jiayu	家語

Jiayu xian-neng-yan-yu zhuan 家語賢能言語傳  
 Jilinsheng kaogu gongzuodui 吉林省考古工作隊  
 Jilinsheng wenwu gongzuodui 吉林省文物工作隊  
 Jilin waiji 吉林外記  
 Jin guoyu jie 全國語解  
 Jinshi 金史  
 Jinshi 進士  
 Jin taihe timing canshi 金泰和題名殘石  
 Jiugang shibashan 九缸十八山  
 Juhua 巨化  
 Kando 間島  
 Kaogu 考古  
 Kaogu xuebao 考古學報  
 Kechenshan 可陳山  
 Ke Shaomin 柯劭忞  
 Kewei 叩畏  
 Ke-you-qian-qi 科右前旗  
 Ke-you-zhong-qi 科右中旗  
 Khuchit 浩齊  
 Kōbe gaidai ronsō 神戸外大論叢  
 Kōbe gengo gakkai hō 神戸言語學會報  
 Kokuritsu chūō hakubutsukan jihō 國立中央博物館時報  
 Kongfuzi shu 孔夫子書  
 Kongfuzi you guo zhang 孔夫子遊國章  
 Koryō-sa 高麗史  
 kuan 款  
 Kwansan 串山  
 Kyōng-guk-tae-chōn 經國大典  
 Kyōngwōn 慶源  
 Lailiu 涑流  
 Lalin 拉林  
 Laozi 老子  
 Li Bu 禮部  
 Liao Jin Yuan sanshi guoyu jie 遼金元三史國語解

Liao Jin Yuan yiwenzhi 遼金元藝文志  
 Liaoning daxue xuebao 遼寧大學學報  
 Liaoning shehui kexueyuan 遼寧社會科學院  
 Lishi yanjiu 歷史研究  
 Liuhe banjieshan 望河半截山  
 Liuzi 劉子  
 Lunyu 論語  
 Mamiya Rinzō 間宮林藏  
 Mammō 滿蒙  
 Manshū gakuhō 滿洲學報  
 Manshū shigaku 滿洲史學  
 meng'an 猛安  
 Mengzi 孟子  
 Mingshui 洛水  
 Ming wang shen de, 明王慎德四夷咸賓  
 si yi xian bin  
 Ming yiwenzhi, bubian, fubian 明藝文志, 補編, 附編  
 Mombushō kagaku kenkyū 文部省科學研究報告集錄  
 hōkoku shūroku  
 mouke 謀克  
 Naikaku bunko 內閣文庫  
 Naitō Torajirō 內藤虎次郎  
 Neimenggu daxue xuebao 內蒙古大學學報  
 Neimenggu shehui kexue 內蒙古社會科學  
 Nihon Chūgoku gakkai 日本中國學會  
 Nuergan Yongningsi bei 奴兒干永寧寺碑  
 Nūzhen jinshi timing bei 女真進士題名碑  
 Nūzhen zi shu 女真字書  
 Nūzhi da zi 女真大字  
 Nūzhi xiao zi 女真小字  
 Nūzhi zimu 女真字母  
 Pangu shu 盤古書  
 Penglai 蓬萊  
 Pukch'ōng 北青

Qi sui er	七歲兒
Qian Daxin	錢大昕
Qian zi wen	千字文
Qingling	慶陵
Qingyuan	慶源
Quhua	去化
Qu Peimo	曲培謨
Rekishhi chiri	歷史地理
Rekishhi kyōiku	歷史教育
renyin	壬寅
Sa-yōk-wōn	四譯院
Seikadō bunko	靜嘉堂文庫
Seikei jihō	盛京時報
Seikyū gakusō	青丘學叢
Shangshu	尚書
Shanyu shu	善于書
Shehui kexue zhanxian	社會科學戰綫
shence	神冊
Shi'er zhu guo	十二諸國
Shigaku kenkyū	史學研究
Shigaku zasshi	史學雜誌
Shikan	史觀
Shiji	史記
Shinagaku	支那學
Shirin	史林
Shixue jikan	史學季刊
Shixue nianbao	史學年報
Shizong	世宗
Shodō zenshū	書道全書
shouguo	收國
Shuazu	耍祖
Shujing	書香
Sikuquanshu	四庫全書
Silingol	錫林郭勒

Si yi guan	四譯(表)館
Sizhou	泗洲
Sōul taehakkyo nonmunjip	付毫大學校論文集
Sunbin shu	孫賓書
Sunzi	孫子
taihe	泰和
Taigong shu	太公書
Taizu	太祖
Telin	特林
tianfu	天輔
T'ong-mun-guan	通文館
T'ong-mun-guan-chi	通文館志
Torii Ryūzō	鳥居龍藏
Tōyō bunka	東洋文化
Tōyō bunko	東洋文庫
Tōyōshi kenkyū	東洋史研究
Uraru-Arutai gakkai	ウラル・アルタイ學會
Wada Kiyoshi	和田清
Wanbu Huayanjing ta	萬部華嚴經塔
Wang Shizhen	王世貞
Wangshougong	萬壽(壽)宮
Wanyan Xiyin	完顏希尹
Wenlinlang	文林郎
Wenxue nianbao	文學年報
Wenwu	文物
Wenxian	文獻
Wenzhongzi	文中子
Wu-lan-mao-du	烏蘭茂都
Wuzi	吳子
Wu Zixu shu	伍子胥書
Xi Han shu	西漢書
Xianping fu	咸平府
Xiao er lun	小兒論
Xiaojing	孝經

Xiao Xiaozhong muzhi	蕭孝忠墓誌
Xigushan	西孤山
Xin changzheng	新長征
Xingshu	行書
Xing Yuren	邢玉人
Xin Tang shu	新唐書
Xinya xuebao	新亞學報
Xixia	西夏
Xiyin	希尹
Xizong	熙宗
xuande	宣德
Xueshe	學舍
Yang Bin	楊賓
Yang Pu	楊仆
Yangshulinshan	楊樹林山
Yangzi	楊子
Yantai	宴臺
Yanzhou shanren sibu gao	兗州山人四部稿
Yelü Yanning muzhi	耶律延寧墓誌
Yi-cho Shil-lok	李朝實錄
Yigaidage	穆改達葛
Yijing	易經
yiqu	乙丑
Ying Li bei	應歷碑
Yong-bi-ō-ch'ōn-ga	龍飛御天歌
Yongningsi	永寧寺
Yoshi taehakkyo sahak hoe	延禧太學校史學會
Youdeguan	佑德觀
Zhang Hui	張煒
Zhao Yong da jiangjun	昭勇大將軍
tongzhi Xiongzhou	同知雄州度使墓碣
dushi muji	
Zhongyang minzu xueyuan xuebao	中央民族學院學報
Zhongyuan yinyun	中原音韻

Zhubu Buxiuhong  
Zi shi wei

主簿卜修洪  
自侍衛

\*

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

## ABBREVIATIONS

AOH	Acta Orientalia Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae
BEFEO	Bulletin de l'Ecole Française d'Extrême Orient
BSOAS	Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies
IIRAN	Izvestija Imperatorskoj Rossisko Akademii Nauk
JA	Journal Asiatique
JRAS	Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society
T'P	T'oung Pao
UAJ	Ural-altaische Jahrbücher
ZVOIRAO	Zapiski Vostočnago Otdelenija Imperatorskago Russkago Arxeologičeskago Obščestva

Characters for the titles of journals in Chinese,  
Japanese and Korean are given in the Glossary.

-----

Akademija Nauk SSSR (Institut Vostokovedenija), Pismennye  
pamjatniki vostoka - Istoriko-filologičeskie  
issledovanija - Ežegodnik 1969. Moscow 1972

Akademija Nauk SSSR (Ordена Trudovogo Krasnogo Znameni  
Institut Arxeologii), Arxeologičeskie otkrytija 1976  
goda, pp.253-254, "Rabota Šajginskogo otrjada". Moscow  
1977

Akiyama Kenzō, 秋山謙藏 "Kamakura jidai ni okeru  
Joshin-sen no raikō, Azuma Kagami no Joshin moji to Ka-I  
yakugo no Joshin moji to no hikaku kenkyū" 鎌倉時代に於ける女真  
船の來航—「吾妻鏡」の女真文字と「華夷譯語」の女真文字との比較研究  
[The arrival of a Jurchen ship during the Kamakura  
period, and a comparative study of the Jurchen  
characters in the Azuma kagami and the Hua-Yi yiyu]

Rekishi chiri Vol. 65, No. 1, (1935), pp. 65-74

Amiot, J.M., Mémoires concernant les Chinois, Vol. XIV,  
"Introduction à la connaissance des peuples qui ont été  
ou qui sont actuellement tributaires de la Chine",  
Paris, 1789

Amma Yaichirō, 安馬彌一郎 "Daikin tokushōda shōhi no  
kenkyū" o yomu" 大金得勝陀頌碑の研究を讀む  
[On reading "Research on the Jin Victory Stele"] (Cf.  
Tamura Jitsuzō, "Daikin tokushōda..."), Tōyōshi kenkyū,  
Vol. III:6 (1938), pp. 92-94



- Joshimbun kinsekishi kō 女真文金石志稿 [A Study of Inscriptions in the Jurchen Script], Kyoto, 1943
- Aurousseau, L., "Chronique: Chine", BEFEO Vol. XI (1912) pp 190-201
- Austin, W.M., "The Phonemics and Morphophonemics of Manchu", in N. Poppe, (ed.), American Studies in Altaic Linguistics, Indiana University, Bloomington, 1962, pp. 15-22
- Bang, W., Review of W. Grube, Die Sprache und Schrift der Jučen, in Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde der Morgenlandes, Vol. X (1986), pp. 252-255
- Benzing, J., Die tungusischen Sprachen: Versuch einer vergleichenden Grammatik Mainz, 1956
- Bushell, S.W., "Inscriptions in the Jurchen and Allied Scripts", in Actes du XIe Congrès International des Orientalistes, Sec.V., Vol.I, pp.11-35 Paris, 1898
- Cao Tingjie, 曹廷杰, "Dong san sheng ditu shuo: Telin bei shuo", 東三省圖說: 特林碑說, [On the map of the three eastern [northeastern] provinces: on the stele at Tyr], 1887, reprinted in Chang Shun, Jilin tongzhi, 1891.
- , "Desheng tuo bei shuo", 得勝陀碑說 [On the Victory stele] and "Desheng tuo yibei ji" [A record of the stele in memory of the victory [of Aguda]]; originally written 1885; included in Luo Fuyi, Manzhou jinshi zhi, 1937.

- Chang Shun 長順, Jilin tongzhi 吉林通志 [A General Record of the Jilin Area], juan 120, "Jinshi zhi" 金石志 [Inscriptions]; Jilin, 1891
- Chavannes, E., "Note sur l'inscription joutchen de K'ien tcheou", T'P Vol. IX, (1908), pp. 263-265
- Chen Shu 陳述, "Ba Jilin Da'an chutu Qidanwen tongjing" 跋吉林大安出土契丹文銅鏡 [A postscript to the bronze mirror with an inscription in the Jurchen script excavated at Da'an, in Jilin], Wenwu, No 8, 1973, pp. 36-40
- Chinggeltai, Chen Naixiong, Xing Fuli, Liu Fengzhu and Yu Baolin [The Khitan Script Research Group], 清格爾泰, 陳乃雄, 邢復禮, 劉鳳翥, 于寶宸, "Guanyu Qidan xiao zi yanjiu", 關於契丹小字研究 [Research on the Khitan small script], in Neimenggu daxue xuebao, 1977, No 4, Special Issue on the Khitan script.
- , "Qidan xiao zi jiedu xin tan", 契丹小字解讀新探 [New investigations in the decipherment of the Khitan script], Kaogu xuebao, 1978, No. 3.
- , Qidan Xiao zi yanjiu 契丹小字研究 [Research on the Khitan small script], published by Zhongguo shehui kexueyuan chubanshe, Beijing, 1985.
- Chōsen Sotokufu 朝鮮總督府 (compiler), Chōsen kinseki sōran 朝鮮金石總覽 [A General Catalogue of Inscriptions in Korea], 1919, reprinted Tokyo 1971

Cong Peiyuan, 聶佩遠, Song Dejin, 宋德金 Zhao Mingqi, 趙鳴岐  
 "Lun Cao Tingjie dui Yongningsi bei de yanjiu",  
 論曹廷杰對於永寧寺碑的研究, [On the research of  
 Cao Tingjie on the Yongningsi bei inscription], Kaogu  
xuebao, 1980, No. 1.

Courant, M., Bibliographie Coréenne, Paris 1894

Dao Erji, 道爾吉, "Nüzhen yuyin chutan" 女真語音初探 [A  
 preliminary study of the phonology of Jurchen], in Dao  
 Erji and He Xige, Nüzhen yiyu yanjiu.

----- "Guanyu Nüzhen da, xiao zi wenti" 關於女真大字問題  
Neimenggu daxue xuebao, 1980, No 4, pp.41-48

Dao Erji and He Xige 和希格, "Hailong Hanwen, Nüzhenwen  
 duiyi moya zhen-wei bian" 海龍漢文女真文對譯摩崖真偽辨  
 [A discussion on the authenticity of the Chinese-Jurchen  
 bilingual inscription found in Hailong], Neimenggu  
shehui kexue, 1984, No.3, pp. 47-49

----- Nüzhen yiyu yanjiu 女真譯語研究 [Research on  
 the Jurchen Hua-Yi yiyu (Vocabulary of the Bureau of  
 Translators)], published as a supplement to Neimenggu  
daxue xuebao, 1983

Dao Erji, Mu Hongli 穆鴻利 and He Xige, "Nüzhen wenzi  
 shiliao zhaichao" 女真文字史料摘抄 [Excerpts  
 from historical materials relating to the Jurchen  
 script], Neimenggu daxue xuebao, 1979, Vol. 3/4,  
 p.193ff.

Denison Ross, E., "New light on the history of the Oriental  
 College, and a 16th century vocabulary of the Luchuan  
 language", T'P Vol. II, No 9 (1910), pp. 689-695

Devéria, G., "Examen de la Stèle de Yen-tai. Dissertation sur  
 les caractères employés par les Tartares Jou-tchen.  
 Extraite du Houng-hue-in-yuan, traduite et annotée",  
Revue de l'Extrême Orient, Vol.I, (1882), pp. 173-186

----- "Histoire du College des Interprètes de Pékin", in  
Mélanges Charles de Harlez, Leyden 1896, pp. 94-102

----- "L'écriture du Royaume de Si-hia ou Tangout", in  
Memoires presentes par divers savants a l'Academie des  
Inscriptions et Belles Lettres de l'Institut de France,  
 sér.I, tome XI (1901), pp. 147-175

Dong Qing 冬青, "Gudai shaoshu minzu wenzi lunzhu mulu"  
 古代少數民族文字論著目錄 [A catalogue of articles  
 and other works on the ancient scripts of the National  
 Minorities], in Zhongguo minzu gu wenzi, 中國民族古文字  
 Beijing, 1982

Dong Tonghe 董同龢, Hanyu yinyunxue, 漢語音韻學 [Chinese  
 Historical Phonology], Taipei 1970

Douglas, R.K., Supplementary Catalogue of Chinese Books in  
the British Museum, London, 1903

Duan Yiping 段一平, "Nüzhen wenzi de chuangzaozhe: Wanyan  
 Xiyin", 女真文字的創造者—完顏希尹 [The creator  
 of the Jurchen script: Wanyan Xiyin], in Xin changzheng,  
 1981/2, pp.44-45

- Edkins, J., "The language of the Golden Tartars", in China Review, Vol. XXII (1897-98), pp. 674-678
- Feng, Yongqian 馮永謙, "Hailong Jin, Han wen shi jindai wei ke" 海龍金漢文是近代偽刻 [The inscriptions in Jurchen and Chinese at Hailong are recent forgeries], in Liaoning daxue xuebao, 1980, Vol. III
- Franke, H., Review of Mikami Tsugio, Kinshi kenkyū III, in T'P Vol LX (1974) pp. 182-186
- "Etymologische Bemerkungen zu den Vokabularen der Jurchen Sprache", in Florilegia Manjurica in Memoriam Walter Fuchs, Wiesbaden 1982, pp. 7-18
- "Randnotizen zu einigen Worten der Khitansprache im Licht neuerer Arbeiten", AOH Vol. XXXVI (1-3), 1982, pp. 173-182
- Fuchs, W., "Remarks on a new Hua-I-I-Yu", in Bulletin of the Catholic University of Peking, No 8 (1931), pp. 91-97
- "Jušen-Manjurische Wortgleichungen", in Tractata Altaica Denis Sinor ... Dedicata, Wiesbaden, 1976 pp. 181-188
- Fukushima Kunimichi 福島邦道, Sanshū Nihon Yakugo 纂輯時譯語 [A Collection of Japanese and Loochoo Vocabularies Transliterated into Chinese, Edited and Published in China], Compiled and edited by Kyōto daigaku kokubungakkai 京都大學國文學會 [Society for the Study of Japanese Language and Literature], Kyoto, 1968

- Gilbert, L., Dictionnaire historique et géographique de la Mandchourie, Hongkong 1934
- Giles, H.A., A Catalogue of the Wade Collection of Chinese and Manchu Books in the Library of the University of Cambridge. Cambridge, 1898
- Grube, W., "Note préliminaire sur la langue et l'écriture Joutchen", T'P (1st series), Vol. V, (1894) pp. 334-330
- Die Sprache und Schrift der Jučen. Leipzig, 1896, reprinted Beijing 1936 and Tianjin, 1941.
- Vorläufige Mittheilung über die bei Nikolajewsk am Amur aufgefundenen Jučen Inschriften. Berlin, 1896
- Haenisch, E., Mandschu-Grammatik. Leipzig, 1961
- Hambis, L. "Premier essai de déchiffrement de la langue Khitan", in Comptes Rendues de l'Académie des Inscriptions (seance du 27 mars), Paris 1953, pp. 121-134
- Han Rulin 韓儒林, "Nüzhen yi ming kao" 女真譯名考 [A Study on the Transcription of the name of the Jurchens], Studia Serica, Vol. III (1942), pp. 1-11
- Cf. the resumé in Monumenta Serica, Vol. XII, p. 371
- Haneda Toru 羽田亨, "Kittan moji no shin shiryō" 契丹文字の新資料 [New material for the study of the Khitan script], Shirin, Vol. X., No. 1 (1925). Reprinted in Haneda Hakushi shigaku rombunsho 羽田博士史學論文集 [Collected articles on history by Doctor Haneda], Vol. II, pp. 420-434, Kyoto 1957

Harlez, C. de, "Niu-tchis et Mandchous, rapports d'origine et de langage", JA, Vol. XI, No.2, (1888), pp. 220-249

Hauer, E., Handwörterbuch der Mandschusprache. Wiesbaden 1955-1958

He Xige, 和希格, "Cong Jindai de jin, yin pai tantao Nüzhen da, xiao zi" 從金代的金銀牌探討女真大小字  
[An investigation into the large and small Jurchen scripts on the basis of gold and silver travel-passes (paizi) of the Jin dynasty], in Neimenggu daxue xuebao, 1980/4, pp.28-40

-----, "Jin bainian guo nei-wai "Nüzhen yiyu" yanjiu gaikuang" 近百年國內外「女真譯語」研究概況 [A general outline of research on the Jurchen Hua-Yi yiyu (The Jurchen Vocabulary of the Bureau of Translators) in China and abroad during the last hundred years], in Neimenggu shehui kexue, 1982, No. 3, pp.104-108

-----, "Nüzhenguan za zi, laiwen yanjiu" 女真館雜字來文研究 [Research on the Vocabulary and Petitions of the Jurchen Bureau of Translators], in Dao Erji and He Xige, Nüzhen yiyu yanjiu, pp. 242-436

Heilongjiang-sheng wenwu kaogu gongzuodui 黑龍江省文物考古工作隊 [Archeological relics bureau of Heilongjiang province],

"Heilongjiang-pan Suibin Zhongxing gucheng he Jindai muqun" 黑龍江畔綏濱中興古城和金代墓群 [An ancient settlement on the banks of the Heilongjiang river and a number of Jin dynasty tombs], Wenwu 1977 No 4, pp. 40-45

Heissig, Walther et al., Tractata Altaica Denis Sinor Sexagenario Optime de Rebus Altaicis Merito Dedicata, Wiesbaden 1976

Hirth, F., "The Chinese Oriental College", in Journal of the North China Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society, Vol. XXII, (1887), pp. 203-223

Hiu Lie, Die Mandschu-Sprachkunde in Korea, Bloomington, 1972

Holzman, D., Résumé of Li Xuezhi, "Jinshi yujie", in Revue Bibliographique de Sinologie, Vol. IX, (1963) p.278

Honda, M., and Ceadel, E.B., "A Survey of Japanese Contributions to Manchurian Studies", Asia Major (NS) Vol. V (1955-56), pp. 59-105

Huang Zhenhua 黃振華, "Mingdai Nüzhenwen Nuergan Yongningsi bei xin shi" 明代女真文奴兒干永寧寺碑記新釋 [A new interpretation of the Jurchen inscription in the Yongningsi Temple at Nuergan], in Zhongguo difang shi zhi 中國地方史志, 1982, Vol. 2, pp. 32-39

Huth, G., "Zur Entzifferung der Niuči-Inschrift von Yen-t'ai", IIRAN, Ser. V, Vol.V (1896), pp. 375-378

Imanishi Shunjū 今西春秋, "Joshinji dōin", 女真字銅印 [A bronze seal in the Jurchen script], Tōyōshi kenkyū, Vol. III, No. 4 (plate before page 1)

Inaba Iwakichi 稲葉石吉, "Hokuseijō Kanzan jō Joshinji magai kōshaku", 北青城串山城女真文摩崖考釋 [Notes on the Jurchen inscription cut in the rockface at the summit of Mount Kwansan near Pukch'ōngsōng], Seikyū gakusō, No. 2, (1930) pp. 21-42

----- "Azuma kagami Jojikiji no shin kenkyū" 吾妻鏡女直字の新研究 [New research on the Jurchen characters in the Azuma kagami], Seikyū gakusō, Vol. IX (1932) pp. 1-19

----- "Ryō Shōsō Tōwa gen no Bonnu Daishi no boshi" 遼聖宗統和間の盆奴太師の墓誌. [Epitaph for the late Pennu Taishi of the tonghe era of the reign of Shengzong of the Liao dynasty], Seikei jihō, 27th September 1939

Ishida Mikinosuke 石田幹之助, "Joshingo kenkyū no shin shiryō" 女真語研究の新資料 [New material for the study of Jurchen], in Kuwabara Hakushi kanreki kinen tōyōshi ronsō, 桑原博士還暦記念東洋史論叢 Kyoto, 1931, pp. 1271-1323 Reprinted (with corrections) in Tōa bunkashi sōkō, pp. 3-70

----- "Daikin tokushōda hi no sai hatsugen, 大金得勝陀石碑の再發現 [The rediscovery of the Jin Victory Memorial Stele], Shigaku zasshi, Vol. XLV, No. 1 (1934), pp. 108-110. Reprinted in Tōa bunkashi sōkō, pp. 884-887

----- "Jurčica" (contains the following two articles: "Gurūbe-bon Ka-I yakugo ho-i", グルube本「華夷譯語」補遺 [A supplement to Grube's edition of the Hua-Yi yiyu] and "Hōshi bokufu ni mieru Joshinji meimon kōshaku", «方氏墨譜」に見えたる女真字銘文考釋 [An investigation into the inscription in Jurchen characters recorded in the Fangshi mopu]), in Ikeuchi Hakushi kanreki kinen tōyōshi ronsō, 池内博士還暦記念東洋史論叢 pp. 39-57, Tokyo 1940. Reprinted in Tōa bunkashi sōkō, pp. 71-86, under the title "Joshingo zatsuso", «女真語雜俎」 [Miscellaneous comments on Jurchen].

----- "Iwayuru heishūbon Ka-I yakugo no Dattankan yakugo", 所謂丙種本「華夷譯語」の「韃靼館譯語」 [On the so-called C-type Hua-Yi yiyu of the Mongol Section of the Bureau of Interpreters], in Tōa bunkashi sōkō, pp. 147-205

----- "Joshin daiji to wa nanzo ya", 女真大字とは何ぞ也 [What are the large Jurchen characters?], in Shigaku zasshi, Vol. VII, 1942

----- Tōa bunkashi sōkō, 東亞文化史叢考 [Studies on the Cultural History of East Asia], Tokyo 1973

Ishihama Juntarō, 石濱純太郎, "Mammō gengo no keitō: Joshingo", 滿蒙言語の系統: 女真語 [The structure of the Manchu and Mongol languages: Jurchen], in Iwanami kōza tōyō shichō, 岩波講座東洋思潮 15th October, 1934, pp. 50-52

Jia Jingyan, 賈敬顏, "Nüzhenwen guanyin kaolüe", 女真文官印考略  
[A brief study of official seals in the Jurchen  
script], in Zhongyang minzu xueyuan xuebao, 1982, No.4,  
pp. 35-37

-----, "Qidanwen", 契丹文, [The Khitan script]. in  
Zhongguo minzu gu wenzi, Beijing, 1982

Jin Guangping, 金光平, "Cong Qidan da, xiao zi dao Nüzhen  
da, xiao zi", 從契丹大、小字到女真大、小字  
[From the large and small Khitan scripts to the large  
and small Jurchen scripts], in Neimenggu daxue xuebao -  
shehui kexue ban, Vol. II, 1962

Jin Guangping and Zeng Yigong, 曾毅公, "Jinxi Xigushan  
Qidanwen muzhi shishi", 錦西孤山契丹文墓誌試釋  
[An attempted explanation of the Khitan script on the  
epitaph found at Xigushan, Jinxi], Kaogu xuebao, 1957,  
No. 2, pp. 83-84

Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong, 金敬綜, Nüzhen yuyan  
wenzi yanjiu, 女真語言文字研究 [A Study of the  
Jurchen Language and Script], Wenwu chubanshe, Beijing,  
1980

Jin Guangping, ed. by Jin Qicong, "Nüzhen zhi zi fangfa lun -  
jian yu Riben Shanlu Guangming shi shangque", 女真製字  
方法論——兼與日本山路廣明氏商榷  
[On the method of  
construction of Jurchen characters - some comments on  
the views of the Japanese scholar Mr Yamaji Hiroaki],  
Neimenggu daxue xuebao, 1980, No.4, pp. 11-27

Jin Qicong, "Shaanxi beilin faxian-de Nüzhen wenzi shu",  
陝西碑林發現的女真文書, [Writing in the  
Jurchen script discovered in the "Beilin" [Forest of  
Stelae] in Shaanxi], Neimenggu daxue xuebao, zhexue  
shehui kexue ban, 1979, No 1/2

-----, "Nüzhen wen" 女真文, [The Jurchen Language], in  
Zhongguo lishi da cidian, 中國歷史大辭典  
[Encyclopaedic Dictionary of Chinese History],  
preprinted in Lishi jiaoxue, 1980, No 12, pp. 61-62

-----, "Nüzhen wenzi yanjiu gaikuang", 女真文字研究概況  
[A general outline of research on the Jurchen script],  
in Zhongguo minzu gu wenzi yanjiu, 中國民族古文字研究  
[Research on the ancient scripts of national minorities  
in China], compiled by the Zhongguo minzu gu wenzi  
yanjiuhui and published by Zhongguo shehui kexue  
chubanshe, Beijing, 1984

-----, Nüzhenwen cidian, 女真文辭典 [Jurchen  
Dictionary], Wenwu chubanshe, Beijing, 1984

Ju Deyuan, 鞠德源 "Guanyu Mingdai Nuergan Yongningsi bei  
de kaocha he yanjiu" 關於明代奴兒干永寧寺碑記的考察和研究  
[Investigation and research on the stele in the  
Yongningsi Temple at Nuergan], Wenxian, 1980, Vol 1,  
p.64

Kara, D., Kyčanov, E.I. and Starikov, V.S., "Pervaja naxodka  
čžurčžen'skix rukopisnyx tekstov na bumage" [The first  
discovery of written texts in the Jurchen script],  
Pis'mennye Pamiatniki Vostoka 1969, pp.223-228

Kara, G. (= Kara, D.), Review of Starikov, V.S. et al., AOH  
Vol. XXVI, No. 1, (1972), pp. 155-157

Kara, Gy. (=Kara, G.), "On the Khitan writing systems", (to  
appear in Mongolian Studies: Journal of the Mongolia  
Society)

Kiyose, Gisaburō N., "Joshin on saikōsei kō", 女真音再構成考  
[Remarks on the reconstruction of Jurchen  
phonology], Gengo kenkyū, Vol. 64, 1973, pp. 12-13;  
English summary pp. 41-42

-----, A Study of the Jurchen Language and Script -  
Reconstruction and Decipherment, published by  
Horitsubunka-sha, 法律文化社, Kyoto, 1977

Klaproth, J., Asia Polyglotta, Paris, 1823

Kodaira Suihō, 小平綏方 "Ryō Kin Seika Gen Shin gochō no  
seiji" 遼金西夏元清五朝の製字, [The structure  
of the scripts of the Liao, Jin, Xixia, Yuan and Qing  
dynasties], Toyo bunka, No. 154 (1942)

Kondō Morishige, 近藤守重, Seisai shojaku kō 正齋書籍考  
[An examination of the books held in the personal  
library of Kondō Morishige], reprinted in Kondō Seisai  
zenshū, 全集 Japan, 1906, Vol. III, pp. 317-333

Lacouperie, T. de, "The Djurtchen of Mandschuria: Their name,  
language and literature", JRAS, Vol. XXI, No. 2, 1889,  
pp. 433-460

Langlès, C., Alphabet mandchou, Third edition, Paris, 1807  
(First edition 1787)

Laufer, B., "Jurči and Mongol numerals", in Körösi Csoma  
Archivum (Budapest) Vol. I, No. 2 (1921) pp. 112-115

Lee Ki-moon, "A Comparative Study of Manchu and Korean", UJ,  
Vol. XXX (1958), pp. 104-120

-----, "Mongolian Loan-words in Middle Korean", UJ,  
Vol. XXXV (1963), pp. 188-197

-----, cf. Yi, Ki-mun.

Lewicki, M., La langue mongole des transcriptions chinoises  
du XVe siècle. Le Houa-yi-yi-yu de 1389. Wrocław, 1949

Li Lian, 李濂 Bianjing yiji zhi, 汴京遺迹志 [Historical  
relics of Kaifeng], published during the Ming Dynasty.

Li Wenxin, 李文信 "Qidan xiao zi 'Gu taishi mingshi ji' zhi  
yanjiu", 契丹小字故太師銘石記之研究 [Research  
on the Gu taishi mingshi ji inscription in the Khitan  
small script], (Manzhou) Guoli zhongyang bowuguan  
luncong, Vol. III, (1942),  
pp. 67-74

Li Xuezhì, 李學智 "Jinshi yujie zhengwu chugao" 金史語解正誤  
初稿 [A preliminary draft of amendments to the Jinshi  
yujie [The vocabulary of Jurchen words attached to the  
History of the Jin Dynasty]]; in The New Asia Journal  
(Xinya xuebao, 新亞學報), Vol. V, No. 2, pp. 377-384.  
Reprinted as an appendix to The History of Chin Dynasty  
published by the National War College, Taipei, 1970

-----, "Jinshi guoyu jie zhu shi" 金史國語解註釋  
[The Jurchen vocabulary appended to the History of the Jin dynasty, annotated and explained], appended to The History of Chin Dynasty, published by the National War College, Taipei, 1970

-----, "Nüzhen yiyu zhengwu juyu, 女真譯語正誤舉隅  
[A preliminary list of amendments to the Jurchen Hua-Yi yiyu], Bianzheng yanjiusuo nianbao, 1976, Taipei

Li Yiyou, 李逸友 "Neimenggu chutu gudai guanyin de xin ziliao" 內蒙古出土古代官印的新資料 [New material on official seals from ancient times excavated in Inner Mongolia], Wenwu, 1961, No. 9, pp. 64-65

Li Yuchun, 李遇春 "Liangke Qidanwen tongyin" 兩顆契丹文銅印 [Two official seals in the Khitan script], Wenwu, 1959, No. 3, pp. 73-74

Ligeti, L., "Note préliminaire sur le déchiffrement des 'petits caractères' joutchen", AOH, Vol. III, (1953), pp. 221-228

-----, "Deux tablettes de T'ai-tsong des Ts'ing", AOH, Vol. VIII (1958), pp. 201-239

-----, Les mots solons dans un ouvrage des Ts'ing", AOH, Vol. IX (1959), pp. 231-272

-----, "Les anciens elements mongols dans le mandchou", AOH, Vol. X, (1960), pp. 231-248

-----, "Les inscriptions Djurtchen de Tyr: la formule om mani padme hūṃ. AOH, Vol. XII (1961), pp.5-26

-----, "Les Joutchen "sauvages"", Altorientalische Forschungen, Vol. 13, No. 1, (1986), pp. 110-122

Linqing 鹿奔慶, Hong xue yin yuan tu ji, 江雪因緣圖紀  
reprinted by Beijing guji chubanshe, Beijing, 1984.

Liu Fengzhu, 劉鳳翥, "Qidan, Nüzhen wenzi jianjie" 契丹女真文字簡介 [A brief introduction to the Khitan and Jurchen scripts], Lishi jiaoxue, 1980 No. 5, pp. 49-52

-----, "Nüzhen zi "Guocheng" yin pai kaoshi" 女真字「國誠」銀牌考釋  
[A study and explanation of the silver travel-pass (paizi) with the Jurchen inscription "Trust of the Nation"]], in Wenwu, 1980, No. 1, p. 33

Liu Fengzhu and Yu Baolin, 于寶麟, "Nüzhen wenzi "Da Jin De Sheng Tuo Song" jiao kan ji", 女真文字「大金得勝陀頌」校勘記  
[A comparative annotated study of the Da Jin De Sheng Tuo Song inscription in the Jurchen script], in Minzu yuwen lun ji, 民族語文論集 Beijing, 1981, pp. 292-344

-----, "Qidan zi yanjiu gaikuang", 契丹字研究概況  
[A survey on research on the Khitan script], in Zhongguo minzu gu wenzi, Beijing, 1982

Liu Houzi, 劉厚滋, "Chuanshi shike-zhong Nüzhen yuwen cailiao ji qi yanjiu" 傳世石刻中女真語文材料及其研究  
[Extant inscriptions in the Jurchen language and research concerning these], in Wenxue nianbao, Vol. III, 1941, p. 37. (Reprinted Hongkong, 1969)



Liu Shilu, 劉師陸, "Nüzhazi bei kao", 女直字碑考 [An investigation on a stele in Jurchen script] and "Nüzhazi bei xu kao" 女直字碑續考 [Further investigations on the stele in Jurchen script]; originally published in a woodblock edition in 1829; reprinted in Kaogu, Vol. V, (1926), pp.173-178

Liu Zuichang and Zhu Jieyuan, 劉最長, 朱捷元, "Xi'an Beilin faxian Nüzhen wen shu, Nan Song tuo Jin fu ji Wang "Shengjiaoxu" ji banhua, 西安碑林發現女真文書, 南宋拓金幅集, 王"聖教序"及版畫 [Discovery of a Jurchen manuscript, a complete rubbing of Wang Xizhi's calligraphy (Shengjiaoxu) and some woodblock prints], Wenwu, 1979, No 5, pp. 1-6

Luo Fucheng, 羅福成, "Yantai Jinyuan guoshu bei kao", 宴臺金源國書碑考 [An investigation into the national script of the Jin dynasty on the stele of Yantai], Guoxue jikan, Vol. 1, No. 4, (1923), pp. 687-691

-----, "Nüzhen guoshu bei kaoshi", 女真國書碑考釋 [A study of a stele in the Jurchen script], Shinagaku, Vol. V, No. 4 (1929), pp. 103-104

-----, "Nüzhen guoshu bei hawei" 女真國書碑跋尾 [Further comments on a stele in the Jurchen script], Guoli Beiping tushuguan yuekan, Vol. III, No 4, (1929), p. 457

-----, "Jin taihe timing canshi" 金泰和題名殘石 [An inscribed stone fragment from the taihe period of the Jin dynasty], Dongbei congkan, Vol. XVII, No. 5 (1931), appendix

-----, "Yantai Jinyuan guoshu bei shiwen" 宴臺金源國書碑釋文 [An explanation of the Jurchen script on the stele of Yantai], Kaogu, Vol. V, (1936), pp. 191-208

-----, "Ming Nuergan Yongningsi bei Nüzhen guoshu tu shi" 明奴兒干永寧寺碑女真國書圖釋 [An explanation of the Jurchen script on the stele of the Yongningsi Temple at Nuergan], in Manshū gakuho, Vol. V (December, 1937); before page 1

-----, Nüzhi yiyu, 女直譯語 [The Jurchen Hua-Yi yiyu] (Text plus supplements), 1933

Luo Fuyi, 羅福頤, Manzhou jinshi zhi, 滿洲金石志 [Inscriptions of Manchuria], Three volumes, Xinjing, 1937.

-----, "Nuergan Yongningsi bei bu kao", 奴兒干永寧寺碑補考 [A supplement to the stele of the Yongningsi Temple at Nuergan], Manshū gakuho, Vol. V, (1937) pp. 97-103

-----, Liao, Jin san shike: Jin Aotun Liangbi timing", 遼金三石刻: 金奧屯良弼題名 [Three inscribed stones from the Liao and Jin dynasties: the Aotun Liangbi tablet], Manshū shigaku, Vol. III, No.2 (1940), 37-40

-----, Liao, Jin wenzi jincun lu, 遼金文字僅存錄 [A catalogue of extant examples of the scripts of the Liao and Jin dynasties], Manshu teikoku kokuritsu chūō hakubutsukan jihō, Vol. XIII (1941), pp. 1-8

-----, Yinzhang gaishu, 印章概述 [Introductory outline of seal inscriptions], Beijing, 1963

- , Nüzhenwen yinji, 女真文印集 [A collection of seals in the Jurchen script] (unpublished manuscript), 1965
- , Gu xiyin gailun, 古璽印概論 [A general discussion on ancient seals], Beijing, 1981
- Luo Fuyi, Jin Qicong, Jia Jingyan and Huang Zhenhua, "Nüzhen zi Aotun Liangbi shi keshi chushi", 女真字奧屯良弼詩刻石初釋 [A preliminary explanation of the inscription with a poem by Aotun Liangbi in the Jurchen script], Minzu yuwen, 1982, No 2, pp. 26-32
- Luo Jizu, 羅繼祖 "Nüzhenyu yanjiu ziliao", 女真語研究資料 Guoxue congkan, No. 14, 1944
- Mao Wen, 毛汶, Nüzhen wenzi zhi qiyuan, 女真文字之起源 [The origin of the Jurchen script], Shixue nianbao, Vol. I, No. 3 (1931), pp. 171-176
- , "Jinshi guoyu mingwu pian si yi biao", 金史國語名物篇四譯表 [On the vocabulary of the Jurchen language in the History of the Jin Dynasty], Guoxue shangdui, Vol. 1, No. 1, (1933), pp. 33-36
- Maspero, H., "Etudes sur la phonétique de la langue annamite", BEFEO, Vol. XII, No. 7 (1912), pp. 7-9
- Matsuzawa Rōsen, 松澤老泉 Ikoku Shomoku Gaishū, 國刻書目外集 Japan, 1820

- Meng Zong, 孟宗, "Nüzhenwen keshi xin faxian", 女真文刻石新發現 [A new discovery of an inscription in the Jurchen script], Hei bai banyuekan, Vol. III, No 1, 1935.
- Menges, K., "Die Sprache der Jürčen", in Die tungusischen Sprachen, in Handbuch der Orientalistik: Erste Abteilung, Fünfter Band: Altaistik: Dritter Abschnitt: Tungusologie, pp.246-256
- Mikami Tsugio, 三上次男 Kinshi kenkyū III: Kindai seiji shakai no kenkyū, 金史研究:三:金代政治社會の研究 Tokyo, 1973
- Miller, R. A., "Notes on the Jürčen numerals for the teens", in UJAJ, No. 47 (1975), pp. 146-153
- Min, Yōng-gyu, 閔泳珪, "Yōjin munja-ŭi kusōng-e taehayo" 女真文字之構成에對하여 [On the structure of Jurchen characters], Yoshi taehaekkyo sahak hoe, Vol. VII, Pusan, 1952
- , "Kyōngwŏn Yōjinja pi gosŏk", 慶源女真字碑考釋 [Notes on the inscription in Jurchen characters at Kyōngwŏn], Dong bang hak ji (Journal of Far Eastern Studies), Vol. VIII (October 1967), pp. 3-14
- Minn, Young-Gyu, cf. Min, Yōng-gyu
- Minzu yuwen bianjibu, 民族語文編輯部, [Editorial board, Minority Languages], Minzu yuwen lun ji, 民族語文論集 [Collection of articles on minority languages], Zhongguo shehui kexue chubanche, 1981.

Murayama Shichirō, 村山七郎, "Azuma kagami ni mieru  
Joshingo ni tsuite", 吾妻鏡に見えぬ女真語についで  
[On the Jurchen words in the Azuma kagami], Tōyō  
gakuho, Vol. XXXIII (1951), No 3/4, pp. 146-148

Naitō Torajirō, 内藤虎次郎, "Nurukan Eineiji ni hi hokō",  
奴兒干永寧寺ニ碑補考, [Supplementary research on the  
two stelae at the Yongningsi Temple at Nuergan] Tokushi  
sōroku, 讀史叢錄, Kyoto 1929, pp.85-102 and pp.  
511-524, reprinted in Naitō Konan Zenshū, 内藤湖南全集  
[Collected Works of Naitō Konan (Naitō Torajirō), Vol.  
VII, Tokyo 1970, pp. 583-591

-----, "Nihon-Manshū kōtsū ryakusetsu", 日本滿洲交通略説  
[A brief outline of communications between Japan and  
Manchuria], in Tōyō bunkashi kenkyū, Tokyo-Kyoto 1936;  
reprinted in Naitō Konan Zenshū, Vol. VIII, Tokyo, 1969,  
pp. 224-272

Nishida Tatsuo, 西田龍雄, "Minmatsu kango no onin taikei", 明末漢語の  
音韻體系 [The phonological system of Chinese during the  
late Ming dynasty], Seibankan yakugo no kenkyū,  
[A study of the Tibetan-Chinese vocabulary Xifan-guan  
yi-yu], Kyoto, 1970

-----, "Joshin moji no seiritsu to hatten", 女真文字の  
成立と發展 [The establishment and  
development of the Jurchen script], Gengo Nos. 9, 11 and  
12 (1980), and reprinted in Ajia no mikaidoku moji pp.  
128-155

-----, "Kittan moji kaidoku no shin tenkai", 契丹文字  
解讀の新展開 [New developments in the decipherment of  
the Khitan script], originally published in Gengo  
(1980), and reprinted in Ajia no mikaidoku moji pp. 159  
- 203

-----, Ajia no mikaidoku moji, 33の未解讀文字  
[Undeciphered scripts of Asia], Tokyo, 1982

Norman, Jerry, A Concise Manchu-English Lexicon, University  
of Washington Press, 1978

Ogura Shimpei, 小倉進平, "Chōsen ni okeru Kittan oyobi  
Joshin gogaku", 朝鮮に於ける契丹及び女真語學 [A  
study of the Khitan and Jurchen languages in Korea],  
Rekishi chiri, Vol. XXIX, No. 5 (1917), pp. 559-569;  
reprinted in Chōsen gogaku shi, pp. 660-672

-----, Chōsen gogaku shi, 朝鮮語學史 [A History of  
Korean Linguistics], new edition edited and revised by  
Kōno Rokurō, Tokyo 1964

Okada Hidehiro, "Color names in Manchu", in American Studies  
in Altaic Linguistics, ed. by Nicholas Poppe, pp.225-228

Olbricht, P., review of Yamaji Hiroaki, Kittan moji...,  
Joshin moji... and Joshin gogai, Revue bibliographique  
de sinologie, No. 4 (1958), Nos. 595, 596 and 597.

Onogawa Hidemi, 河野六郎, Kinshi goi shūsei, 金史語彙集成  
[Index to names of people, places and official titles in  
the History of the Jin Dynasty], Kyoto, 1960

Osada Natsuki, 長田夏樹, "Joshin moji no kōzō to sono onka ni tsuite" 女真文字の構造とその音價に就いて  
[On the structure of Jurchen characters and their phonological values], lecture given to Nihon Chūgoku gakkai (Japanese Sinological Association), 23rd October, 1949

-----, "Manshūgo to Joshingo", 滿洲語と女真語  
[The Manchu language and the Jurchen language], Kōbe gengo gakkai hō, No 1 (1949) pp. 1-5

-----, "Joshin moji kinseki shiryō to sono kaidoku ni tsuite" 女真文字金石資料とその解讀に就いて  
[On the decipherment of epigraphical materials in the Jurchen script], Ururu-Arutai gakkai, Vol. VII, No. 9, (1950)

-----, "Joshingo shiryō no gengogaku-teki kenkyū - Arutai shogoshi-teki hikaku gengogaku no ikkan to shite ichi", 女真語資料の言語學的研究——アルタ諸語史比較言語學の一環として。  
[Linguistic research on Jurchen: A link in the comparative linguistic study of the Altaic languages], Mombushō kagaku kenkyū hōkoku shūroku, February, 1951

-----, "Nurukan Eineiji hi Mōko Joshimbun shakkō" 努爾干永寧寺碑蒙古女真文綴稿  
[An explanation of the Mongol and Jurchen versions of the Nuergan Yongningsi Temple Stele], Ishihama Sensei koki kinen tōyōgaku ronsō, 石濱先生古稀記念東洋學論叢, Osaka, 1958, pp. 36-47

-----, "Joshin moji to genson shiryō", 女真文字と現存資料  
[Extant historical materials on the Jurchen script], in Rekishi kyoiku, Vol. XVIII, No. 7 (1970), pp. 25-31

Oshibuchi Hajime, 鴛洲一, "Ryokō no omoide to Joshinji hibun ni tsuite", 旅行の思ひ出と女真字碑文に就いて  
[Recollections of a voyage and a stele in the Jurchen script], Shigaku kenkyū, Vol. VI, No. 2 (1934), pp. 273-274

Otagi Matsuo, 愛宕松男, "Kittan (Kitai) moji gyofu, gyokusan, dōkyō meimon no kaidoku" 契丹文字魚符・玉蓋・銅鏡銘文の解讀  
[A decipherment of the inscriptions in the Khitan script on some fish-tallies, jade vessels and bronze mirrors], Bunka, Vol. XX, No. 6, pp. 944-956.

Parker, E.H., "The Nüchens in China", China Review, Vol. XVI, (1887-1888), pp. 242-243

-----, Review of Hirth, F., "The Chinese Oriental College", China Review, Vol. XVI, (1887-1888), pp. 360-365

-----, "Extracts from the Chinese works regarding the writing of the Ju-chih and Kitan Tartars", Journal of the North China Branch of the British Asiatic Society, Vol. XXII.

Pelliot, P., Review of Denison Ross, E., "New Light...", BEFEO, Vol. IX (1909), pp. 170-171

-----, "Sur quelques mots d'Asie centrale attestés dans les textes chinois", JA, Vol. XI, No 1 (1913), pp. 451-469

-----, "Les mots à h initiale, aujourd'hui amuie, dans le mongol des XIIIe et XIVe siècles", JA, 1925, pp. 193-263

-----, "Le Hōja et le Sayyid Hussein de l'Histoire des Ming", T'P, Vol. XXVI (1929), pp. 207-290

-----, Bibliographie: "Sseu-yi-kouan tsö", T'P, Vol. XXVI (1929), pp. 53-61

Popov, P., "O Tyrsnix pamjatnikax" [On the Stelae at Tyr], ZVOIRAO, Vol. XVI, No. 1 (1904), pp. 012-020, 077

Poppe, N., Vergleichende Grammatik der altaischen Sprachen, Teil I, Vergleichende Lautlehre, Wiesbaden, 1960

-----, (ed.), American Studies in Altaic Linguistics, Indiana University, Bloomington, 1962

-----, Introduction to Altaic Linguistics, Wiesbaden, 1965

-----, "Jurchen and Mongolian", in Henry G. Schwarz, (ed.) Studies on Mongolia, pp. 30-37

Pozdneev, A.M., Lekcii po Istorii Mongol'skoj Literatury [Lectures on the History of Mongolian Literature], Vladivostok, 1908

Qian Daosun, 錢稻孫, "Nüzhēnwēn zhī yánjiū zīliào", 女真文之研究資料 [Materials for the study of the Jurchen language], Xueshe, Vol. I, No. 1 (1930)

Remusat. J.P Abel, Recherches sur les langues tartares, Paris, 1820

-----, 'De l'étude des langues étrangères chez les Chinois', Mélanges asiatiques, Vol. II (1826), pp. 242-265

Rinčēn Yōngsiyebu, "Mélanges archéologiques: les inscriptions inconnues sur pierre et les plaques d'or ornementées du Harnais de Tonyoucouc", Central Asiatic Journal, Vol. IV, (1958-1959), pp. 289-299

-----, "Les dessins pictographiques et les inscriptions sur les rochers et sur les stèles en Mongolie", Corpus Inscriptorum Mongolorum, Vol. V. No. 11, Fasc. 1. Ulaanbaatar, 1968

Rosny, L. de, "Les Niu-tchis, leur langue et leur littérature", Revue orientale et américaine, Vol. I, (1861), pp. 379-387

Rudolph, R.C., review of Yan Wanzhang, "Jinxi...", Revue Bibliographique de Sinologie, 3, (1957), pp. 215-216, item no. 539

Rudov, L.L., "Jazyk i pis'mennost' čžurčženej" [The language and script of the Jurchens], Arxiv Vostokovedov Obščestva, IAN, Vol. X, 1940

Rudov, L.N., "Problemy Kidan'skoj pis'mennosti" [Problems of the Khitan script], Sovetskaja Ėtnografija, 1963, No. 1, pp. 89-98

Saitō, Buichi, 齋藤武一 "Kittan moji to Joshin moji"  
契丹文字と女真文字 [The Khitan script and the Jurchen script], Kokuritsu hakubutsukan jihō, Vol. X (March, 1941)

Sa Ying'e 薩英額, Jilin waiji, 吉林外記 (juan 9: Guji 古跡 )

Schlegel, G., Review of Grube, W., Die Sprache..., T'P Vol. VII, (1896), pp. 277-280

-----, Review of Grube, W., Vorläufige Mittheilung..., T'P Vol. VIII (1897), pp. 114-115

-----, Review of Huth, G., "Zur Entzifferung...", T'P Vol. VIII (1897), pp. 115-117

Schwarz, Henry G., (ed.), Studies on Mongolia: Proceedings of the First North American Conference on Mongolian Studies. Western Washington University, Bellingham, Washington, 1979.

Serruys, H., Sino-Jürčed Relations During the Yung-Lo Period (1403-1424), Wiesbaden, 1955

Shimada Yoshimi, 島田好, "Joshin moji Ōton Ryōhitsu sen'in hi", 女真文字奥屯良弼食飲碑 [The Aotun Liangbi tablet with Jurchen script], Shokō, Vol. V., No. 9, (1934), p. 685

Shinoda Minoru, The Founding of the Kamakura Shogunate 1180-1185, with Selected Translations from the Azuma Kagami, New York, 1960

Shiratori Kurakichi, 白鳥庫吉 "Kittan Joshin Seika moji kō", 契丹女真西夏文字考 [A study of the Khitan, Jurchen and Xixia scripts], in Shigaku zasshi, Vol. IX, (1898), No. 11 pp. 922-936, No. 12 pp. 1054-1068; reprinted in Shiratori Kurakichi zenshū, 白鳥庫吉全集 [Collected Works of Shiratori Kurakichi], Vol. V, 1970, pp. 45-68

Sinor, D., "Introduction aux études mandjoues", T'P, Vol. XLII (1953), pp. 70-100

-----, Introduction à l'étude de l'Eurasie centrale, Wiesbaden, 1963

-----, "La langue mandjoue", Handbuch der Orientalistik: Erste Abteilung, Fünfter Band: Altaistik: Dritter Abschnitt: Tungusologie, pp. 257-280

Sonoda Kazuki, 園田一也 "Daikin tokushōda shōhi ni tsuite", 大金得勝陀頌碑 [On the Jin Victory Memorial Stele], Fengtian Mantie tushuguan congkan, Vol. XII, No. 12 (1933)

-----, "Kairyū kokusho magai hi, I, II", 海龍國書摩崖碑一、二 [Two inscriptions in national scripts cut into the rock-face at Hailong], Manshū kinsekishi kō, p. 140

-----, Manshū kinsekishi kō, 滿洲金石志稿 [An Inventory of Inscriptions in Manchuria], 1936

Starikov, V.S., et al., Materialy po dešifrovke Kidan'skogo pisma [Materials for the decipherment of the Khitan script], 2 vols, Moscow, 1970

Stary, G., "Chinesische Beschreibung der Mandschurei des 17 Jahrhunderts, ihrer Bewohner und deren Sitten: Yang Pin und sein Werk Liu Pien Chi Lueh (Ein unvollendetes Manuskript von Walter Fuchs)", in Weiers M. and Stary, G (1982), pp. 49-56

Sun Jinji, 孫進己, "Hailong Nüzhen moya shike", 海龍女真摩崖石刻 [The rock inscriptions in Jurchen at Hailong], Shehui kexue zhanxian, Vol. 2, 1979

-----, Nüzhenwen zidian, 女真文字典 [A Dictionary of Jurchen], published in mimeograph form by Liaoning shehui kexueyuan (Liaoning Academy of Social Sciences), 1980

Susa Kakitsu, 須佐嘉橘, "Tokushōda hi koki", 得勝陀碑行記 [A record of a trip to find the Jin Victory Stele], Seikyū gakuhō, 1933.

-----, Daikin tokushōda shō shashin chō, 大金得勝陀頌寫真帖 [A collection of photographs of the Jin Victory Stele], 1933.

Tamura Jitsuzō, 田村實造, "Daikin tokushōda shōhi no kenkyū", 大金得勝陀頌碑の研究 [Research on the Jin Victory Memorial Stele], Tōyōshi kenkyū, Vol. II, (1937) No. 5, pp. 405-437; No. 6, pp. 542-560

-----, "Kittan Joshin Seika no moji", 契丹女真西夏の文字 [The Khitan, Jurchen and Xixia scripts], Shodō zenshū, Vol. XV (1954), pp. 45-48

-----, "Joshin moji" 女真文字, [The Jurchen Script], in Tōyō rekishi daijiten, 東洋歴史大辭典 [Encyclopaedic Dictionary of Far Eastern History], Vol. IV, p. 420

-----, Chūgoku seifuku ōchō no kenkyū, 中國征服王朝の研究 [Research on the Conquest Dynasties of China], 1971.

-----, "Kittan, Joshin moji kō - mitabi "Daikin tokushōda shōhi" Joshibun no kaidoku ni tsuite", 契丹女真文字考—三度び「大金得勝陀頌碑」女真文の解讀, [A Study of the Khitan and Jurchen scripts - a third attempt to decipher the Jin Victory Memorial Stele], Tōyōshi kenkyū, Vol. 35 (1976), No. 3, pp. 1-53 (pp.361-413)

Tamura Jitsuzō and Kobayashi Yukio, 小林行雄 Keiryō, 慶陵 (English title: Tombs and Mural Paintings of Ch'ing Ling), Kyoto, 1952-1953

Taskin, V.S., "Opyt dešifrovki Kidan'skoj pis'mennosti" [An attempted decipherment of the Khitan script], Narody Azii i Afriki, 1963, No. 1, pp. 127-147

Tōdō Akiyasu, "Development of Mandarin from 14c. to 19c.", Acta Asiatica, Vol. VI (1964), pp. 31-40

Toriyama Ki'ichi, 鳥山喜一, Mansen bunka shikan, 滿鮮文化史觀  
[The Cultural History of Manchuria and Korea]

Toyoda Gorō, 豊田五郎, "Kittan reiji kō - Joshin moji no genryū", 契丹款字考: 女真文字の源流 [The Khitan large script - the origin of the Jurchen script], Tōyō gakuhō, Vol. XLVI, No. 1 (1963), pp. 1-39

-----, "An analysis of the Major Ch'i-tan Characters", Memoirs of the Research Department of the Toyo Bunko, No. 23 (1964), pp. 119-135

Vasil'ev, V., "Zapiska o nadpisjax otkrytyx na pamjatnikax, stojaščix na skale Tyr, bliz ust'ja Amur' [A note on the inscriptions discovered on stelae at Tyr. near the mouth of the Amur], IIRAN, Ser. V, Vol. IV (1896). pp. 365-367

Visdelou, C., Histoire abrégée de la Tartarie, Bibliothèque Orientale, Vol. IV (1779), pp. 42-296

Wang Chang, 王昶, Jin shi cui bian, 金石萃編  
[Selected Inscriptions], juan 154: Guoshu bei, 國書碑  
[A stele in a national script]

Wang Jingru, 王靜如, "Yantai Nüzhenwen jinshi timing bei chushi" 宴臺女真文進士題名碑初釋  
[A preliminary explanation of the Yantai stele], Shixue jikan, Vol. III, (1937), pp. 49-68

-----, "Xinglong chutu Jindai Qidanwen muzhiming jie", 興隆出土金代契丹文墓誌銘解 [An explanation of the Khitan script used on an epigraph of the Jin dynasty discovered in Xinglong], Kaogu, 1973, No. 5, pp. 310-312; 289

Wang Li, 王力, Hanyu shi gao, 漢語史稿 [A Draft History of the Chinese Language], Beijing, 1958

Wang Renfu, 王仁富, "Da Jin deshengtuo songbei wen zhengli sande", 大金得勝陀頌碑文整理三得  
[Three results in restoring the text of the Jin Victory Memorial Stele], Heilongjiang wenwu congkan, 1984, No.1, pp. 10-17

Watanabe Kuntarō, 渡部薫太郎, "Manshūgo, Joshingo to kanjion no kankei", 滿洲語、女真語と漢語音の關係  
[The relationship between Chinese characters used in transcribing and the Manchu and Jurchen languages], Ajia kenkyū, Vol. II, (1925), pp. 19-52

-----, Shimpen kinshi meijikai, 新編全史名辭解 [A new approach to the explanation of words and expressions in the History of the Jin Dynasty], Osaka, 1931

-----, "Joshinkan raibun tsūkai", 女真館來文通解  
[A study of the "petitions" of the Jurchen Bureau of Translators], Ajia kenkyū, Vol., XI (1933)

-----, "Joshingo no shin kenkyū", 女真語の新研究  
[New research on the Jurchen language], Ajia kenkyū, Vol. XII (1935) (The original English subtitle of this article is "The New Study of Nüchên Language")

Wild, N., "Materials for the Study of the Ssū I Kuan (Bureau of Translators), BSOAS, Vol. XI, No.3 (1945), pp/. 617-640

Wittfogel, K.A. and Fêng, C.S., History of Chinese Society: Liao (907-1125), Philadelphia, 1949



Wylie, A., Translation of the Ts'ing wan k'e mung, a Chinese Grammar of the Manchu Tartar Language, Shanghai, 1855

-----, "On an ancient inscription in the Neu-chih language", JRAS, Vol. XVIII (1860), pp. 331-345

-----, Notes on Chinese Literature, Shanghai, 1867, reprinted Taibei, 1964

-----, "On an ancient Buddhist inscription at Keu-yung Kwan, in North China", JRAS, (NS), Vol. 1 (1870), pp. 14-44

Xu Shiyang and Liu Dezhi, 許世英. 劉德智 Yin zhu Zhongyuan yinyun, 音注中原音韻 [The Zhongyuan yinyun with phonetic annotations], Taibei, 1969

Yagi, Shozaburō, 八木 装三郎, "Kin no shoda hi", 金の勝陀碑  
[The Jin Victory Memorial Stele] Manshū kyusekishī 滿洲舊跡志  
Vol. III, pp. 370-375

Yamaji, Hiroaki, 山路廣明, Joshin moji no seiiji ni kansuru kenkyū, 女真文字の製字に關する研究 [Research on the Structure of Jurchen Characters], Tokyo, 1958

-----, "Joshin setsumon kō", 女真説文考 [On the Jurchen script], Gengo shūroku, Vol. I, pp. 10-28; Vol. II, pp. 41-56; Vol. III, pp. 14-32; Vol. IV, pp. 29-48; Vol. V., pp. 6-28; (1951-1953)

-----, "Joshingo no jūni chi", 女真語の十二支 [The twelve branches in the Jurchen language]; Gengo shūroku, Vol. II, (1952), pp. 31-40

-----, "Joshingo ni okeru kanzen iji to fukanzen iji", 女真語に於ける完全意字と不完全意字 [On the semantic and partially-semantic characters in the Jurchen language], Gengo shūroku, Vol. II, (1952), pp. 57-70

-----, "Joshingo no jūkan", 女真語の十干, [The ten stems in the Jurchen language], Gengo shūroku, Vol. III (1952), pp. 12-13

-----, "Joshingo nango kai", 女真語難語解 [Explanations of some difficult Jurchen expressions], Gengo shūroku, Vol. V (1953), pp. 3-5

-----, "Gu-shi (Gurūbe) yakugo no kentō", グルベ(グル-ベ)譯語の検討 [An investigation of Grube's Hua-Yi yiyu], Gengo shūroku, Vol. V (1953), pp. 29-46. Reprinted in Joshin moji, pp. 351-386

-----, "Joshingo ni okeru arushuno dōji henkagobi ni tsuite", 女真語に於ける或種の動詞變化語尾についで [On the meaning of some verbal inflexions in Jurchen], Gengo shūroku, Vol. VI, (1955), pp. 16-18

-----, "Kittan Joshin no gengo to moji oyobi sono kankei ni tsuite", 契丹女真の言語と文字及びその關係に  
[On the relationship between the Khitan and Jurchen languages and scripts], Shikan, Vol. XXXIX (1953), pp. 89-91

-----, "Joshin seiiji ni okeru katen no kenkyū", 女真製字に於ける加點の研究 [A study of the added points in the formation of Jurchen characters], Gengo shūroku, Vol. V (1953), pp. 1-2

-----, "Joshin moji no kōzo", 女真文字の構造 [The composition of Jurchen characters], Gengo shūroku, Vol. V, (1953), pp. 20-28

-----, Joshin go kai, 女真語解 [The Jurchen Language], Tokyo, 1956

-----, "Lexicography yori mita Gu-shi yakugo, Joshinkan raibun no kentō no ikkan", Lexicography おり見たグ氏譯語 女真館來文の検討の一斑 [Some comments on the study of Grube's Hua-Yi yiyu and the petitions of the Jurchen Bureau of Translators from a lexicographical point of view], in Waseda daigaku toshokan kiyō, Vol. VIII, (1967), pp. 31-40

Yamamoto Kengo, 山本謙吾 Manshūgo kōgo hiso goi shū, 滿洲語口語基礎語彙集 [A Classified Dictionary of Spoken Manchu], Tokyo, 1969

Yamamoto Mamoru, 山本守 "Seikadō-bon Joshin yakugo kōi", 靜嘉堂本女真譯語考異 [Variants in the Seikado manuscript of the Jurchen Hua-Yi yiyu], Shokō, Vol. XVI, No. 10 (1943), pp. 13-36

-----, "Joshin yakugo no kenkyū", 女真譯語の研究 [Research on the Jurchen Hua-Yi yiyu], Kōbe gaidai ronsō, Vol. II, No. 2 (1951), pp. 68-79

Yamashita Taizō, 山下泰藏, "Kin kei Joshin moji shiryō no ichi to shite", 金鏡女真文字資料の一と二 [Materials for the study of Jurchen characters on mirrors of the Jin dynasty], Manshū shigaku, Vol. III, No. 2 (1940)

-----, "Shin Jochoku kokusho hi ni tsuite", 新女真國書碑 (に就いて) [On a new stele in the Jurchen national script], Fengtian tushuguan congkan, Vol. XVIII (1934); Mammō, Vol. XV (1934)

Yamazaki Tadashi, 山崎忠, "Ka-I yakugo kenkyū shōshi", 華夷譯語研究小史, [A short history of research on the Hua-Yi yiyu vocabularies], Chōsen gakkai kaihō; Part I in Vol. XIV (1952) pp.4-7; Part II in Vol. XV (1952), p. 8

-----, "Wagakuni ni okeru Ka-I yakugo kenkyū shi", 我が國における華夷譯語研究史 [A history of the study of the Hua-Yi yiyu vocabularies in Japan]; Chōsen gakuho, Vol. V (1953), pp. 45-48 and Vol. VI (1954) pp. 163-165

Yan Hua, 顏華, "Nüzhenwen guo-xin pai de faxian", 女真文國信牌的發現 [The discovery of a travel pass with a Jurchen inscription], Shehui kexue zhanxian, 1979, No 2, p. 209

-----, "Nüzhenwen", 女真文, [The Jurchen Language], in Zhongguo minzu gu wenzi, 中國民族古文字 pp. 109-114

Yan Wanzhang, 閻萬章, "Jinxi Xigushan chutu Qidanwen muzhi yanjiu", 錦西孤山出土契丹文墓誌研究 [A study of the epitaph in Khitan script excavated in Xigushan, Jinxi], Kaogu xuebao, 1957, No. 2, pp. 69-82

Yang Bin, 楊賓, Liu bian ji lue, 柳邊記略, published 1639, reprinted in 1936 in the Guoxue wenku series. (Cf. Stary, G (1982))

- Yang Boxing, 楊伯馨, Shengu, 潘故 (juan 3)
- Yang Yang, 楊陽, "Mingdai Nuergan Yongningsi bei ji zai kaoshi", 明代奴兒干永寧寺碑記考釋 [A reinterpretation of the text on the stele in the Yongningsi temple at Nurgan], Shehui kexue zhanxian, 1983, No. 1, pp. 176-181
- Yi Ki-mun, 李基文 [Lee Ki-moon], "Chung-se Yöchin-ö ūmunron yōngu", 中世女真語音韻論研究 [Research on the phonology of Middle Jurchen], Söul taehakkyo nonmunjip, Vol. VII (1958), pp. 343-395
- Yi Pyöng-do, 李丙晝, Kuksa taegwan, 國史大觀 [An Outline of National History], Seoul, 1957
- Von Zach, E.R., "Einige weitere Nachtrage zum Jučen-Deutschen Glossar Prof. Grube's", T'P, Vol. VIII (1897), pp. 107ff.
- Vorob'ev, M.V., "Slovarnyj sostav čžurčžen'skogo jazyka kak étnografičeskij istočnik" [The lexicon of Jurchen as ethnographic source material], Doklady otdelenii i komissii geografičeskogo obščestva SSSR, Vol. V (Leningrad, 1968), pp. 97-107
- , "Jazyk i pis'mennost' čžurčženej (kul'turno-istoričeskaja xarakteristika)" [The language and script of the Jurchens - cultural and historical characteristics], *ibid.* pp. 85-96
- Walravens, H. and Gimm, M., Deutsch-mandjurisches Wörtverzeichnis, Wiesbaden, 1978

- Weiers, M. and Sary, G., Florilegia Mančurica: In Memoriam Walter Fuchs, Wiesbaden, 1982
- Zhao Han, 趙岫, Shi mo juan hua, 石墨金華 (1618), in Zhibuzuzhai congshu, 知不足齋叢書 Vol. III, juan 6, pp. 8b/9a
- Zheng Shaozong, 鄭紹宗, "Xinglong-xian Zimulinzi faxian de Qidanwen muzhiming", 興隆縣梓木林子發現的契丹文墓誌銘 [An epitaph in the Khitan script discovered in Zimulinzi village, Xinglong district], Kaogu, 1973, pp. 300-309
- Zhong Minyan, 鍾民岩, "Lishi de jianzheng - Mingdai Nuergan Yongningsi beiwen kaoshi", 歷史的見證——明代奴兒干永寧寺碑文考釋 [Historical proof: a study of the text on the Ming Dynasty stele at the Yongningsi temple, Nurgan], Lishi yanjiu, 1974, No. 1, pp. 142-157
- Zhong Minyan, Na Senbo, 那森柏, and Jin Qicong, "Mingdai Nuergan Yongningsi bei ji jiaoshi", 明代奴兒干永寧寺碑記校釋 [Emendations and annotations on the Ming dynasty stone inscriptions of the Yongning monastery at Nuergan], Kaogu xuebao, 1975, No. 2, pp. 33 ff.
- Zhongguo minzu gu wenzi yanjiuhui, 中國民族古文字研究會 Zhongguo minzu gu wenzi, 中國民族古文字, Beijing 1982
- Zhou Mi, 周密, Gui xin za zhi, 癸辛雜識 published early fourteenth century

Zhou Youguang, 周有光, "Nüzhen yuwenxue de fengshuo  
 chengguo - jieshao Jin Guangping, Jin Qicong Nüzhen  
 yuyan wenzi yanjiu", 女真語文的豐碩成果——介紹金光平、  
 金啟琮《女真語言文字研究》

[A great achievement in the study of the Jurchen  
 language - introducing A Study of the Jurchen Language  
 and Script by Jin Guangping and Jin Qicong], Neimenggu  
 daxue xuebao, 1980, No. 4, pp. 49-52

\*\*\*

# APPENDIX:

FACSIMILE OF THE SINO-JURCHEN DICTIONARY

WITHOUT JURCHEN SCRIPT

(AWAKUNI MS.)

10 7  
電雪霜星月日雷雨雲天

女直譯語  
天文門

阿波國文庫

阿瓜 阿古 阿甸 受濕 別阿 兀失哈 塞忙吉 額都 博雷吉

30 25  
天下 天邊 雪下天全 風似箭 天有露 逆天者亡 月明如蓋 天雷下雪 天高 天晴 無雨進朝 天陰

20 15  
露 陰 合天理 晴 霧 煙 虹 心 天上 電

阿瓜伏職勒 阿瓜者尺 赤化吉 額都程魯華塞 阿瓜塔兒麻吉必 阿瓜伏答速黑得不符 別草忙亦能吉華果 阿瓜亦忙吉和塞必 阿瓜得 阿瓜哈刺哈 阿瓜阿諺之幹兒 阿瓜來魚兒

失雷 速量 赤魯兀 阿瓜亦朵羅昔哈 哈刺哈 塔兒麻吉 尚加 拙勒莫 發兒洪 黑兒黑土 阿瓜得勒 塔兒哈

天要下雨  
順天者昌  
日落  
日出  
日短  
日長  
月落時誰朝  
天札令  
日斜  
日中  
日影  
日高

阿比阿古勒塞必  
阿比答哈得過兒迷  
受溫光黑黑  
受溫光提黑  
受溫佛活羅維  
受溫過迷  
別尤黑勒頰力幹兒黑深又  
阿比摩忍魚背  
受溫迷灼  
受溫亦能吉佛  
受溫黑兒黑土  
受溫得

月明連日有雨  
雷響月黑  
雷打了月影  
月蝕昨夜下雨  
月照月盡  
有雨免朝  
雨不住

別革陌  
亦能吉闌阿古必  
阿古棍必  
別發兒迭  
阿古都黑  
別黑兒墨  
別者兒  
矢塞多博力阿古哈  
別受斯哈  
別餓的哈  
阿古尼幹兒多桑深答誇  
阿古翁得誇

天曉  
天氣熱！  
天上有雲  
天晚  
天旱  
狂風大有塵  
外天  
天知  
絲雲  
敬天  
雲遮  
雲用

阿瓜革兒克  
阿瓜哈魯  
阿瓜得勒赤吉必  
阿瓜樣的哈  
阿瓜夏力哈  
昂八額都刺其必  
阿瓜珠黑  
阿瓜撒刺  
哈尺赤吉  
阿瓜赤其  
赤吉或的黑  
赤吉內黑

天起風  
星滿天  
雲開日出  
日照  
月出  
月落  
月滿  
雲霧滿山  
密雲欵雨  
月圓  
月缺  
月斜

阿瓜額都得得黑  
元失哈阿瓜額得黑  
禿吉內里受溫禿提黑  
受溫受出哈  
別禿提黑  
別禿黑黑  
別割刺哈  
禿喜見麻吉阿力割黑  
禿吉元音阿古勒塞必  
別木力額  
別額測  
別迷灼

月出  
月遂  
月漏  
雲霧漏山  
密雲欲雨

別禿提黑  
別禿黑黑  
別刺哈  
禿吉塔見麻吉阿力魯魯  
禿吉兀肯阿吉勒塞必

天起風  
星滿天  
雲開日出

无刺

天曉  
天氣熱！  
天上有雲  
天晚  
天旱

104  
 日融 露乾 煙多 聖下 霧歇 有雨 小雨 雹下 好雨 好風 無雨 風冷

106  
 額都厦忽魯 阿古阿誇 賽因額都 賽因阿古 博霍禿黑必 阿沙阿古 阿古必 塔兒麻吉內黑 亦忙吉禿黑必 尚加昂八刺 夫雷鐵羅活 受溫者克

星多 星婦 星少 風息 星落 大風 雷霹 大雨 春風 風吹 雨住 風夾

死矢哈昂八刺  
元矢哈塞力  
元矢哈我鎖  
額都納哈哈  
元矢哈无黑黑  
昂八額都  
阿甸都必  
昂八阿古  
按理里額都  
額都伏冷必  
阿古蘇苦  
額都的必

露凝煙出煙泡天理冰明星風起風響雪薄雪大雪厚雪消

失雷兀失黑  
尚如木提黑  
尚如木提黑  
阿瓜答哈  
珠黑  
葉那兀失哈  
額都得得黑  
額都提必  
亦忙吉捏克葉  
亦忙吉昂八  
亦忙吉的刺迷  
亦忙吉的刺迷

125

江 月上進朝  
斗 冰凍 煙收 煙收  
天 河 煙散 煙起

120

北 斗 星  
霧 收

納答兀失哈  
塔兒麻吉黑忒黑  
尚加得得黑  
尚加內黑  
阿瓜亦必刺  
尚加或的黑  
尚加黑忒黑  
木克革提黑  
納答  
別得得黑得得黑